



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

DE FIVAS'
GRAMMAR
OF
FRENCH GRAMMARS.

ALLMANS' PENNY MAPS.

11 × 9½, beautifully printed in colours.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Eastern Hemisphere | 15. Holland |
| 2. Western Hemisphere | 16. Norway |
| 3. Europe | 17. Russia |
| 4. Asia | 18. Switzerland |
| 5. Africa | 19. Spain |
| 6. North America | 20. Italy |
| 7. South America | 21. Turkey |
| 8. England | 22. Hindostan |
| 9. Ireland | 23. China and Japan |
| 10. Scotland | 24. United States |
| 11. France | 25. Central America |
| 12. German Empire | 26. Australia |
| 13. Minor German States | 27. Palestine |
| 14. Austria | 28. Mercator's World |

Outlines for the above may be had,
PRICE ONE PENNY EACH.

PROJECTION MAPS

(Lines of Latitude and Longitude) may be had,
PRICE ONE PENNY EACH.

LONDON:
ALLMAN AND 123 OXFORD STREET.



LESSONS IN MAPPING.

By W. SHEPPARD HOARE.

Just Published.

The Minor General School Atlas.

PART I. Containing 12 Coloured Maps, Quarters of the World and British Isles, strongly bound in cloth, 1s. 6d.

The Minor General School Atlas.

PART II. Containing 12 Coloured Maps of the Countries of Europe, strongly bound in cloth, 1s. 6d.

The Smaller General School Atlas.

20 Maps, strongly bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

The General School Atlas.

28 Coloured Maps, with Index, royal 8vo., strongly bound, 2s. 6d.

These Atlases are designed with two main objects in view :—

“The affording of a suitable and useful companion to those School Geographies most generally in use ; and the forming of a good Copying Atlas.

“To accomplish the *first of these ends*, only those names that are of importance, either in a geographical or historical point of view, have been inserted, thus avoiding the inconvenience of a too crowded Atlas, so confusing to general students ; and yet, at the same time, containing every name mentioned in their Geographies.

“To attain the *second object*, the Coast Line, Rivers, etc., have been marked very clearly and boldly, so that the Student, when engaged in drawing the Map, may instantly perceive its principal physical features standing prominently before him.

“It will be observed in this work that the mountains, instead of being delineated in the usual manner, are represented by thick black lines, the Primary Ranges in each Map being marked thus,—,—,—, the Secondary —,—,—, and their principal elevations . It is hoped that this method will tend to lessen one of the greatest difficulties of School Map Drawing.”

LONDON :

ALLMAN AND SON, 463, OXFORD STREET.

(No. 6.)





600085633V

NEW
GRAMMAR
OF
FRENCH GRAMMARS,
COMPRISING
THE SUBSTANCE OF ALL THE MOST APPROVED
FRENCH GRAMMARS EXTANT,
BUT MORE ESPECIALLY OF THE
STANDARD WORK "LA GRAMMAIRE DES GRAMMAIRES,"
SANCTIONED BY THE FRENCH ACADEMY AND THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS.
WITH
NUMEROUS EXERCISES AND EXAMPLES, ILLUSTRATIVE
OF EVERY RULE.

For the Use of Schools and Private Students.

BY M. DE FIVAS.

NEW EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED

WITH THE ADDITION OF

A COLLECTION OF FRENCH IDIOMS

SELECTED BY

M. ALBERT ROCHE.



LONDON:
ALLMAN & SON, 67, NEW OXFORD STREET.
1882.

303. g. 356.

FRENCH PLAYS FOR GIRLS.

BY VARIOUS AUTHORS.

With Explanatory Notes of difficult Idioms

BY

M. EMILE ROCHE,

PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

PRICE ONE SHILLING EACH.

1. **Marguerite ; ou, La robe perdue.** Drame moral en un acte mêlé de couplets.
2. **Les Ricochets.** Comédie en un acte, imitée de Picard avec couplets.
3. **Les Demoiselles d'Honneur ; ou, Le lutin du soir.** Vaudeville en un acte.
4. **Les Demoiselles de Saint Cyr.** Petit drame moral en un acte.
5. **Un Rêve.** Petit drame avec prologue et épilogue.
6. **Une Place à la Cour.** Comédie en un acte avec couplets.

LONDON :

& SON, 67, NEW OXFORD STREET, W.C.

EXPLANATION

OF THE

ABBREVIATIONS AND MARKS

USED IN THE EXERCISES.

m. <i>stands for</i> masculine,	ind-1 <i>stands for</i> present of the indi-
f. feminine.	ind-2 imperfect [cative.
sing. or s. singular.	ind-3 preterite definite.
pl. plural.	ind-4 preterite indefinite.
h m. h mute.	ind-5 preterite anterior.
h asp. h aspirated.	ind-6 pluperfect.
art. article.	ind-7 future absolute.
pr. preposition.	ind-8 future anterior.
pr. art. .. { preposition and article,	cond-1 conditional present.
{ or article contracted (as	cond-2 conditional past.
{ explained pp. 8 and 10).	imp. imperative.
pron. pronoun.	subj-1 present of the sub-
inf-1 present of the infinitive.	junctive.
inf-2 infinitive past.	subj-2 imperfect.
inf-3 participle present.	subj-3 preterite.
inf-4 participle past.	subj-4 pluperfect.

The figures 1, 2, 3, etc., point out the order of the French construction when it differs from the English.

* The asterisk, or little star, denotes that the word under which it is placed, is not to be expressed in French.

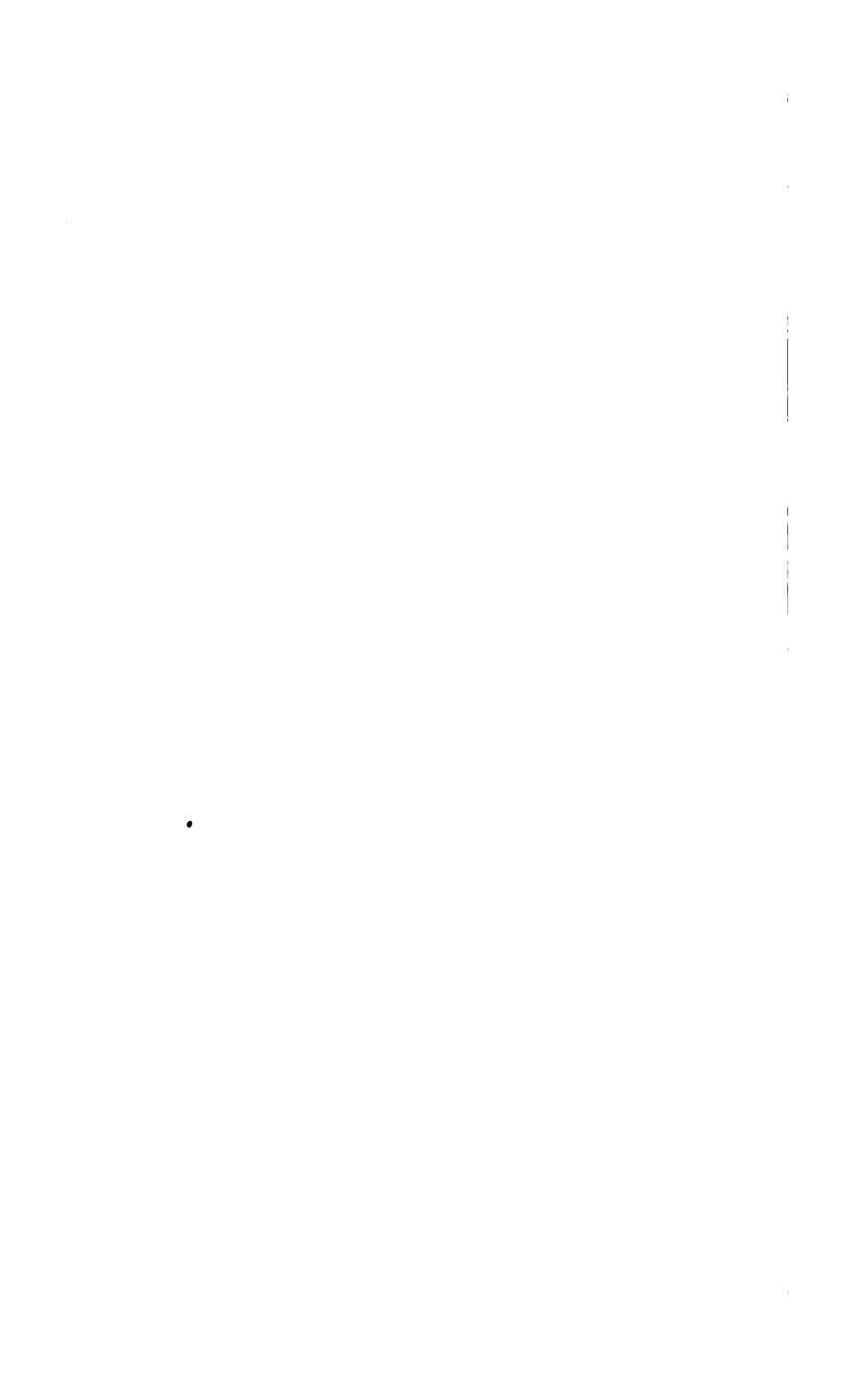
— The line placed under an English word indicates that it is the same in French.

() When several English words are included within a parenthesis, they must be translated by the words placed under.

The English words printed in *italics*, are those to which the rules prefixed must be applied.

The substantives are generally given in the singular, the adjectives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infinitive, the student being expected to put them in their proper number, gender, tense, and person.

N.B. The student should make himself well acquainted with the use of the *Apostrophe*, page 3—with the *Contraction* of the article, page 8—and, with the *General Rule* for the place of personal pronouns, page 228. The knowledge of these points will greatly facilitate his studies.



NEW GRAMMAR

OF

FRENCH GRAMMARS.

Bien parler annonce la bonne éducation ;
Bien écrire annonce de l'esprit.

INTRODUCTION.

GRAMMAR is the art which teaches to speak and write a language correctly.

To speak and to write, we make use of *words*.

Words are composed of one or more *syllables*; and syllables are composed of one or more *letters*.

The French Alphabet contains twenty-five letters, namely :

A B C D E F G H I J K L M
N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*. There are five vowels, A, E, I, O, U ; the Y is a Greek letter, which sometimes supplies the place of one *i*, and sometimes of two : all the other letters are consonants.

The French make use of the W only in words borrowed from other languages.

OF CHARACTERS AND MARKS.

THE orthographical signs used in the French language are,—the *accents*, the *apostrophe*, the *hyphen*, the *dix-resis* or *dialysis*, the *cedilla*, the *parenthesis*, and the different marks of *punctuation*.

OF ACCENTS.

Accents are small marks placed upon vowels, either to point out their true pronunciation, or to distinguish the meaning of one word from that of another which is spelt alike, but has a different meaning.

There are three accents in the French language,—the *acute*, the *grave*, and the *circumflex*.

The *acute* accent (') is never used but over the vowel *e*, as in *vérité*, truth ; *été*, summer.

The *grave* accent (`) is used over the vowels, *a*, *e*, *u*, as in *voilà*, there is ; *père*, father ; *règle*, rule.

The *grave* accent is placed—

Over the preposition *à*, to, in order to distinguish it from the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, *il a*, he has ;

Over the adverb *là*, there, to distinguish it from the article *la*, the, or the pronoun *la*, her, it ;

Over the adverb or pronoun *où* (where, in which, to which, etc.), to distinguish it from the conjunction *ou*, or ;

Over the preposition *dès*, from, since, to distinguish it from the compound article *des*, of the, some.

The *circumflex* accent (^) is used with any of the vowels, the sound of which it always lengthens ; as in *âge*, age ; *tête*, head ; *épître*, epistle ; *dôme*, cupola ; *flûte*, flute.

The *circumflex* accent is placed—

Over the adjective *sûr*, sure, to distinguish it from the preposition *sur*, upon ;

Over the adjective *mûr*, ripe, to distinguish it from the substantive *mur*, wall ;

Over *dû*, participle past of *devoir*, to owe, to distinguish it from the compound article *du*, of the, some; but the accent is only used in the singular masculine of the participle, as there can be no mistake in the feminine singular, nor in the plural of either gender;

Over *crû*, participle past of *crottre*, to grow, to distinguish it from *cru*, participle past of *croire*, to believe.

OF THE APOSTROPHE.

The *Apostrophe* is a small mark in the form of a comma ('), which is placed over the line between two letters, to denote the elision or suppression of a vowel at the end of one word before another beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, as in *l'âme*, the soul; *l'homme*, the man; instead of *la âme*, *le homme*.

A, E, I, are the only vowels liable to be thus cut off.

The A is suppressed only in *la*, article or pronoun.

The I suffers elision only in the conjunction *si* (if) before the pronoun *il* and its plural *ils*, but never before *elle* or *elles*, or any other word whatever.

The elision of the E occurs, not only in the masculine article and pronoun *le*, but also in the monosyllables *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *ce*, *de*, *ne*, *que*, and moreover:—

1. In *jusque*, before *à*, *au*, *aux*, *ici*.

2. In *puisque* and *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un*, *une*, or a word with which these conjunctions are immediately connected; as—*Puisqu'ainsi est*.—*Puisqu'il le veut*.—*Quoiqu'elle soit*.

However we write:—*Puisque aider les malheureux est un devoir*.—*Quoique un peu fier*.—*Quoique étranger*.—*Quoique invisibles, il est toujours deux témoins qui nous regardent: Dieu et la conscience*.

3. In *quelque*, before *un*, *une*; as, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*; and also in *quel qu'il soit*, *quelle qu'elle soit*.

4. In *presque*, in the compound word *presqu'île*; and likewise in *grande*, in the words *grand'mère*, and *grand'tante*.

But no elision of the *a* or *e* takes place in *le*, *la*, *de*, *ce*, *que*, before *oui*, *huit*, *huitaine*, *huitième*, *onze*, and *or*

4 OF THE HYPHEN, DIÆRESIS, AND CEDILLA.

zième ; neither in the pronouns *le* or *la*, after a verb in the imperative mood, nor in the adverb *là* : so we say, *le oui et le non* ; *le huit ou le onze du mois* ; *menez-le à Paris* ; *ira-t-il là avec vous* ?

The final *e* of the preposition *entre* is retained before the pronouns *eux*, *elles*, and before *autres* ; but it is always retrenched when *entre* forms a compound word with another word beginning with a vowel ; as—*entr'acte*, *s'entr'aider*, *s'entr'accuser*, *entr'ouïr*, *entr'ouvrir*.

OF THE HYPHEN.

The *Hyphen* (in French *tiret* or *trait d'union*) is a short horizontal line, thus (-), which is used principally in connecting compound words, and between a verb and a pronoun, when a question is asked, as in *arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow ; *chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece ; *parlez-vous* ? do you speak ? *avez-vous* ? have you ?

OF THE DIÆRESIS OR DIALYSIS.

The *Diæresis* (in French *tréma* or *diérèse*) is a mark of two points, thus (··), put over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, to intimate that they form a distinct syllable from the vowels that precede them, as in the words *ciguë*, hemlock ; *Moïse*, Moses ; *Saül*, Saul ; which are pronounced *Ci-gu-e*, *Mo-ise*, *Sa-ul*.

OF THE CEDILLA.

The *Cedilla* is a kind of comma placed under the letter *c*, when it is to be pronounced like *s*, before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *Français*, French ; *garçon*, boy ; *reçu*, received.

All other marks and characters used in writing French are the same as in English.

OF GENDERS.

THE French language has only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*. The gender of *animate* or *living* beings presents no difficulty, as all males are *masculine*, and all females are *feminine*; but it is only by practice that one can learn the gender of *inanimate* objects, and of animals whose names are the same for the male and female, such as *éléphant*, an elephant; *buffle*, a buffalo; *cygne*, a swan; *perdrix*, a partridge; *baleine*, a whale: *truite*, a trout; *saumon*, a salmon.

It is not possible to give general and precise rules by means of which one may, on every occasion, distinguish, by the mere aspect of a substantive, of what gender it is. Several Grammarians, however, have given treatises on the genders; but those treatises are extremely incomplete; some of their rules are vague, and above all liable to a great many exceptions. The truth is, the perfect knowledge of the gender of substantives can only be the work of time. It is by reading with attention, and by having recourse, in cases of doubt, to dictionaries, that one will acquire insensibly a complete acquaintance with the genders. Nevertheless in cases of doubt, and in the absence of a dictionary, it may be of some practical utility to know that about nine-tenths of nouns ending in *e* not accented are feminine; the final *e* mute being, in French, the distinctive mark of the feminine gender. Nouns ending in *ion* are also for the most part feminine.

To the student who understands Latin, perhaps it may not be unimportant to know, that of nouns derived from that language, those from feminine nouns are mostly feminine, and those from masculine or neuter nouns, masculine; as *foi* from *fides*, *loi* from *lex*, *fourni* from *formica*, *génie* from *genius*, *collège* from *collegium*, *poème* from *poëma*, *incendie* from *incendium*, &c.

We have generally marked the gender of Nouns in the Exercises throughout this work, in order to facilitate the acquirement of this part of French Grammar.

OF NUMBERS.

THERE are two numbers in French ; the *singular* and the *plural*. The singular refers to one person or thing, and the plural refers to more than one.

OF CASES.

THERE are no *Cases*, and consequently no declensions in the French language ; and the Grammarians who have admitted some, have failed in accuracy. We express by prepositions, and especially by *de* (of or from), and *à* (to or at), the relations which the Greeks and the Romans marked by the different terminations of their nouns.

PART I.

THERE are, in French, nine sorts of words, or, as they are commonly called, PARTS OF SPEECH ; namely,

1 ARTICLE.	4 PRONOUN.	7 PREPOSITION.
2 SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN.	5 VERB.	8 CONJUNCTION.
3 ADJECTIVE.	6 ADVERB.	9 INTERJECTION.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ARTICLE.

The *Article* is a word prefixed to substantives, to point them out, and to show how far their signification extends.

The French article is *le, la, les*, the.

As the French language has borrowed much from the Latin, there is every reason to think that we have formed our *le* and our *la* from the pronoun *ille, illa, illud*. From the last syllable of the masculine word *ille*, we have made *le* ; and from the last syllable of the feminine *illa*, we have made *la* ; it is thus also that from the first syllable of that word, we have made our pronoun *il* (he), which we use with verbs, as likewise from the feminine *illa* we have made *elle* (she).

We use *le* before substantives masculine in the singular ; *la* before substantives feminine, also in the singular ; and, as the letter *s*, in the French language, is the sign of the plural when it is added to the singular, we have formed *les* from the singular *le*. *Les* serves equally for both genders.

When *le* or *la* comes before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the *e* or *a* is cut off, and an apostrophe is put instead of the letter omitted. (See page 3.)

From the foregoing remarks it follows that the learner is to translate the English article

<i>The, by :</i>	{	<i>le</i> before a noun masculine singular.
		<i>la</i> before a noun feminine singular.
		<i>l'</i> before a noun, either masculine or feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.
		<i>les</i> before any noun in the plural.
<i>A or an is translated by :</i>	{	<i>un</i> before a noun masculine.
		<i>une</i> before a noun feminine.

The English prepositions *to* and *at* are generally rendered in French by *à* ; and *of* and *from* by *de*, or *d'* if the word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

EXERCISE I.

The father.—*The mother.*—*The children.*—*The brother.*—
père m. mère f. enfants pl. frère m.
The sister.—*The uncle.*—*The aunt.*—*The relations.*—*A son.*—
sœur f. oncle m. tante f. parents pl. fils m.
A daughter.—*The man.*—*The women.*—*A boy.*—
filles f. homme h m. femmes pl. garçon m.
The day.—*The night.*—*The sun.*—*The moon.*—*The*
jour m. nuit f. soleil m. lune f.
stars.—*A history.*—*The school.*—*A book.*—*The page.*—
étoiles pl. histoire f. école f. livre m. page f.

CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLE.

When the prepositions *à* (*to* or *at*) or *de* (*of* or *from*) precede the article *le* before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated, we contract *à le* into *au*, and *de le* into *du* ; and before plural nouns of either gender, *à les* is changed into *aux*, and *de les* into *des*.

A and *de* are not contracted with *le* before nouns which begin with a vowel or *h* mute, but then the article suffers elision.

Nor are *à* and *de* ever contracted with *la*.

The learner will therefore translate

<i>To the,</i> or <i>at the,</i> by :	{	<i>au</i>	{	before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated.
		<i>à la</i>		before a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirated.
		<i>à l'</i>		before a noun masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel, or <i>h</i> mute.
		<i>aux</i>		before any noun in the plural.

Of the, or from the, by: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{du} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{before a noun masculine singular, beginning} \\ \text{with a consonant, or } h \text{ aspirated.} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{de la} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{before a noun feminine singular, beginning} \\ \text{with a consonant, or } h \text{ aspirated.} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{de l'} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{before a noun masculine or feminine, in the} \\ \text{singular, beginning with a vowel, or } h \text{ mute.} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{des} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{before any noun in the plural.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

To a, to an, at a, at an, are translated by: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{à un} \quad \text{before a noun masculine.} \\ \text{à une} \quad \text{before a noun feminine.} \end{array} \right.$

Of or from a or an, by: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{d'un} \quad \text{before a noun masculine.} \\ \text{d'une} \quad \text{before a noun feminine.} \end{array} \right.$

EXERCISE II.

To the king.—To the queen.—To the hero.—To the scholars.—
roi m. reine f. héros h asp. écoliers pl.

Of the master.—Of the house.—Of the church.—Of the coat.—
maître m. maison f. église f. habit h m.

Of the curtains.—To a dictionary.—Of a grammar.—To a pen.—
rideaux pl. dictionnaire m. grammaire f. plume f.

—Of a penknife.—At the hotel.—From the garden.—To the
canif m. hotel h m. jardin m.

town.—Of the harp.—To a watch.—From a clock.—
ville f. harpe f. h asp. montre f. horloge f.

Of the ladies.—At an inn.
dames pl. auberge f.

GENERAL RULES ON THE ARTICLE.

I. The article must always agree in gender and number with its noun.

II. The article and the prepositions *à* and *de*, whether contracted or not, are generally repeated in French before every substantive, although often omitted in English.

EXAMPLE.

Le lis est le symbole de la candeur, | The lily is the emblem of candour,
de l'innocence et de la pureté. | innocence and purity.

EXERCISE III.

The lion is the king of animals.—The rose is the
—m. est roi m. art. animaux pl. —f.

queen of flowers. — Idleness is the mother of all
reine f. art. fleurs pl. art. paresse f. mère f. de tous
 vices.—The love of life is natural to man. —
art. — pl. amour m. art. vie f. naturel art. homme h m.
 She (is learning) drawing, music, and dancing.—
Elle apprend art. dessin m. art. musique f. et art. danse f.
 I write to the nephew and niece.—The Creator of
J'écris neveu m. pr. art. nièce f. Créateur m.
 heaven and earth.—The vigour of mind
art. ciel m. pr. art. terre f. vigueur f. art. esprit m.
 and body.
pr. art. corps m.

III. OF THE ARTICLE *du, de la, de l', des*, USED IN A PARTITIVE SENSE, *i.e.* implying a part, not the whole.

Du for the masculine, *de la* for the feminine, *de l'* before a vowel or *h* mute, *des* for the plural, answering to the English partitive words SOME or ANY expressed or understood, must be repeated before every noun in French.

EXAMPLES.

Envoyez-moi <i>du</i> pain, <i>de la</i> viande, et <i>des</i> raisins.	<i>Send me some bread, meat, and grapes.</i>
Avez-vous <i>de la</i> monnaie?	<i>Have you any change?</i>

EXERCISE IV.

Give me some paper, ink, and pens. — Take
Donnez-moi papier m. encre f. et plumes pl. Prenez
 some tea or coffee. — (Put in) some sugar and cream.—
thé m. ou café m. Mettez-y sucre m. crème f.
 Offer him some cheese, eggs, butter, and milk. —
Offrez-lui fromage m. œufs pl. beurre m. lait m.
 Drink some wine, some beer, or some water. — Eat
Buvez vin m. bière f. eau f. Mangez
 some hash. — Bring me some oil, mustard,
hachis m. h asp. Apportez-moi huile h m. moutarde f.
 pepper, and salt. — Have you any money?
poudre m. sel m. Avez-vous argent m.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

A *Substantive* or *Noun* is the name of any person or thing that exists, or of which we have any notion : as, *Alexandre*, Alexander ; *Londres*, London ; *homme*, man ; *vertu*, virtue.

Substantives are either *proper* or *common*.

The substantive *proper*, or *proper name*, is the name appropriated to one person, or one thing only : as, *Bonaparte*, *Paris*.

The *common* noun is that which belongs to persons, or things of the same kind : as, *homme*, man ; *arbre*, tree ; which appellation equally suits all men, all trees.

Among common nouns, we must distinguish the *collective nouns* ; so called, because, although used in the singular number, they present to the mind the idea of several persons or things.

Collective nouns are divided into *general* and *partitive*. The former express a whole body : as, *armée*, army ; *forêt*, forest. The latter express only a partial number : as, *multitude*, a multitude ; *quantité*, a quantity.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

THE plural of Substantives, either masculine or feminine, is formed by adding an *s* to the singular ; as,

le père,	the father.	les pères,	the fathers.
la mère,	the mother.	les mères,	the mothers.
l'enfant,	the child.	les enfants,	the children.
le moment,	the moment.	les moments,*	the moments.

* It was formerly the practice to leave out the *t* in the plural of substantives and adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent*, but at present the adjective *tout* (all) is the only word that drops the *t* in the plural masculine ; as,

Tous les parents.		All the relations.
Tous les habitants. (<i>L'Académie</i> .)		All the inhabitants.

To *tout* might be added *gent*, plural *gens* ; but *gent* singular is only used in familiar poetry ; as, *la gent marécageuse*, the marshy tribe.

EXCEPTIONS.

1st EXCEPTION.—Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural ; as,

le lis,	<i>the lily.</i>	les lis,	<i>the lilies.</i>
la voix,	<i>the voice.</i>	les voix,	<i>the voices.</i>
le nez,	<i>the nose.</i>	les nez,	<i>the noses.</i>

EXERCISE V.

The *trees* of their orchards.—The *flowers* of our gardens.—
arbre leurs verger fleur nos jardin
 The *palaces* of the kings.—Buy me four pounds of walnuts.
palais roi Achetez-moi quatre livre noix
 —The *fashions* of the French.—The *crosses* of the knights.—
mode Français croix chevalier
 The *laws* of those countries.—The *movements* of the armies.—
loi ces pays mouvement armée
 The *spoons* and *forks* are on the table. — He has
cuiller et art. fourchette sont sur — f. Il a
 three sons and two daughters.
trois fils deux fille

2d EXCEPTION.—Nouns ending in the singular in *au*, *eu*, *œu*, or *ou*, take an *x* instead of an *s* in the plural ; as,

chapeau,	<i>hat.</i>	chapeaux,	<i>hats.</i>
jeu,	<i>game.</i>	jeux,	<i>games.</i>
vœu,	<i>vow.</i>	vœux,	<i>vows.</i>
bijou,	<i>jewel.</i>	bijoux,	<i>jewels.</i>
hibou,	<i>owl.</i>	hiboux,	<i>owls.</i>

The following words in *ou*, conform to the general rule, taking an *s* in the plural :

clou,	<i>nail.</i>	sou,	<i>penny.</i>
filou,	<i>pickpocket.</i>	trou,	<i>hole.</i>
fou,	<i>fool.</i>	verrou,	<i>bolt.</i>
licou,	<i>halter.</i>		

EXERCISE VI.

A fleet of twenty ships. — The boats of the sailors.—
flotte f. vingt vaisseau bateau matelot
 He (found himself) between two fires. — Owls are
Il se trouva entre deux feu art. hibou sont
 hideous birds. — The knives are on the sideboard.—
 pr. art. ²*hideux* ¹*oiseau* couteau sur buffet m.
 (There are) many pickpockets in London and Paris.—
Il y a beaucoup de filou à Londres et à —

CHAPTER. III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

THE *Adjective* is a word which expresses a particular quality or distinction ascribed to a substantive.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be properly joined with the word *personne*, person ; or *chose*, thing. Thus, *fidèle*, faithful, and *agréable*, agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say, *une personne fidèle*, a faithful person ; *une chose agréable*, an agreeable thing.

In English, the adjectives never vary on account of gender and number, but in French they change their termination, in order to agree, in gender and number, with the substantives to which they relate.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an *e* mute to the masculine singular ; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
prudent,	prudente,	<i>prudent.</i>	petit,	petite,	<i>little.</i>
grand,	grande,	<i>great.</i>	joli,	jolie,	<i>pretty.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.

1st EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *e* mute do not change their termination in the feminine ; as,

un homme aimable, <i>an amiable</i> <i>man.</i>	une femme aimable, <i>an amiable</i> <i>woman.</i>
un jeune garçon, <i>a young boy.</i>	une jeune fille, <i>a young girl.</i>

EXERCISE VIII.

Their house is *small*, but it is well *situated*. —
Leur maison f. est petit mais elle est bien situé
 That street is *narrow* and *dark*. —The meat is *cold* ; the
Cette rue f. étroit et obscur viande f. froid
 water is *hot*. —This pear (is not) *ripe*. — Avoid
eau f. chaud Cette poire f. n'est pas mûr Evitez

bad company. — (She is) a *clever* woman. — She
 art. *mauvais compagnie* f. *C'est habile femme.* Elle
 has a *black* gown and a *red* scarf. — The *eldest* sister
 a ²*noir* ¹*robe* f. ²*rouge* ¹*écharpe* f. ²*ainé* ¹*sœur*
 is *prudent, well-informed, rich, and pretty.*
 — *bien instruit riche joli*

2d EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *f* change that letter into *ve* for the feminine ; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
actif,	active,	neuf,	neuve,
bref,	brève,	vif,	vive,
	<i>brief, short.</i>		<i>new. lively.</i>

3d EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *x* change the *x* into *se* ; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
heureux,	heureuse,	paresseux,	paresseuse,
jaloux,	jalouse,	vertueux,	vertueuse,
	<i>happy. jealous.</i>		<i>idle. virtuous.</i>

The following in *x* form their feminine thus :

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
doux,	douce,	roux,	rousse,
faux,	fausse,	vieux,	vieille,
	<i>sweet, mild. red. old.</i>		

EXERCISE IX.

Is she *attentive* ? — Catherine de Médicis was *ambitious*,
Est-elle attentif — — — *était ambitieux*,
imperious, and superstitious ; she was a *native* of Florence.—
impérieux et superstitieux * *natif de* —

Joshua (brought down) the walls of the *proud* Jericho.—
Josué fit tomber mur orgueilleux Jéricho f.

The Italian language is *sweet* and *harmonious*. — That
²*italienne* ¹*langue* f. *doux harmonieux* Cette
 news is *false*.—The new tower is in the old town.
nouvelle f. *faux* ²*neuf* ¹*tour* f. *dans vieux ville* f.

4th EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ien, on*, and *et*, form their feminine by doubling the last consonant, and adding an *e* mute after it ; as

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
cruel,	cruelle,	chrétien,	chrétienne,
pareil,	pareille,	bon,	bonne,
ancien,	ancienne,	net,	nette,
	<i>cruel. similar. ancient.</i>		<i>Christian. good. clean.</i>

The following adjectives follow the *general rule*, except in the additional accent :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
complet,	complète	<i>complete.</i>
incomplet,	incomplète	<i>incomplete.</i>
discret,	discrète	<i>discreet.</i>
indiscret,	indiscrète,	<i>indiscreet</i>
inquiet,	inquiète,	<i>uneasy.</i>
prêt,	prête,	<i>ready.</i>
secret,	secrète,	<i>secret.</i>

EXERCISE X.

The soul is *immortal*.—I (am reading) *ancient history*.
âme f. est immortel Je lis art. ²ancien ¹histoire f. h m.
 We are in the nineteenth century of the *Christian*
Nous sommes dans dix-neuvième siècle m. ²chrétien
 era. — She (is not) pretty, but she is *good*. — That poor
ère f. Elle n'est pas joli mais est bon Cette pauvre
 woman is *dumb*.—Are you *ready*, sister?—Your mother is
femme muet Etes-vous prêt ma sœur? Votre mère
 very *uneasy*.—That person is extremely *indiscreet*.
très inquiet personne f. extrêmement indiscret

5th EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *eur*, formed from a participle present by the change of *ant* into *eur*, make *euse* in the feminine ; as,

<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
connaissant,	connaisseur,	connaisseuse,	<i>knowing, a judge.</i>
flattant,	flatteur,	flatteuse,	<i>flattering, a flatterer.</i>
mentant,	menteur,	menteuse,	<i>lying, a liar.</i>
trompant,	trompeur,	trompeuse,	<i>deceiving, deceitful.</i>

OBSERVATION.—Words of this sort are real adjectives, but are for the most part used as substantives. About a hundred follow this rule.

The following must be excepted, forming their feminine by the change of *eur* into *eresse* :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
demandeur,	demanderesse,	<i>a plaintiff.</i>
défendeur,	défenderesse,	<i>a defendant.</i>
enchanteur,	enchanteresse,	<i>enchanting.</i>
pêcheur,	pêcheresse,	<i>a sinner.</i>
vengeur,	vengeresse,	<i>avenging, an avenger.</i>

Inventeur, an inventor; *inspecteur*, an inspector; *persécuteur*, a persecutor, make, in the feminine, *inventrice*, *inspectrice*, and *persécutrice*.

As to the adjectives, or rather substantives used adjectively, ending in *teur*, which, though derived from verbs, are not formed from a participle present, by the change of *ant* into *eur*, they change *teur* into *trice* for the feminine; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
accusateur,	accusatrice,	an accuser.
bienfaiteur,	bienfaitrice,	a benefactor, a benefactress.
conducteur,	conductrice,	a conductor, a conductress.
instituteur,	institutrice,	a schoolmaster, a governess.

Upwards of fifty nouns follow this rule.

Those who know Latin will see that the most part of substantives ending in *teur* and *trice* are derived from the Latin words in *tor* and *trix*; as *accusator*, *accusatrix*, etc.

Adjectives ending in *eur*, not derived from verbs, and conveying an idea of *opposition* or *comparison*, follow the general rule of taking an *e* mute in the feminine; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
antérieur, antérieure,	anterior.	majeur, majeure,	major.
citérieur, citérieure,	citerior.	mineur, mineure,	minor.
extérieur, extérieure,	exterior.	postérieur, postérieure,	posterior.
intérieur, intérieure,	interior.	supérieur, supérieure,	superior.
inférieur, inférieure,	inferior.	ultérieur, ultérieure,	ulterior.
meilleur, meilleure,	better.		

Empereur, emperor; *ambassadeur*, ambassador; *gouverneur*, governor; *serviteur*, servant, make in the feminine, *impératrice*, *ambassadrice*, *gouvernante*, *servante*.

Chasseur, hunter, has two feminines—*chasseuse* in prose, and *chasseresse* in poetry.

Chanteur, singer, has also two feminines—*chanteuse* and *cantatrice*. This last is used in speaking of a professional singer, or of an eminent female vocalist.

Words expressing *trades*, *professions*, &c., usually carried on by men, have no feminine, even when followed by women; as,

graveur,	an engraver.	imprimeur,	a printer.
sculpteur,	a sculptor.	docteur,	a doctor.

professeur, *a professor.*
 auteur, *an author.*

traducteur, *a translator.*
 &c. &c.

EXAMPLES.

Mademoiselle de Schurman, née à Cologne en 1606, était peintre, graveur, sculpteur, philosophe, géomètre.—(LE DICT. DE BIOGRAPHIE.)

Madame Deshoulières était un poète aimable.—(LE DICT. DES DICT.)

Madame de Staël est un de nos plus grands écrivains.—(BOISTE.)

Une femme auteur.—(L'ACAD.)

Mademoiselle de Schurman, born at Cologne in 1606, was a painter, an engraver, a sculptor, a philosopher, and a geometrician.

Madame Deshoulières was an amiable poetess.

Madame de Staël is one of our greatest writers.

A female author.

EXERCISE XI.

She is a great talker and a great laugh^r. — Is she
 C'est grand parleu^r rieur Est-elle

quarrelsome?—Joan of Arc was the avenger of France.—
 querelleur Jeanne d'Arc fut vengeur art. — f.

She is the benefactress of the poor. — She is a good actress,
 C'est bienfaiteur pauvre pl. bon acteur

and a celebrated singer.—Minerva was the protectress of the
 célèbre Minerve était protecteur

fine arts.—The city of Troy was in Asia Minor.—
 beaux-arts ville f. Troie dans art. Asie f. Mineur

(There is) a superior power.

Il y a ²supérieure ¹puissance f.

There are seven adjectives ending in *c* which form their feminine thus :

Masc. Fem.

blanc, blanche, white.

caduc, caduque, infirm.

franc, franche, frank.

grec, grecque, Greek, Grecian.

Masc. Fem.

public, publique, public.

sec, sèche, dry.

turc, turque, Turkish.

The six following terminations in *s* take *se* in the feminine :

Masc. Fem.

bas, basse, low.

épais, épaisse, thick.

exprès, expresse, express.

Masc. Fem.

gras, grasse, fat.

gros, grosse, big.

las, lasse, tired.

The following adjectives form their feminine irregularly :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
beau,	belle,*	<i>fine.</i>	long,	longue,	<i>long.</i>
bénin,	bénigne,	<i>benign.</i>	malin,	maligne,	<i>malignant.</i>
favori,	favorite,	<i>favourite.</i>	mou,	molle,*	<i>soft.</i>
fou,	folle,*	<i>foolish.</i>	nouveau,	nouvelle,*	<i>new.</i>
frais,	fraîche,	<i>fresh.</i>	nul,	nulle,	<i>null.</i>
gentil,	gentille,	<i>genteel.</i>	sot,	sotte,	<i>silly.</i>
jumeau,	jumelle,	<i>twin.</i>	traître,	traîtresse,	<i>traitorous.</i>

* REMARK.—The feminines, *belle, folle, molle, nouvelle*, are formed from the masculines, *bel, fol, mol, nouvel*, which are used before a vowel, or & mute.

EXERCISE XII.

(Here is) a handsome white gown.—His public life is
Voici beau ²*blanc* ¹*robe f.* *Sa* ²*public* ¹*vie f. est*
 irreproachable. — This table is too low. — This board is
irréprochable *Cette* — *f.* *trop bas* *planche f.*
 too long and too thick. — This soup is too fat. — It is
long *épais* *soupe f.* *gras* *C'est*
 a new discovery. — Have you seen my favourite flower,
nouveau découverte f. *Avez-vous vu ma* ²*favori* ¹*fleur f.*
 the rose, so fresh and so sweet?
 — *f. si frais* *doux*

PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES,

GENERAL RULE.

Adjectives form their plural, like substantives, by the simple addition of an *s* to the singular ; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
grand, <i>masc.</i>	grands,	} <i>great.</i>
grande, <i>fem.</i>	grandes,	
savant, <i>masc.</i>	savants,	} <i>learned.</i>
savante, <i>fem.</i>	savantes,	

This rule is without any exceptions for the feminine, but the masculine has the three following :

1st EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the plural masculine ; as, *gras, fat ; gros, big ; heureux, happy.*

2d EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *au* take *x* in the plural masculine ; as, *beau*, handsome ; *nouveau*, new ; plural, *beaux*, *nouveaux*.

3d EXCEPTION.—Adjectives ending in *al* change this termination into *aux* for the plural masculine ; as, *égal*, equal ; *moral*, moral ; plural, *égaux*, *moraux*.

A few adjectives ending in *al* follow the general rule, and take *s* in the plural, and others have no plural masculine ; but these are adjectives seldom used.

Tout, all, is the only adjective that drops the *t* in the plural masculine. (See page 11.)

EXERCISE XIII.

Give some *entertaining* books to those *pretty little* girls.
Donnez ²*amusant* ¹*livre* m. *ces* *joli* *petit* *filles*

—He has *powerful* enemies, but their efforts (will be)

Il a de puissant ennemi m. *mais leurs* — m. *seront vain* and *useless*.—These chickens are *big* and *fat*, but those *vain* and *inutile* *Ces poulet* m. *sont gros* *gras*

partridges are very *lean*. — All the *general* officers were *perdrix* f. *très maigre* *Tout* ²*général* ¹*officier* *étaient*

present.—The *old* and the *new* soldiers did *won-*
présent *vieux* *nouveau* *soldat* *firent* pr. art. *mer-*

ders. — I agree to *all* those conditions.

veille *Je consens* *ces* — f.

OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

There are commonly reckoned three degrees of comparison ; the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The *Positive* is the adjective itself, merely expressing the quality of an object, without any comparison ; as,

Un enfant sage et studieux. | A well-behaved and studious child.

EXERCISE XIV.

She is *satisfied* with her lot. — Socrates and Plato were
Elle est content de son sort *Socrate* *Platon étaient*
 two great philosophers.—Virgil had a *fine* and *delicate*
deux grand philosophe *Virgile avait* ²*fin* ¹*et* ⁴*délicat*
taste.—The style of Fénélon is *rich* and *harmonious*.—The
goût m. — m. — *est riche* *harmonieux*

Alps are high and steep. — The city of Rome is full
Alpes f. pl. *sont haut escarpé* ville f. — *rempli*
 of ancient and modern monuments.
²*ancien* ³*et* ⁴*moderne* ¹—— m.

The *Comparative Degree* draws a comparison between two or more objects. There are three sorts of comparatives, viz., of *superiority*, *inferiority*, and *equality*.

The comparative of *superiority* is formed by putting the adverb *plus*, more, before the adjective, and the conjunction *que*, than, after it ; as,

Athènes a été <i>plus</i> illustre que Lacédémone.		Athens was more illustrious than Lacedemon.
---	--	--

N.B.—The comparative degree is often formed in English by adding *r* or *er* to the positive ; as, *wise*, *wiser* ; *great*, *greater* ; and as these letters stand for the adverb *more*, they must be rendered in French by its corresponding adverb *plus* ; thus, *wiser*, *plus sage* ; *greater*, *plus grand*.

Plus must be repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE XV.

Virtue is more precious than riches. — He is
 art. *vertu* f. *est* *précieux* art. *richesses* pl. *Il*
happier than a king. — He is more fortunate than wise. — It is
content roi *heureux* sage *Il*
 more noble to forgive than to (avenge one's self). —
 — *de pardonner* *de se venger*

The simplicity of nature is more pleasing than all the
simplicité f. art. — f. *agréable* tout
 embellishments of art. — London is more populous
ornement m. art. — m. *Londres* m. *peuplé*
 than Paris, but France is larger and more populous than
 — m. *mais* art. — f. *grand et*

England. — The Thames is deeper than the Seine.
 art. *Angleterre* f. *Tamise* f. *profond* — f.

The comparative of *inferiority* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it ; as,

L'Afrique est moins peuplée que l'Europe.		Africa is less populous than Europe.
--	--	---

Moins is to be repeated before every adjective.

This comparative may also be formed by putting the verb in the negative, with *si*, *so*, before the adjective, and *que*, *as*, after it; *as*,

L'Afrique n'est pas *si* peuplée | *Africa is not so populous as*
que l'Europe. *Europe.*

EXERCISE XVI.

Shipwreck and death are *less fatal than* the
 art. *naufnage* m. art. *mort* f. *sont* *funeste*
 pleasures which attack virtue. — He is *less* polite and
plaisir qui attaquent art. *vertu* f. *Il est poli*
 obliging *than* his brother. — She is *less* amiable *than* her sister. —
obligeant son frère Elle aimable sœur
 Cæsar (was not) *less* brave *than* Alexander. — They are *less*
César n'était pas — Alexandre. Ils
 happy *than* you think. — He (is not) *so* rich *as* his brother.
heureux vous ne pensez n'est pas riche beau-
in-law.
frère.

The comparative of *equality* is formed by placing the adverb *aussi*, *as*, before the adjective, and *que*, *as*, after it; *as*,

Aristide était *aussi* vaillant *que* juste. | *Aristides was as valiant as just.*

Aussi must be repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE XVII.

Is he *as* clever, and *as* docile *as* his cousin? — He is *as*
Est-il habile — son — m. Il est
 tall *as* you. — Your niece is *as* pretty *as* that girl. — Socrates
grand vous Votre nièce joli cette fille Socrate
 was *as* valiant *as* wise. — Cicero was *as* pious *as* eloquent.
était vaillant sage Cicéron pieux éloquent
 — It is *as* easy to do good *as* to do evil. —
Il aisé de faire art. bien m. art. mal m.

History is *as* useful *as* agreeable.
 art. *histoire* h m. *utile agréable.*

The *Superlative Degree* expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree. There are two sorts of superlatives, the *relative* and the *absolute*.

The superlative *relative* expresses a relation or comparison with another object; it is formed by putting

before the comparative the article *le, la, les*, in its natural or contracted state.

EXAMPLES.

Le chien est l'animal <i>le plus</i> fidèle.		<i>The dog is the most faithful animal.</i>
Ce sont les hommes <i>les plus</i> sages		<i>They are the wisest men in the as-</i>
de l'assemblée.—(L'ACAD.)		<i>sembly.</i>

The superlative *relative* may also be formed by placing before the comparative one of the possessive adjectives, *mon, ma, mes*, my ; *ton, ta, tes*, thy ; *son, sa, ses*, his or her ; *notre, nos*, our ; *votre, vos*, your ; *leur, leurs*, their.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Mon plus</i> puissant protecteur.		My most <i>powerful</i> protector.
<i>Votre plus</i> grand ennemi.		Your greatest enemy.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Gold is *the most* pure, *the most* precious, *the most* ductile,
 art. or m. est pur, précieux,
 and, after platina, the heaviest of all metals. —
 après art. platine m. pesant tout art. métal m.
 The least excusable of all errors is that which is
 ——— art. erreur f. celle qui
 wilful. — The elephant is *the strongest* of all animals. —
 volontaire éléphant m. fort art. animal m.
 I prefer my house to *the finest* palace. — *Our greatest*
 Je préfère ma maison beau palais m. Nos grand
 interests. — *Your most* cruel enemies.
 intérêt m. Vos cruel ennemi m.

The superlative *absolute* does not imply any relation to another object, but merely expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree ; it is formed by putting before the adjective one of these words, *très,* fort,† bien*, very ; *extrêmement*, extremely ; *infiniment*, infinitely ; *excessivement*, excessively ; or any other adverb expressing a very high degree.

EXERCISE XIX.

Dublin is a *very* large and *very* fine city. — That lady is
 — est grand beau ville f. Cette dame
very charitable. — He is a *very* unfortunate man. — He
 ——— C'est ² ³malheureux ¹homme Il

* *Très*, from the Greek τρις, thrice ; *très-heureux*, thrice happy.

† *Fort*, abridgment of *fortement*, strongly.

(is not) *very* clever. — This soup is *very* hot. — That
n'est pas habile Cette soupe f. *chaud* Cet
 work is *very* much esteemed by the learned. — Madame
ouvrage m. * *estimé de* *savant m. pl.* —
 Dacier was *extremely* learned. — The Rhône is *extremely* rapid.
 — *était savant* — *m. rapide*
 — God is *infinitely* just.
Dieu juste.

The three adjectives, *bon*, *mauvais*, and *petit*, and the three adverbs, *bien*, *mal*, and *peu*, form their degrees in the following manner :

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Ad- jectives.	<i>bon</i> , good.	<i>meilleur</i> , better.	<i>le meilleur</i> , the best.
	<i>mauvais</i> , bad.	<i>pire</i> , worse.	<i>le pire</i> , the worst.
	<i>petit</i> , little.	<i>moindre</i> , less.	<i>le moindre</i> , the least.
Ad- verbs.	<i>bien</i> , well.	<i>mieux</i> , better.	<i>le mieux</i> , the best.
	<i>mal</i> , badly.	<i>pis</i> , worse.	<i>le pis</i> , the worst.
	<i>peu</i> , little.	<i>moins</i> , less.	<i>le moins</i> , the least.

Plus mauvais, *plus petit*, *plus mal*, are also used, but never *plus bon*, *plus bien*, *plus peu*.

EXERCISE XX.

That wine is good, but this is better. — Lend me
Ce vin m. est *mais celui-ci* *Prêtez-moi*
 the best book in your library. — He writes well, but his
livre m. de votre bibliothèque *Il écrit* *sa*
 sister writes still better. — The life of a slave is worse
sœur *encore* *vie f.* *esclave m.*
 than death itself. — He was a little better, but he is
que art. mort f. même *se portait* *mais est*
 now worse than ever. — Speak less. — (It is) his least
maintenant *que jamais* *Parlez* *C'est son*
 misfortune. — The remedy is worse than the disease. —
malheur m. *remède m. est* *mal m.*
 Temperance is the best doctor.
art. tempérance f. *médécin m.*

There are some adjectives which have neither comparatives nor superlatives, because the qualities which they express are in themselves the highest degree of perfection, worth, etc. ; such are *divin*, *éternel*, *excellent*, *immortel*, *immense*, etc., etc.

OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

The Adjectives of Number are divided into *Cardinal* and *Ordinal*.

The *Cardinal* numbers are used to count and express the number of persons or things.

The *Ordinal* numbers mark the order and rank which persons or things hold with regard to one another.

Numeral adjectives are all of both genders, with the exception of *un*, *premier*, and *second*, which take an *e* in the feminine.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

- 1 Un.
- 2 Deux.
- 3 Trois.
- 4 Quatre.
- 5 Cinq.
- 6 Six.
- 7 Sept.
- 8 Huit.
- 9 Neuf.
- 10 Dix.
- 11 Onze.
- 12 Douze.
- 13 Treize.
- 14 Quatorze.
- 15 Quinze.
- 16 Seize.
- 17 Dix-sept.
- 18 Dix-huit.
- 19 Dix-neuf.
- 20 Vingt.
- 21 Vingt et un.
- 22 Vingt-deux.
- 23 Vingt-trois.
- 24 Vingt-quatre.
- 25 Vingt-cinq.
- 26 Vingt-six.
- 27 Vingt-sept.
- 28 Vingt-huit.
- 29 Vingt-neuf.
- 30 Trente.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

- 1st Premier.
- 2d Second, or Deuxième.
- 3d Troisième.
- 4th Quatrième.
- 5th Cinquième.
- 6th Sixième.
- 7th Septième.
- 8th Huitième.
- 9th Neuvième.
- 10th Dixième.
- 11th Onzième.
- 12th Douzième.
- 13th Treizième.
- 14th Quatorzième.
- 15th Quinzième.
- 16th Seizième.
- 17th Dix-septième.
- 18th Dix-huitième.
- 19th Dix-neuvième.
- 20th Vingtième.
- 21st Vingt et unième.
- 22d Vingt-deuxième.
- 23d Vingt-troisième.
- 24th Vingt-quatrième.
- 25th Vingt-cinquième.
- 26th Vingt-sixième.
- 27th Vingt-septième.
- 28th Vingt-huitième.
- 29th Vingt-neuvième.
- 30th Trentième.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

- 31 Trente et un.
- 32 Trente-deux.
- 33 Trente-trois.
- 34 Trente-quatre.
- 35 Trente-cinq.
- 36 Trente-six.
- 37 Trente-sept.
- 38 Trente-huit.
- 39 Trente-neuf.
- 40 Quarante.
- 41 Quarante et un.
- 42 Quarante-deux.
- 43 Quarante-trois.
- 44 Quarante-quatre.
- 45 Quarante-cinq.
- 46 Quarante-six.
- 47 Quarante-sept.
- 48 Quarante-huit.
- 49 Quarante-neuf.
- 50 Cinquante.
- 51 Cinquante et un.
- 52 Cinquante-deux.
- 53 Cinquante-trois.
- 54 Cinquante-quatre.
- 55 Cinquante-cinq.
- 56 Cinquante-six.
- 57 Cinquante-sept.
- 58 Cinquante-huit.
- 59 Cinquante-neuf.
- 60 Soixante.
- 61 Soixante et un.*
- 62 Soixante-deux.
- 63 Soixante-trois.
- 64 Soixante-quatre.
- 65 Soixante-cinq.
- 66 Soixante-six.
- 67 Soixante-sept.
- 68 Soixante-huit.
- 69 Soixante-neuf.
- 70 Soixante et dix.*
- 71 Soixante et onze.
- 72 Soixante-douze.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

- 31st Trente et unième.
- 32d Trente-deuxième.
- 33d Trente-troisième.
- 34th Trente-quatrième.
- 35th Trente-cinquième.
- 36th Trente-sixième.
- 37th Trente-septième.
- 38th Trente-huitième.
- 39th Trente-neuvième.
- 40th Quarantième.
- 41st Quarante et unième.
- 42d Quarante-deuxième.
- 43d Quarante-troisième.
- 44th Quarante-quatrième.
- 45th Quarante-cinquième.
- 46th Quarante-sixième.
- 47th Quarante-septième.
- 48th Quarante-huitième.
- 49th Quarante-neuvième.
- 50th Cinquantième.
- 51st Cinquante et unième.
- 52d Cinquante-deuxième.
- 53d Cinquante-troisième.
- 54th Cinquante-quatrième.
- 55th Cinquante-cinquième.
- 56th Cinquante-sixième.
- 57th Cinquante-septième.
- 58th Cinquante-huitième.
- 59th Cinquante-neuvième.
- 60th Soixantième.
- 61st Soixante et unième.
- 62d Soixante-deuxième.
- 63d Soixante-troisième.
- 64th Soixante-quatrième.
- 65th Soixante-cinquième.
- 66th Soixante-sixième.
- 67th Soixante-septième.
- 68th Soixante-huitième.
- 69th Soixante-neuvième.
- 70th Soixante et dixième.
- 71st Soixante et onzième.
- 72d Soixante-douzième.

* We say also, but less frequently, and not so well for euphony, *soixante-un*, *soixante-dix*.—(FRENCH ACADEMY.)

CARDINAL NUMBERS.	ORDINAL NUMBERS.
73 Soixante-treize.	73d Soixante-treizième.
74 Soixante-quatorze.	74th Soixante-quatorzième.
75 Soixante-quinze.	75th Soixante-quinzième.
76 Soixante-seize.	76th Soixante-seizième.
77 Soixante-dix-sept.	77th Soixante-dix-septième.
78 Soixante-dix-huit.	78th Soixante-dix-huitième.
79 Soixante-dix-neuf.	79th Soixante-dix-neuvième.
80 Quatre-vingts.	80th Quatre-vingtième.
81 Quatre-vingt-un.	81st Quatre-vingt-unième.
82 Quatre-vingt-deux.	82d Quatre-vingt-deuxième.
83 Quatre-vingt-trois.	83d Quatre-vingt-troisième.
84 Quatre-vingt-quatre.	84th Quatre-vingt-quatrième.
85 Quatre-vingt-cinq.	85th Quatre-vingt-cinquième.
86 Quatre-vingt-six.	86th Quatre-vingt-sixième.
87 Quatre-vingt-sept.	87th Quatre-vingt-septième.
88 Quatre-vingt-huit.	88th Quatre-vingt-huitième.
89 Quatre-vingt-neuf.	89th Quatre-vingt-neuvième.
90 Quatre-vingt-dix.	90th Quatre-vingt-dixième.
91 Quatre-vingt-onze.	91st Quatre-vingt-onzième.
92 Quatre-vingt-douze.	92d Quatre-vingt-douzième.
93 Quatre-vingt-treize.	93d Quatre-vingt-treizième.
94 Quatre-vingt-quatorze.	94th Quatre-vingt-quatorzième.
95 Quatre-vingt-quinze.	95th Quatre-vingt-quinzième.
96 Quatre-vingt-seize.	96th Quatre-vingt-seizième.
97 Quatre-vingt-dix-sept.	97th Quatre-vingt-dix-septième.
98 Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.	98th Quatre-vingt-dix-huitième.
99 Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.	99th Quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième.
100 Cent.	100th Centième.
101 Cent un.	101st Cent unième.
102 Cent deux.	102d Cent deuxième.
200 Deux cents.	200th Deux centième.
1000 Mille.	1000th Millième.
10,000 Dix mille.	10,000th Dix millième.
1,000,000 Million.	1,000,000th Millionième.

Among the words which express an idea of number, there are some which are real *substantives*; these are divided into three sorts, called *collective*, *distributive*, and *proportional*.

The *collective* denotes a certain quantity or collection of things; as, *une douzaine*, a dozen; *une vingtaine*, a score; *un million*, a million.

The *distributive* expresses a part of the whole; as, *la moitié*, the half; *le quart*, the quarter.

The *proportional* denotes the progressive increase of things ; as, *le double*, the double ; *le triple*, the triple ; *le centuple*, a hundred-fold.

REMARKS.—The *ordinal* numbers, the *collective* and *distributive* nouns take an *s* in the plural ; as,

Les premières douzaines.
Les sept huitièmes.

The first dozens.
The seven eighths.

But *vingt* and *cent* are the only *cardinal* numbers which take an *s* in the plural, that is, when preceded by another number which multiplies them ; as,

Quatre-vingts chevaux.
Cinq cents soldats.

Eighty horses.
Five hundred soldiers.

The same remark holds good when the substantive is understood ; as,

Nous étions deux cents.

We were two hundred (persons).

But if *vingt* and *cent* are followed by another number, or used for the date of the year, they do not take an *s* ; as,

Quatre-vingt-dix chevaux.
Cinq cent vingt soldats.
L'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt.

Ninety horses.
Five hundred and twenty soldiers.
In the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty.

Mille, a thousand, never takes an *s* in the plural, but it takes one when it means a *mile* ; thus *dix mille* is ten thousand, and *dix milles* means ten miles ; and in mentioning the Christian era, we abridge *mille* into *mil* ; as,

Napoléon mourut en mil huit cent vingt et un.

Napoleon died in one thousand eight hundred and twenty-one.

The French make use of the *cardinal* numbers instead of the *ordinal*, 1st. In mentioning the days of the month, except the *first* : thus we say, *le deux mars*, the second of March ; *le quatre mai*,* the fourth of May ; and, *le*

* Voltaire used to say *le deux de mars*, *le quatre de mai* ; and Racine *le deux mars*, *le quatre mai*. With regard to grammatical correctness, the first construction is certainly preferable ; but if we consult usage, which, in point of language, is the rule of opinion, we will say *le deux mars*, *le quatre mai*. It is thus that our good authors almost always express themselves, as well as the persons who pique themselves on speaking purely, and who avoid every kind of affectation. —(GRAM. DES GRAMMAIRES.)

premier mai, the first of May ; *le premier juin*, the first of June.

2d. In speaking of sovereigns, as *George quatre*, George the fourth ; *Louis quatorze*, Louis the fourteenth. The first of the series is excepted, for we say *George premier*, *Henri premier*, and not *George un*, *Henri un* ; but we say indifferently *deux* or *second*.

Henri deux, roi de France ; *Catherine deux*, impératrice de Russie.
—(L'ACAD.)

François second succéda à *Henri second*.—(GIBARD.)

Henry the second, king of France ;
Catharine the second, empress of Russia.

François the second succeeded *Henry* the second.

In speaking of the Emperor Charles V. and of Pope Sixtus V., we say *Charles-Quint*, *Sixte-Quint*.

EXERCISE XXI.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus, in art. *Amérique f. fut découvert par Christophe Colomb* * the year *onethousandfour hundred and ninety-two*.—We have an m. * *Nous avons*

eighty (men of war) ready to sail, we (shall soon have) *vaisseaux de guerre prêts faire voile en aurons bientôt* two hundred. — Our troops took *five thousand* prisoners. —

Nos troupes firent *prisonnier* (It is) *four miles* from here.— (Send me) the *two first dozens*. *Il y a mille m. ici Envoyez-moi*

— Your letter of the *fifteenth* of January (reached me) on *Votre lettre f. * janvier m'est parvenue **

the *first* of February.—*Louis the sixteenth*, *Louis the eighteenth* * *février* — — —

and *Charles the tenth*, were brothers.—*Francis the first*, king — — — *étaient frère François*

of France, and *Frederick the second*, king of Prussia, were — — — *Frédéric Prusse étaient de*

great warriors.
grand guerrier.

OBSERVATIONS ON WORDS that are alike in FRENCH and ENGLISH.

There are many substantives and adjectives which are alike in both languages, with the exception of the difference in pronunciation, and that some require accents in French; and there are others which differ only in their termination.

Most words are alike in both languages, when ending in—

<i>ice, ice,</i>	as	{ place, préface, race, trace, avarice, justice, injustice, service, vice, etc.
<i>ade, ude,</i>	"	{ ambuscade, brigade, cavalcade, sérénade, fortitude, multitude, prélude, prude, etc.
<i>ance, ence,</i>	"	{ distance, ignorance, tempérance, éloquence, évidence, patience, silence, etc.
<i>ant, ent,</i>	"	{ constant, élégant, éléphant, instant, absent, accident, compliment, excellent, etc.
<i>ile, ule,</i>	"	{ docile, ductile, reptile, versatile, globule, mule, ridicule, etc.
<i>acle,</i>	"	{ miracle, obstacle, oracle, réceptacle, spectacle, tabernacle, etc.
<i>al,</i>	"	{ métal, minéral, local, moral, principal, général, naval, royal, libéral, radical, etc.
<i>ble,</i>	"	{ câble, charitable, fable, table, probable, Bible, éligible, visible, noble, double, etc.
<i>ge,</i>	"	{ âge, cage, charge, image, page, rage, collège, déluge, forge, orange, siège, etc.
<i>ine,</i>	"	- doctrine, famine, héroïne, machine, etc.
<i>ion,</i>	"	{ action, éducation, instruction, légion, nation, opinion, passion, question, etc.

Most English words ending in *ary, ory, our, or, ous, cy, ty,* and *y,* become French by changing these terminations in the following manner :—

<i>ary</i>	.	.	into <i>aire,</i>	as	military,	<i>militaire.</i>
<i>ory</i>	.	.	" <i>oire,</i>	"	victory,	<i>victoire.</i>
<i>our</i>	.	.	" <i>eur,</i>	"	favour,	<i>faveur.</i>
<i>or</i>	.	.	" <i>eur,</i>	"	doctor,	<i>docteur.</i>
<i>ous</i>	.	.	" <i>eux,</i>	"	famous,	<i>fameux.</i>
<i>cy</i>	.	.	" <i>ce,</i>	"	constancy,	<i>constance.</i>

CHAPTER IV. OF PRONOUNS.

THE word *Pronoun* is formed of the word *noun*, and of the Latin preposition *pro*, which means *instead of*.

In the French language, Pronouns are divided into five classes, viz. the *Personal*, the *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, the *Relative*, and the *Indefinite*.

§ I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, or personified objects.

There are *three persons*: the first is, the person speaking; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of.

PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Examples.</i>	
<i>Subject.</i>	Je,	I,	<i>Je donne,</i>	<i>I give.</i>
<i>Object,</i>	{ moi,	{ <i>me,</i>	<i>suivez-moi,</i>	<i>follow me.</i>
		{ <i>to me,</i>	<i>écoutez-moi,</i>	<i>listen to me.</i>
	{ me,	{ <i>me,</i>	<i>il me flatte</i>	<i>he flatters me.</i>
		{ <i>to me,</i>	<i>il me parle,</i>	<i>he speaks to me.</i>
	<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>Subject,</i>	nous,	<i>we,</i>	<i>nous donnons,</i>	<i>we give.</i>
<i>Object,</i>	nous,	{ <i>us,</i>	<i>il nous voit,</i>	<i>he sees us.</i>
		{ <i>to us,</i>	<i>il nous parle,</i>	<i>he speaks to us.</i>

The pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons are both masculine and feminine, that is, of the same gender as the person or persons they represent.

PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS. — The Personal Pronouns are generally placed before the verb, *except*—

1. When the pronouns take a preposition before them in French; as, *il parle de nous*, he speaks of us.

2. In interrogative sentences; as, *parlez-vous?* do you speak?

3. When the verb is in the imperative *affirmative* (the

third persons excepted); as, *parlez-moi*, speak to me. But if the imperative is used with a negative, the personal pronouns are placed before the verb; as, *ne me parlez pas*, do not speak to me.

EXERCISE XXIII.

I speak French.—*I have said that.*—*Lend me your pencil.*—
parle français *ai dit cela* *Prêtez votre crayon m.*
Help me.—*Believe me.*—*Write to me.*—*He hurts me.*—
Aidez *Croyez* *Ecrivez* *Il blesse*
He sees me.—*This picture pleases me more than the other.*
voit *Ce tableau m. plaît plus que autre*
—We praise God.—*He knows us.*—*We tell him the*
louons Dieu connaît disons lui
truth, but he (will not) believe us.—*He related to us the*
vérité f. mais ne veut pas croire a raconté
history of his misfortunes.
histoire h m. ses malheur

PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular.			Examples.	
Subject,	tu,	thou,	tu es heureux,	thou art happy.
Object,	{ toi,	{ thee,	je parle pour toi,	I speak for thee.
	{ te,	{ thee,	Dieu te voit,	God sees thee.
		{ to thee,	je te parle,	I speak to thee.
Plural.				
Subject,	vous,	you,	vous chantez,	you sing.
Object,	vous,	{ you,	il vous connaît,	he knows you.
		{ to you,	je vous parle,	I speak to you.

REMARK.—When from politeness we use *vous* (you), instead of the singular *tu* (thou), the verb is put in the plural, but the adjective or participle following remains in the singular, and takes the feminine termination if we speak to a female; as,

Monsieur, vous êtes bien bon. | Sir, you are very good.
 Madame, vous êtes estimée. | Madam, you are esteemed.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Thou fearest God.—*He (will do) it for thee.*—*He praises*
crains Dieu Il s'fera le pour loue
thee.—*He (will speak) to thee.*—*You have spoiled this book.*—
parlera avez gâté ce livre m.

How troublesome *you* are !—How good *you* are !—Ladies,
Que ¹importun ¹m. ²êtes ²bon ¹f. ² *Mesdames,*
 how amiable *you* are !—I bring *you* the newspaper.—*You*
²aimable ¹ ² *apporte* *journal* m.
 (are fond of) flowers ; if *you* like, I (will give) *you* this
aimez art. *fleur* *si* *voulez* *donnerai* *ce*
 fine nosegay.
beau bouquet m.

PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

	Singular.	Examples.
Subject,	{ il, m. he,	il donne, he gives.
	{ elle, f. she,	elle donne, she gives.
Object,	{ lui, m. { him,	il parle de lui, he speaks of him.
	{ { to him,	il lui parle, he speaks to him.
	{ lui, f. to her,	je lui parlerai, I will speak to her.
	{ elle, f. her,	il parle d'elle, he speaks of her.
	Plural.	
Subject,	{ ils, m. they,	ils mangent, they eat.
	{ elles, f. they,	elles chantent, they sing.
Object,	{ eux, m. them,	venez avec eux, come with them.
	{ elles, f. them,	c'est pour elles, it is for them.
	{ leur, m. & f. to them,	je leur parlerai, I will speak to them.

EXERCISE XXV.

He has done his duty. — *She* sings well. — *He* complains
a fait son devoir chante bien se plaint
 of her. — I (shall go) with him. — I (am writing) to him. —
irai avec écris
 What (shall I say) to her ? — *They* speak to them with respect.
Que dirai-je m. parlent —
 — *They* (will return) with them. — (Do not come) without
 f. reviendront m. Ne venez pas sans
 them. — *They* prefer the country to the town.
 f. m. préfèrent campagne f. ville f.

N.B.—Although *I, thou, he, they*, are generally expressed by *Je, tu, il, ils, elles*, there are cases in which they are translated by *moi, toi, lui, eux*. For explanations respecting these pronouns, see the Syntax.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, *SE, SOI*.

Se, soi, pronouns of the third person, are used both for persons and things. *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi* generally after a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

SE	<i>himself,</i>	il se loue,	<i>he praises himself.</i>
	<i>herself,</i>	elle se flatte,	<i>she flatters herself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	il se détruit,	<i>it destroys itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	se louer,	<i>to praise oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	ils or elles se flattent,	<i>they flatter themselves.</i>
SOI	<i>to himself,</i>	il s'attribue,	<i>he attributes to himself.</i>
	<i>to herself,</i>	elle s'attribue,	<i>she attributes to herself.</i>
	<i>to oneself,</i>	se prescrire,	<i>to prescribe to oneself.</i>
	<i>to themselves,</i>	ils or elles se prescri-	<i>they prescribe to them-</i>
		vent,	<i>selves.</i>
	<i>himself,</i>	chacun pour soi,	<i>every one for himself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	cela est bon en soi,	<i>that is good in itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	il faut songer à soi,	<i>one must think of oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	on doit parler rare-	<i>people should seldom speak</i>
		ment de soi,	<i>of themselves.</i>

EXERCISE XXVI.

He submits *himself* to your orders. — That lady praises
soumet *vos ordre* *Cette dame loue*
herself (too much.) — She gives *herself* (a great deal) of
trop *donne* *beaucoup*
trouble. — They expose *themselves* to danger. — They
peine *exposent* art. — m.
(will accustom) *themselves* (to it.) — (Every one) works for
³*accoutumeront* ¹ ^{y²} *Chacun travaille pour*
himself. — The loadstone attracts iron to *itself*. —
aimant m. attire art. *fer m.*

Virtue is amiable in *itself*.
art. *vertu f. est aimable de*

§ II. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The *Possessive*, as well as the *Demonstrative* Pronouns, are of a mixed nature, partaking of the properties both of pronouns and adjectives; therefore some Grammarians class them among the *adjectives*; others, again, refuse them the name of *pronouns* or *adjectives*, and place them in the rank of *articles*. Indeed, it would be difficult to state, within a moderate compass, the various opinions which Grammarians have exhibited respecting this part of speech. As for us, we shall follow here the classification adopted by the French Academy, and by the most correct modern writers, and subdivide the *Possessive* Pronouns of the old Grammarians into two parts:

1st, *Possessive Adjectives* ;2nd, *Possessive Pronouns* ;

And, from the affinity these two kinds of words have with each other, we shall place them one after another in separate articles.

OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

The *Possessive* adjectives, as the word implies, denote possession or property, and are called *adjectives* rather than *pronouns*, because they do not stand *for* a noun, but, on the contrary, are always joined to a noun which they modify. They are :

Singular.		Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	For both genders.	
mon	ma	mes	my
ton	ta	tes	thy
son	sa	ses	his, her, its
notre	notre	nos	our
votre	votre	vos	your
leur	leur	leurs	their

OBSERVE.—1. The *possessive adjectives* must, as well as the preposition which may accompany them, be repeated before every substantive, and agree with each in gender and number.

2. The *possessive adjectives* always agree in French with the noun following, and never with the preceding one ; that is to say, they agree with the object *possessed*, and not with the *possessor*, as in English.

3. For the sake of euphony, *mon*, *ton*, *son*, are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EXERCISE XXVII.

My father, mother, and brothers are in the country.—
père mère frère sont à campagne f.
His uncle, aunt, and cousins are in Wales. — I
oncle tante — m. sont dans le pays de Galles
 have seen Paris, *its* theatres, and buildings.—*Our* perseverance
ai vu — théâtre m. édifice m. persévérance f.
 and *our* efforts.—*Your* country and *your* friends.—*Their*
— m. pays m. ami m.

house and *their* servants. — *Her* son is learned. — *His* sister
maison f. *domestique* *fils est savant* *sœur*
 is married. — *My* ambition, *thy* honesty, and *his* ingratitude.
marlée — f. *honnêteté* f. h m. — f.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns always relate to some noun spoken of before, with which they agree in gender and number.

The possessive pronouns are :

Singular.		Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	<i>mine</i>
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	<i>thine</i>
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	<i>his, hers, its</i>
		<i>Pl. for both genders.</i>		
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		<i>ours</i>
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres		<i>yours</i>
le leur	la leur	les leurs		<i>theirs</i>

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Here is) your hat, (don't take) *mine*. — His
Voici *chapeau* m. *ne prenez pas*
 house and *mine* have been burnt, but *theirs* (has not)
maison f. *et* *ont été brûlées mais* *n'a point*
 suffered. — Your books are better bound than *mine*. — My
souffert *livre* m. *sont* *reliés que*
 watch (does not go) so well as *hers*. — Your garden is
montre f. *ne va pas si* *que* *jardin* m. *est*
 larger than *ours*, but our orchard is larger than *yours*. —
plus grand *verger* m.
 You have taken my gloves, and (I have) taken *yours*. —
avez pris *gant* m. *moi j'ai*
 I know your relations, but I (don't know) *theirs*.
connais *parent* m. pl. *ne connais pas*

§ III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

We shall subdivide the Demonstrative pronouns, as we have done the Possessive, into two parts :

- 1st, *Demonstrative Adjectives* ;
- 2nd, *Demonstrative Pronouns*.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

The *Demonstrative* adjectives always precede a substantive, which they modify by pointing it out. They are :

<i>This, or that</i>	{	CE, before a noun masc. sing. beginning with a consonant, or an <i>h</i> aspirated.
		CET, before a noun masc. sing. beginning with a vowel, or an <i>h</i> mute.
		CETTE, before any feminine noun.
<i>These, or those,</i>	{	CES, before any noun in the plural, whether masculine or feminine.

RULE.—The Demonstrative adjectives must be repeated in French before every substantive, though in English *this, that, these, those*, are frequently used before the first substantive only, and understood before the others ; as,

<i>Ces hommes, ces femmes, et ces</i>	<i>Those men, women, and children</i>
<i>enfants jouent.</i>	<i>are playing.</i>

EXERCISE XXIX.

This picture, *that* bird, *this* doll, *these* flowers, and
tableau m. oiseau m. poupée f. fleur et
those shells are (my sister's).—Taste *this* wine.—Take
coquillage sont à ma sœur Goûtez vin m. Prenez
 one of *these* biscuits.—*Those* boys and girls (are going) to
 — *m. garçon fille vont*
 school.—Give him *this* book and *that* slate.—*These*
 art. *école Donnez-lui livre m. ardoise f.*
 cups and saucers (are not) clean.
tasse soucoupe ne sont pas propre.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns serve to point out the persons or things which they represent. They are :

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
ce	- -	<i>this, that, it.</i>	No plural.		
celui	celle	<i>that.</i>	ceux	celles	<i>those.</i>
celui-ci	celle-ci	<i>this.</i>	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>these.</i>
celui-là	celle-là	<i>that.</i>	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>those.</i>
ceci	- -	<i>this.</i>	} No plural.		
cela	- -	<i>that.</i>			

CE, demonstrative *pronoun*, differs from *ce*, demonstrative *adjective*, in this, that the former is always joined to the verb *être*, to be, or followed by *qui*, or *que*; whereas the latter is always followed by a substantive. Thus, in this phrase: **CE** *qui me plaît*, **C'EST** *sa modestie*, what (*the thing which*) pleases me is his modesty, **CE** is a demonstrative *pronoun*; and it is a demonstrative *adjective* in the following: **CE** *juge est incorruptible*, that judge is incorruptible.

When *ce* does not come immediately before a substantive, it answers for both numbers and genders; as,

De toutes les vertus celle qui se fait le plus chérir, c'est l'humanité.	Of all the virtues, that which makes itself most beloved is humanity.
Ce furent les Phéniciens qui inven- tèrent l'écriture.—(BOSSUET.)	It was the Phœnicians who invented writing.

The French Academy remark that *ce* joined to the verb *être* generally forms a gallicism.

The pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, always relate to a noun expressed before; as,

Voici votre livre, où est celui de votre frère?	Here is your book, where is that of your brother?
J'admire les traductions de Pope et celles de Delille.	I admire the translations of Pope and those of Delille.

When two or more objects have been spoken of, *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci* are used with reference to the nearest, and *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là* refer to the most distant, or first-mentioned object; as,

Voilà deux pistolets, lequel chois- sez-vous, celui-ci ou celui-là?	There are two pistols, which do you choose, this or that?
Le corps périt, l'ame est immortelle; cependant nous négligeons celle- ci, et nous sacrifions tout pour celui-là.	The body perishes, the soul is im- mortal; yet we neglect the latter, and sacrifice every thing for the former.

The last example shows also that the English words *the former* are likewise expressed by *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*; and, *the latter* by *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they relate.

REMARK.—**LA** means *there*, and **CI** is an abbreviation of **ICI**, *here*; so that **CELUI-CI** is equivalent to *this here*, and **CELUI-LÀ**, to *that there*.

Ceci and *cela* are never joined to nouns, nor used with reference to any; they stand for something pointed at, but not named; they have no plural, and are both masculine.

Ceci est bon, mais cela est mauvais. | *This is good, but that is bad.*
Donnez-moi ceci, et gardez cela. | *Give me this, and keep that.*

EXERCISE XXX.

It is a misfortune.—(Here is) your umbrella, and *that* of
est malheur m. *Voici* *parapluie m.*
 your cousin. — Bring my scissors, and *those* of my
 — *m. Apportez ciseaux m. pl.*
 sister.—Which of these watches (will you have), *this* or
sœur. Laquelle montre f. voulez-vous ou
that ?—(Here are) fine pictures, buy *these* or *those*.—
Voici de beau tableau m. achetez

Give *this* to (the lady) and *that* to (the gentleman).—An
Donnez madame monsieur
 upright magistrate and a brave officer are equally
²*intègre* ¹*magistrat m.* — *officier m. sont également*
 estimable; *the former* makes war against domestic
 — *fait art. guerre f. à art.² domestique*
 enemies, *the latter* protects us against foreign enemies.
¹*ennemi m. pl.* *protège contre art.² extérieur* ¹

§ IV. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative pronouns are those which relate to a noun or pronoun, or phrase going before, which is thence called the *antecedent*.

The relative pronouns are: *qui, que, quoi, lequel, dont, le, la, les, où, en, y.*

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS, *qui, que, quoi, lequel, dont.*

These pronouns are called *relative*, when they have an antecedent.

Qui, que, quoi are of both genders and numbers.

EXAMPLES.

qui,	{	who,	{ Dieu qui est juste,	God who is just.
		which,	{ la dame qui parle,	the lady who is speaking.
			{ les oiseaux qui chantent,	the birds which are singing.

que,	{ whom,	l'homme <i>que</i> vous voyez,	<i>the man whom you see.</i>
	{ which,	les livres <i>que</i> vous lisez,	<i>the books which you read.</i>
quoi,	what,	{ voilà de <i>quoi</i> je voulais	{ <i>that is what I wished to speak</i>
		vous parler,	<i>to you about.</i>

REMARK.—*Que* loses the *e* before a vowel; *qui* never changes.

LEQUEL is a compound of *quel*, and the article *le* with which it incorporates in its natural or contracted state in the following manner :

Singular.		Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which.</i>
duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	<i>of which.</i>
auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which.</i>

This pronoun is used with reference to persons and things, with which it always agrees in gender and number. *Quoi* sometimes supplies its place, but in speaking of things only.

DONT, a relative pronoun of both genders and numbers, is used when speaking of persons or things : it supplies the place of *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, *de quoi*, but is never used to ask a question.

EXAMPLES of *lequel* and *dont*.

lequel, m. <i>which</i> ,	{ le fauteuil sur lequel je suis assis,	{ <i>the arm-chair on which I am sitting.</i>
laquelle, f. <i>which</i>	{ c'est une raison à laquelle il n'y a point de réplique,	{ <i>it is a reason to which there is no reply.</i>
dont,	{ of which, { c'est une maladie dont on ne connaît pas la cause,	{ <i>it is an illness, the cause of which is unknown.</i>
	{ of whom, l'homme dont vous parlez,	{ <i>the man of whom you speak.</i>
	{ whose, { la nature dont nous ignorons les secrets,	{ <i>nature, whose secrets are unknown to us.</i>

Qui, *que*, *quoi*, *lequel*, are called relative pronouns *absolute*, when they have no antecedent, and only present to the mind a vague and indeterminate idea.

In this case *qui* is employed only in speaking of persons, *que* and *quoi* in speaking of things.

Lequel marks a distinction, and is used in interrogative sentences, when asking which person or thing among several.

EXAMPLES.

qui,	{ who, whom,	{ qui (<i>quelle personne</i>) est là ? je ne sais <i>qui</i> est arrivé,	{ who is there ? I don't know who has arrived.
		{ qui appelez-vous ? consultez <i>qui</i> vous voudrez,	{ whom do you call ? consult whom you please.
que,	{ what,	{ que (<i>quelle chose</i>) cherchez-vous ? je ne sais <i>que</i> faire,	{ what are you seeking ? I don't know what to do.
		{ à <i>quoi</i> (<i>à quelle chose</i>) pensez-vous ? quoi de plus aimable que la vertu ?	{ what are you thinking of ? what more amiable than virtue ?
lequel, m. which,	{ which,	{ <i>lequel</i> préférez-vous ? choisissez <i>lequel</i> vous voudrez,	{ which do you prefer ? choose which you please.
		{ <i>laquelle</i> de ses sœurs est mariée ?	{ which of his sisters is married ?

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS *le, la, les*.

These pronouns always accompany a *verb*, and are thus easily distinguished from the articles *le, la, les* (see page 8), which constantly accompany a *noun*.

EXAMPLES.

le, masc.	{ him, it,	{ je <i>le</i> connais, voilà un bon livre, lisez- <i>le</i> ,	{ I know him. there is a good book, read it.
		{ <i>her</i> , je <i>la</i> vois, vous avez la clef, donnez- <i>la</i> moi,	{ I see her. you have the key, give it me.
la, fem.	{ her, it,	{ vous <i>les</i> trouverez dans mon tiroir, il <i>les</i> connaît,	{ you will find them in my drawer. he knows them.

In this phrase, *Je connais les princes et les princesses, je les vois souvent* (I know the princes and the princesses, I see them often), the two first *les* are articles, the third is a pronoun.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *où*.

Où is a relative pronoun when used instead of *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, preceded by a preposition. This pronoun is employed only in speaking of things, and is of both genders and numbers.

EXAMPLES.

L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort. — (VOLTAIRE.)	<i>The instant in which we are born is a step towards death.</i>
La maison où je demeure. (ACAD.)	<i>The house in which I live.</i>
Les pays par où j'ai passé.	<i>The countries through which I have passed.</i>
La nécessité où il était réduit.	<i>The necessity to which he was reduced.</i>

EXERCISE XXXI.

The man *who* reasons. — The lady *whom* I see. — The sciences *to which* he applies. — Where is the gentleman — f.pl. *s'applique Où est monsieur of whom* you speak? — With *whom* (do you live)? — What *parlez Avec demeurez-vous* (shall we do) to-day? — *Which* (do you like) best of those *ferons-nous aujourd'hui aimez-vous* two pictures? — Prosperity gets us friends, and *tableau m. art. prospérité f. fait pr. art. ami* adversity tries *them*. — The state *in which* I find myself. *art. adversité f. éprouve état m. me trouve*

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *en*.

EN, a relative pronoun of both genders and numbers, is employed in speaking of persons and things: its principal use is to hold the place of a word or phrase already expressed which we do not wish to repeat, and it expresses *of him, of her, of it, of them, some, any, etc.*

EXAMPLES.

Cette demoiselle vous plaît, vous <i>EN</i> parlez souvent.	<i>That young lady pleases you, you often speak of her.</i>
Cette maladie est dangereuse, il pourrait <i>EN</i> mourir.	<i>That illness is dangerous, he might die of it.</i>
A-t-il des protecteurs? oui, il <i>EN</i> a de très-puissants.	<i>Has he any protectors? yes, he has some very powerful ones.</i>
Vous parlez d'argent, <i>EN</i> avez-vous? oui, j' <i>EN</i> ai.	<i>You talk of money, have you any? yes, I have some.</i>

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *y*.

Y, a relative pronoun of both genders and numbers, is sometimes employed with reference to persons, but it is of frequent and indispensable use when speaking of things: it corresponds to the English *to him, to her, to it, to them, in it, therein*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Je connais cet homme, je ne m'y fie pas.	<i>I know that man, I do not trust to him.</i>
Il aime l'étude et s'y livre entièrement.	<i>He loves study, and devotes himself entirely to it.</i>
J'ai reçu sa lettre, j'y répondrai.	<i>I have received his letter, I shall answer (to) it.</i>
Vos raisons sont bonnes, je m'y rends.	<i>Your reasons are good, I yield to them.</i>
J'y ai remarqué quelques fautes.	<i>I observed some faults in it, or in them.</i>

N.B.—The relative pronouns *en* and *y* are always placed before the verb, except with an imperative affirmative.

[See, in the Chapter on the Adverb, what we say upon *y*, adverb.]

EXERCISE XXXII.

They seldom speak of him. — Give me that, I
³rarement ²parlent ¹ Donnez-moi
 (am in want) of it. — He likes French authors, he often
^{ai} besoin ^{aime} art. ²français ¹auteur m. ³souvent
 speaks of them. — (Here are) strawberries, will you
²parle ¹ Voici pr. art. ^{fraise} voulez
 have any? — Take some more. — He is an honest man,
^{*} Prenez davantage C'est honnête
 trust to him. — I consent to it. — Those arguments are
^{fiez-vous} ^{consens} — m. ^{sont}
 conclusive; I see no reply to them. — The undertaking
^{concluant} ^{n'vois point de réplique} ^{entreprise f.}
 is difficult, but you (will succeed) in it.
^{difficile} ^{mais} ^{réussirez}

§ V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are so called, because they denote persons or things in an indefinite or general manner.

They are the following: *on, quiconque, quelqu'un, chacun, autrui, personne, l'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre, tel, tout.*

ON, *one, they, we, people, it*, etc. *On* is a contraction of the word *homme*, man. This pronoun is of very extensive use in the French language; we employ it whenever we speak in general terms, without designating any particular person: it has commonly a plural meaning, but always requires the verb to be in the third person singular.

EXAMPLES.

ON ne peut lire Télémaque sans devenir meilleur.	One cannot read <i>Telemachus</i> without becoming better.
ON dit que nous aurons bientôt la guerre.	They, or people, say we shall soon have war.
ON pense que la nouvelle est vraie.	It is thought that the news is true.
ON apprend mieux ce que l'on comprend, que ce que l'on ne comprend pas.	We learn better what we understand, than what we do not.

REMARK.—For the sake of euphony, the pronoun *on* takes an *l*, with an apostrophe (*l'*), after the words *et, si, où, que, qui*, and *quoi*.

EXAMPLES.

Et l'on dit, Si l'on savait, Où l'on veut, Ce que l'on comprend, Ceux à qui l'on doit,	} instead of	{ et on dit. si on savait. où on veut. ce qu'on comprend. ceux à qui on doit.
--	--------------	---

However, *on* remains the same when the following word is *le, la, or les*; we say: *et on le dit, si on le savait*, and not *et l'on le dit, si l'on le savait*.

L'on for *on* must never begin a sentence.

QUICONQUE, *whoever, whosoever, any person whatever*. This pronoun has no plural, and is used only with reference to persons.

EXAMPLES.

Quiconque a dit cela n'a pas dit la vérité.	Whoever said so, has not spoken the truth.
Quiconque me trompera sera puni.	Whoever deceives me will be punished.

Quiconque is generally masculine; however, when it evidently relates to a female, the adjective is put in the feminine; as,

Mesdames, <i>quiconque</i> de vous sera assez <i>hardis</i> pour médire de moi, je l'en ferai repentir. — (L'ACAD.)	<i>Ladies, whoever of you shall be bold enough to speak ill of me, I will make her repent it.</i>
---	---

QUELQU'UN, somebody, some one.

EXAMPLES.

J'attends <i>quelqu'un</i> .	<i>I wait for somebody.</i>
<i>Quelqu'un</i> me l'a dit.	Somebody told me so.

This pronoun takes gender and number; thus:—

<i>Quelqu'un</i> , <i>m.</i>	} one out of several.
<i>Quelqu'une</i> , <i>f.</i>	
<i>Quelques-uns</i> , <i>m. pl.</i>	} some, several, out of a greater number.
<i>Quelques-unes</i> , <i>f. pl.</i>	

<i>Quelqu'un</i> de ces messieurs.	<i>Some one of these gentlemen.</i>
<i>Quelqu'une</i> de ces dames.	<i>Some one of these ladies.</i>
J'ai lu <i>quelques-uns</i> de ces livres.	<i>I have read some of those books.</i>
Connaissez-vous <i>quelques-unes</i> de ces dames?	<i>Do you know any of those la- dies?</i>
Oui, j'en connais <i>quelques-unes</i> .	<i>Yes, I know some of them.</i>

CHACUN, *m.*, *CHACUNE*, *f.*, every one, each; without plural.

<i>Chacun</i> vit à sa manière.	<i>Every one lives after his own way.</i>
<i>Chacune</i> de ces demoiselles.	<i>Each of these young ladies.</i>

Un chacun, much used by old writers, is now obsolete.

[See page 49, what we say on the indefinite pronominal adjective *chaque*.]

AUTRUI, others, other people. (From the Latin *alterius*, gen. of *alter*, other.) This pronoun is masculine, and has no plural; it is always preceded by a preposition, and is used in speaking of persons only.

La charité se réjouit du bonheur d'autrui.	<i>Charity rejoices in the happiness of others.</i>
Ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit.	<i>Do not to others what you would not wish others should do to you.</i>

PERSONNE. This pronoun is always masculine and singular. When it means *no person*, *nobody*, *no one*, it takes the negative *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Personne ne sera assez hardi.</i>		<i>Nobody will be bold enough.</i>
<i>Je n'ai vu personne.</i>		<i>I have seen nobody.</i>

When *personne* is used without a negative in interrogative sentences, and those expressing doubt and uncertainty, it means *any person, any body, any one*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Y a-t-il personne d'assez hardi ?</i>		<i>Is there any body bold enough ?</i>
<i>Je doute que personne y réussisse.</i>		<i>I doubt whether any one will succeed in it.</i>

—(L'ACAD.)

PERSONNE, as a noun, is always feminine, and is used both in the singular and plural ; it means *a person, a man or woman, people*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>C'est une personne de mérite.</i>		<i>He is a man of merit.</i>
<i>C'est une personne très-instruite.</i>		<i>She is a very well-informed person.</i>
<i>Des personnes bien intentionnées.</i>		<i>Well-intentioned people.</i>

L'UN L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE L'AUTRE, *f.* ; LES UNS LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*, *one another, each other*.

This pronoun is employed in speaking of persons and things. *L'un l'autre* is used with reference to two, and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two.

If there be any preposition, it must be placed between *l'un l'autre*, and not before, as is the case in English before *one another* or *each other*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Ils se louent l'un l'autre.</i>		<i>They praise one another.</i>
<i>Les soldats s'excitaient les uns les autres.</i>		<i>The soldiers excited one another.</i>
<i>Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre.</i>		<i>They speak ill of each other.</i>

L'UN ET L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE ET L'AUTRE, *f.* ; LES UNS ET LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES ET LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*, *the one and the other, both*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>L'un et l'autre sont bons.</i>	[fait,	<i>Both are good.</i>
<i>L'un et l'autre rapportent le même</i>		<i>Both relate the same circumstance.</i>
<i>Ils se réunissaient les uns et les autres contre l'ennemi.</i>		<i>They all united against the enemy.</i>

When *l'un et l'autre* is followed by a substantive, it is no longer an indefinite pronoun, but an adjective; as, *l'un et l'autre CHEVAL*, both horses; *l'une et l'autre SAISON*, both seasons.

TEL, *m.*, TELLE, *f.*, *such, such a one, such a man, such a woman, he who, she who.* This word is an indefinite pronoun in the following and similar phrases, where it holds the place of the substantive *homme* or *femme*, or of the pronoun *celui* or *celle*; it is employed only in speaking of persons, and is never used in the plural in this sense.—

(Regnier-Desmarais, Restaut, and the modern Grammarians.)

EXAMPLES.

<i>Tel</i> rit aujourd'hui qui pleurera demain.	Such as laugh to-day will cry to-morrow.
<i>Telle</i> se croit belle qui souvent ne l'est pas.	Such a woman thinks herself handsome, who is not so.

But *tel* must be considered as an adjective when it is joined to a noun, or indicates comparison between persons or things; as,

Une <i>telle</i> conduite vous fait honneur.	Such conduct does you honour.
De <i>tels</i> animaux ne sont pas communs.	Such animals are not common.

[For any further explanation respecting the Pronouns, see the Syntax.]

EXERCISE XXXIII.

One has often need of a (person inferior) to oneself. —
a souvent besoin plus petit m. que soi
They say he is learned. — God (will punish) whosoever
dit qu' est Dieu punira
 transgresses his laws.—*Somebody* has taken my umbrella. —
transgresse loi a pris parapluie m.
Every one (will read) in his turn. — We (must not) covet
lira à tour m. Il ne faut pas désirer
 the property of other people. — Pride becomes nobody.
bien m. art. orgueil m. convient à
 — Fire and water destroy each other.—I have read
 art. feu m. art. eau f. se détruisent ai lu
 the Iliad and the Eneid, both have delighted me. —
Iliade f. Enéide f. ont enchanté
 (Do you know) Mr. *such a one?*
Connaissez-vous un

OF INDEFINITE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

We shall treat here of the *indefinite pronominal adjectives*, on account of their affinity with the indefinite pronouns ; these adjectives are : *chaque, nul, aucun, pas un, même, plusieurs, tout, quelconque, quel, quelque*.

CHAQUE, *every, each*, of both genders, and without plural. This word must not be confounded with *chacun* ; *chaque* is always followed by a substantive ; *chacun*, on the contrary, is used absolutely, and without a substantive (see page 46).

EXAMPLES.

<i>Chaque</i> âge a ses plaisirs.	Every age has its pleasures.
<i>Chaque</i> science a ses principes.	Every science has its principles.

NUL, *m.*, **NULLE**, *f.* ; **AUCUN**, *m.*, **AUCUNE**, *f.* ; **PAS UN**, *m.*, **PAS UNE**, *f.* ; *none, no, no one, not one, not any*.

These expressions have nearly the same meaning when accompanied by the negative *ne* placed before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Nul</i> homme n'est parfait.	No man is perfect.
Vous n'avez <i>aucune</i> preuve ; non, <i>pas une</i> .	You have no proof ; no, not one.

N.B.—*No*, in answer to a question, is translated by *non*.

MÊME, *same, self, like, alike* ; plural, **MÊMES** ; of both genders.

EXAMPLES.

C'est le <i>même</i> homme, la <i>même</i> personne.	It is the same man, the same person.
Les cendres du berger et du roi sont les <i>mêmes</i> .	The ashes of the shepherd and the king are alike.

Même is often placed after a substantive or a pronoun, to give more energy to the expression.

EXAMPLES.

C'est la bonté <i>même</i> .	She is kindness itself.
Le roi lui- <i>même</i> s'y opposa.	The king himself opposed it.
Nous le ferons nous- <i>mêmes</i> .	We will do it ourselves.

Même is also an adverb ; then it is invariable, and means *even, also*. This is the *etiam* of the Latins.

50 OF INDEFINITE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

EXAMPLE.

Les femmes et même les enfants | Women and even children were
furent tués. | killed.

PLUSIEURS, *several, many*. It is of both genders, and has no singular.

EXAMPLES.

Plusieurs historiens ont raconté. | Several historians have related.
En plusieurs occasions. | On several occasions.
Plusieurs de vos amis. | Many of your friends.

TOUT. There are various kinds of this word.

1^o. *Tout*, substantive masculine, *the whole*; the *totum* of the Latins:

Ne prenez pas le tout. | Do not take the whole.

2^o. *Tout*, adjective, *all, whole*; in Latin, *totus, omnis*:

Tout le monde; toute la terre; | All the world; all the earth; all
tous les hommes. | men.
Tout l'homme ne meurt pas. | The whole man does not die.

3^o. *Tout*, indefinite pronominal adjective, meaning *every, each, any, any one*; the *quisque* of the Latins. In this sense, *tout* never takes an article nor a pronoun, and is always singular:

Tout citoyen doit servir son pays. | Every citizen ought to serve his
country.
Toute peine mérite salaire. — (L'Ac.) | Every labour deserves a reward.

4^o. *Tout*, adverb, *quite, entirely, however*; in Latin, *omnino, plane*:

Elle fut tout étonnée. | She was quite astonished.
Nos vaisseaux sont tout prêts. | Our vessels are quite ready.

QUELCONQUE, *whatever, whatsoever*. When used with a negative, it is nearly synonymous with *nul, aucun*; it is of both genders, has no plural, and is always placed after a substantive.

EXAMPLES.

Il n'y a homme quelconque. | There is no man whatever.
Il n'y a raison quelconque. | There is no reason whatsoever.

When *quelconque* is used without a negative, it admits of a plural.

EXAMPLE.

Deux points quelconques. — (L'Ac.) | Two points whatsoever.

QUEL, m., QUELLE, f. ; QUELS, m. pl., QUELLES, f. pl., *what*. This indefinite pronominal adjective is used principally in interrogations and exclamations, or to express uncertainty and doubt. It is always followed by a noun expressed or understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quel maître ?—Quelle dame ?</i>	<i>What master ?—What lady ?</i>
<i>Quels livres, quelles brochures lisez-vous ?</i>	<i>What books, what pamphlets do you read ?</i>
<i>Quel bonheur !</i>	<i>What happiness !</i>
<i>Quel homme vous êtes !</i>	<i>What a man you are !</i>
<i>Il ne sait quel parti prendre.</i>	<i>He knows not what course to take.</i>
<i>J'ai des nouvelles à vous apprendre</i> <i>—Quelles (nouvelles) sont-elles ?</i>	<i>I have news to tell you.—What is it ?</i>

QUELQUE, s., QUELQUES, pl., *some*, of both genders. The singular denotes an indeterminate person or thing, and the plural an indeterminate number of persons or things.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelque auteur en a parlé.</i>	<i>Some author has mentioned it.</i>
<i>Il y a quelques difficultés.</i>	<i>There are some difficulties.</i>

Quelque, in this sense, corresponds to the *aliquis* of the Latins.

(The *Fr. Academy*, *M. Lemare*, and the modern Grammarians.)

Quelque, with *que* before the succeeding verb, means *whatever*. This is the *quantuscunque*, *quantacunque* of the Latins.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelque soin qu'on prenne.</i>	<i>Whatever care one may take.</i>
<i>Quelque raison qu'il ait.</i>	<i>Whatever reason he may have.</i>
<i>Quelques efforts que vous fassiez.</i>	<i>Whatever efforts you may make.</i>

But should *quelque* be followed by the verb *être*, to be, it is written in two words (*quel que*) ; in this case, *quel* must agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb. This expression answers to the *qualiscunque* of the Latins.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelle que soit votre intention.</i>	<i>Whatever your intention may be.</i>
<i>Quels que soient vos desseins.</i>	<i>Whatever your designs may be.</i>
<i>Quelles que soient vos vues.—(Ac.)</i>	<i>Whatever your views may be.</i>

Quelque followed by an adverb, or an adjective without a noun, is considered as an adverb, and is invariable ; it corresponds to the English *however, howsoever*, and to the Latin adverb *quantumvis*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelque bien écrits que soient ces ouvrages, ils ont peu de succès.</i>	However well written these works may be, they have little success.
<i>Quelque puissants qu'ils soient, je ne les crains point.</i> —(L'ACAD.)	However powerful they may be, I do not fear them.

Quelque is also considered as an adverb, when it is immediately followed by a cardinal number ; then, it means *about, nearly*, and answers to the *circiter* of the Latins. In this sense, *quelque*, is of the familiar style.

EXAMPLE.

Alexandre perdit <i>quelque</i> trois cents hommes, lorsqu'il défit Porus.—(D'ABLANCOURT.)	Alexander lost about three hundred men, when he defeated Porus.
--	---

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Every country has its customs.—No one is dissatisfied with
pays m. a coutume n'est mécontent de
 his own understanding.—No reason can justify a
jugement m. raison f. ne peut justifier le
 falsehood. —It is the same sun that (gives light to) all
mensonge m. C'est soleil m. qui éclaire
 the nations of the earth. — Divide the whole into several
—f. pl. terre f. Divisez en
 parts.—The whole fleet is at sea.—Every truth (is not)
partie ² flotte f. est en mer vérité f. n'est pas
 proper (to be told).—Any pretext whatever. — What
bon à dire Un prétexte m.
 lesson have you learnt ?—(There are) some defects in that
leçon f. avez appris ? Il y a défaut dans
 picture. — Whatever your talents (may be), you
tableau m. — m. pl. soient
 (will not succeed) without application.
ne réussirez pas sans —

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

THE word *Verb* comes from the Latin *verbum*, which means a word, an expression ; because the verb entering necessarily into every sentence, is in some manner the soul of speech, and thereby the WORD *par excellence*.

The long definitions of Grammarians of the nature of the verb amount to this, that it expresses existence, action, state, or the state of being acted upon.

French Verbs are divided into five kinds: *Active*, *Passive*, *Neuter*, *Pronominal*, and *Impersonal*, or rather *Unipersonal*, besides the two auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be.

There are FOUR CONJUGATIONS in French, which are distinguished by the termination of the present of the Infinitive.

The first	ends in ER,	as,	<i>parler</i> ,	to speak.
„ second	„ „ IR,	„	<i>finir</i> ,	to finish.
„ third	„ „ OIR,	„	<i>recevoir</i> ,	to receive.
„ fourth	„ „ RE,	„	<i>vendre</i> ,	to sell.

In each of these Conjugations, there are *regular*, *irregular*, and *defective* verbs.

A verb is called *regular*, when all its moods, tenses, and persons take exactly the forms which belong to one of the four conjugations ; it is called *irregular*, when, in some of its tenses, it takes forms different from those which characterize the conjugation to which it belongs. A verb is termed *defective*, when it is not used in some tenses or persons.

As the compound tenses of all verbs are formed by the help of *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, for which reason these two are called *auxiliary* verbs, they take the precedence of the four principal Conjugations, instead of coming in their turn among the irregular verbs to which they belong.

"It may not," says Lindley Murray, "be generally proper for young persons beginning the study of grammar, to commit to memory all the tenses of the verbs. If the *simple* tenses be committed to memory, and the rest carefully perused and explained, the business will not be tedious to the scholars, and their progress will be rendered more obvious and pleasing."

Without wishing to dictate any particular method to Teachers, we think the preceding remark of the celebrated English Grammarian particularly applicable to the learning of French verbs; let the scholar be first made familiar with the *simple* tenses, and he will find the rest an extremely easy task.

The greater number of Anglo-Gallic Grammarians mix the simple and compound tenses; in this Grammar they are kept separate, but presented at one view, side by side, so that while the student is learning the *simple* tense, he forms an acquaintance with its *compound*.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB AVOIR, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Avoir, *to have.*

PAST.

Avoir eu, *to have had.*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant, *having.*

COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant eu, *having had.*PARTICIPLE PAST.—Eu, *m., eue, f., had.*

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

J'ai,*	<i>I have.</i>
tu as,	<i>thou hast.</i>
il a,	<i>he has.</i>
nous avons,	<i>we have.</i>
vous avez,†	<i>you have.</i>
ils ont,	<i>they have.</i>

IMPERFECT.

J'avais,	<i>I had.</i>
tu avais,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il avait,	<i>he had.</i>
nous avions,	<i>we had.</i>
vous aviez,	<i>you had.</i>
ils avaient,	<i>they had.</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

J'eus,‡	<i>I had.</i>
tu eus,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il eut,	<i>he had.</i>
nous eûmes,§	<i>we had.</i>
vous eûtes,§	<i>you had.</i>
ils eurent,	<i>they had.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai eu,	<i>I have had.</i>
tu as eu,	<i>thou hast had.</i>
il a eu,	<i>he has had.</i>
nous avons eu,	<i>we have had.</i>
vous avez eu,	<i>you have had.</i>
ils ont eu,	<i>they have had.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu avais eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il avait eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous avions eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous aviez eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils avaient eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

PRETERITE ANTERIORE.

J'eus eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu eus eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il eut eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous eûmes eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous eûtes eü,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils eurent eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

* We write *j'ai*, and pronounce *jé*.

† All the second persons plural of the *simple tenses* end with *s* or *es*—with *s*, when the preceding *e* is pronounced with the sound of *a* in the English alphabet; as, *vous avez, vous parliez*—and with *es*, when the same *e* is not pronounced at all; as, *vous edies, vous faites*, etc.

‡ *J'eus* is pronounced *f'u*.

§ The first and second persons plural of the *Preterite Definite* of all verbs take a circumflex accent over the vowel that terminates the last syllable but one.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

J'aurai,	<i>I shall have.</i>
tu auras,	<i>thou shalt have.</i>
il aura,	<i>he shall have.</i>
nous aurons,	<i>we shall have.</i>
vous aurez,	<i>you shall have.</i>
ils auront,	<i>they shall have.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai eu,	<i>I shall</i>
tu auras eu,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il aura eu,	<i>he shall</i>
nous aurons eu,	<i>we shall</i>
vous aurez eu,	<i>you shall</i>
ils auront eu,	<i>they shall</i>

(have had.)

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

J'aurais,	<i>I should have.</i>
tu aurais,	<i>thou shouldst have.</i>
il aurait,	<i>he should have.</i>
nous aurions,	<i>we should have.</i>
vous auriez,	<i>you should have.</i>
ils auraient,	<i>they should have.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais eu,	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais eu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait eu,	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions eu,	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez eu,	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient eu,	<i>they should</i>

(have had.)

IMPERATIVE.

Aie,	<i>Have (thou).</i>
qu'il ait,	<i>let him have.</i>
ayons,	<i>let us have.</i>
ayez,	<i>have (ye).</i>
qu'ils aient,	<i>let them have.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que j'aie,	<i>That I may</i>
que tu aies,	<i>that thou mayst</i>
qu'il ait,	<i>that he may</i>
que nous ayons,	<i>that we may</i>
que vous ayez,	<i>that you may</i>
qu'ils aient,	<i>that they may</i>

(have.)

PRETERITE.

Que j'aie eu,	<i>That I may</i>
que tu aies eu,	<i>that thou mayst</i>
qu'il ait eu,	<i>that he may</i>
que nous ayons eu,	<i>that we may</i>
que vous ayez eu,	<i>that you may</i>
qu'ils aient eu,	<i>that they may</i>

(have had.)

IMPERFECT.

Que j'eusse,	<i>That I might</i>
que tu eusses,	<i>that thou mightst</i>
qu'il eût,*	<i>that he might</i>
que nous eussions,	<i>that we might</i>
que vous eussiez,	<i>that you might</i>
qu'ils eussent,	<i>that they might</i>

(have.)

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse eu,	<i>That I might</i>
que tu eusses eu,	<i>that thou mightst</i>
qu'il eût eu,	<i>that he might</i>
que nous eussions eu,	<i>that we might</i>
que vous eussiez eu,	<i>that you might</i>
qu'ils eussent eu,†	<i>that they might</i>

(have had.)

* The third person singular of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive of all verbs takes a circumflex accent over the vowel that precedes the final *t*; as, *qu'il eût*, *qu'il chantât*, *qu'il fût*, *qu'il vécût*, etc.

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Conditional past.

N.B.—As in the following Exercises the substantive will be often used in a partitive sense, the learner must attend to the directions given, page 10.

EXERCISE XXXV.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.—I have money.—He has an *argent m.*

opportunity.—She has patience.—We have friends.—You *ami m.*
occasion f. — *f.*

have wealth.—They have ambition.
bien m. — *f.*

IMPERF.—I had an umbrella.—He had a great-coat.—We
parapluie m. *redingote f.*

had cloaks. — You had a musket. — They had swords
manteau m. *fusil m.* *épée f.*

and pistols.
pistolet m.

PRETERITE DEFIN.—I had strawberries.—She had raspberries.
fraise f. *framboise f.*

—We had gooseberries.—You had cherries.—They had grapes.
groseille f. *cerise f.* *raisin m.*

REMARK.—When an adjective accompanies the substantive, and is placed after it, no change takes place in expressing the partitive word; but if the adjective comes before the substantive, then *de* is used instead of either *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

FUT. ABSOL.—I shall have ripe pears.—She will have good

2mûr 1poire f.
apples.—We shall have walnuts.—They will have filberts.—
pomme f. *noix f.* *aveline f.*

CONDIT. PRES.—I should have pretty pictures.—She
joli tableau m

would have a large fortune.—We would have beautiful houses.
grand — f. *beau maison f.*

—You would have good provisions.—They would have the
— *f.*

doctor (every day).
médecin tous les jours.

IMPERATIVE.—Let us have an explanation.—Have
explication f. a.

politeness.—Have perseverance.
politesse f. pl. persévérance f.

SUBJ. PRES.—That he may have talent and experience.—
—m. expérience f.

That you may have faithful servants.
²fidèle ¹domestique

IMPERF.—That I might have ready money.—That you
²comptant ¹argent
 might have courage and firmness.
—m. fermeté f.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB ÊTRE, TO BE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.
 Être, to be.

PAST.
 Avoir été, to have been.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT. COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.
 Étant, being. | Ayant été, having been.

PARTICIPLE PAST.—Été,* been.

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je suis,	<i>I am.</i>
tu es,	<i>thou art.</i>
il est,	<i>he is.</i>
nous sommes,	<i>we are.</i>
vous êtes,	<i>you are.</i>
ils sont,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

J'étais,	<i>I was.</i>
tu étais,	<i>thou wast.</i>
il était,	<i>he was.</i>
nous étions,	<i>we were.</i>
vous étiez,	<i>you were.</i>
ils étaient,	<i>they were.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai été,	<i>I have been.</i>
tu as été,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
il a été,	<i>he has been.</i>
nous avons été,	<i>we have been.</i>
vous avez été,	<i>you have been.</i>
ils ont été,	<i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu avais été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il avait été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous avions été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous aviez été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils avaient été,	<i>they had been.</i>

* Êté never changes its termination.

Simple Tenses.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je fus,	<i>I was.</i>
tu fus,	<i>thou wast.</i>
il fut,	<i>he was.</i>
nous fûmes,	<i>we were.</i>
vous fûtes,	<i>you were.</i>
ils furent,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai,	<i>I shall be.</i>
tu seras,	<i>thou shalt be.</i>
il sera,	<i>he shall be.</i>
nous serons,	<i>we shall be.</i>
vous serez,	<i>you shall be.</i>
ils seront,	<i>they shall be.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu eus été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il eut été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous eûmes été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous eûtes été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils eurent été,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai été,	<i>I shall have</i>	} <i>been.</i>
tu auras été,	<i>thou shalt have</i>	
il aura été,	<i>he shall have</i>	
nous aurons été,	<i>we shall have</i>	
vous aurez été,	<i>you shall have</i>	
ils auront été,	<i>they shall have</i>	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je serais,	<i>I should be.</i>
tu serais,	<i>thou shouldst be.</i>
il serait,	<i>he should be.</i>
nous serions,	<i>we should be.</i>
vous seriez,	<i>you should be.</i>
ils seraient,	<i>they should be.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais été,	<i>I should have</i>	} <i>been.</i>
tu aurais été,	<i>thou shouldst have</i>	
il aurait été,	<i>he should have</i>	
nous aurions été,	<i>we should have</i>	
vous auriez été,	<i>you should have</i>	
ils auraient été,	<i>they should have</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Sois,	<i>Be (thou).</i>
qu'il soit,	<i>let him be.</i>
soyons,	<i>let us be.</i>
soyez,	<i>be (you).</i>
qu'ils soient,	<i>let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je sois,	<i>That I may be.</i>
que tu sois,	<i>that thou mayst be.</i>
qu'il soit,	<i>that he may be.</i>
que nous soyons,	<i>that we may be.</i>
que vous soyez,	<i>that you may be.</i>
qu'ils soient,	<i>that they may be.</i>

PRETERITE.

Que j'aie été,	<i>That I may</i>	} <i>have been.</i>
que tu aies été,	<i>that thou mayst</i>	
qu'il ait été,	<i>that he may</i>	
que nous ayons été,	<i>that we may</i>	
que vous ayez été,	<i>that you may</i>	
qu'ils aient été,	<i>that they may</i>	

IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse,	<i>That I might be.</i>
que tu fusses,	<i>that thou mightst be.</i>
qu'il fût,	<i>that he might be.</i>
que nous fussions,	<i>that we might be.</i>
que vous fussiez,	<i>that you might be.</i>
qu'ils fussent,	<i>that they might be.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse été,	<i>That I might</i>	} <i>have been.</i>
que tu eusses été,	<i>that thou mightst</i>	
qu'il eût été,	<i>that he might</i>	
que nous eussions été,	<i>that we might</i>	
que vous eussiez été,	<i>that you might</i>	
qu'ils eussent été,	<i>that they might</i>	

CONDIT. PRES.—I would be impartial.—She would be excusable.—We would be ready in time.—You would be impatient.—They would be unreasonable.

COND. PAST.—He would have been rich and happy.—You would have been angry.—They would have been faithful.

IMPERATIVE.—Be more diligent.—Let us be just.

Be complaisant and affable.

OF REGULAR VERBS.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

1. There are, in French, as we have already said, but four conjugations, because all verbs terminate in the Infinitive, in one of four different manners: in *er*, *ir*, *oir*, or *re*.

2. To conjugate, with greater facility, one verb by another, it is necessary to observe, that in all verbs there are *radical* and *final* letters. The first are like the root of the verb, and contain its meaning: these never change throughout all the different tenses and persons. The *final* letters constitute the termination of the verb, and vary according to tenses and persons. Thus, in *parler*, to speak, the termination common to all verbs of the first conjugation being *er*, the radical letters are *parl*.

3. Among the simple tenses of a verb, there are five which serve to form all the others, and on that account are called *primitive*: these are, the *Present of the Infinitive*, the *Participle present*, the *Participle past*, the *Present of the Indicative*, and the *Preterite definite*.

From the *Present of the Infinitive* are formed :—

1st. The *Future absolute*, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rai*; as, *Parler*, *je parlerai*; *Finir*, *je finirai*; *Recevoir*, *je recevrai*; *Vendre*, *je vendrai*.

2nd. The *Conditional present*, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rais*; as, *Parler*, *je parlerais*; *Finir*, *je finirais*; *Recevoir*, *je recevrais*; *Vendre*, *je vendrais*.

Some Grammarians form the Conditional present, by adding an *s* to the Future, which is the simplest way, when the Future is known.

From the *Participle present* are formed :—

1st. The *three persons plural of the Present of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, *ent*; as, *Parlant*, *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*; *Finissant*, *nous finissons*, *vous finissez*, *ils finissent*, etc.

EXCEPTION.—Verbs of the Third Conjugation form the third person plural of the Present of the Indicative, from the first person singular of the same tense, by changing *s* into *ent*; as, *Je reçois*, *ils reçoivent*.

2nd. The *Imperfect of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ais*; as, *Parlant*, *je parlais*; *Finissant*, *je finissais*; *Recevant*, *je recevais*; *Vendant*, *je vendais*.

3rd. The *Present of the Subjunctive*, by changing *ant* into *e*; as, *Parlant*, *que je parle*; *Finissant*, *que je finisse*; *Vendant*, *que je vende*.

EXCEPTION.—Verbs of the Third Conjugation form only the first and second persons plural from the Participle present; as, *Recevant*, *que nous recevions*, *que vous receviez*. The others are formed from the first person singular of the Present of the Indicative, by changing *s* into *ee*; as, *Je reçois*, *que je reçoive*, *que tu reçoives*, *qu'il reçoive*, *qu'ils reçoivent*.

From the *Participle past* are formed all the compound tenses, by means of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*; as, *avoir parlé*, *j'ai fini*, *j'avais reçu*, *j'aurai vendu*.

From the *Present of the Indicative* is formed the Imperative, by omitting the pronouns; as, *je parle*, *parle*; *nous finissons*, *finissons*; *vous recevez*, *recevez*.

From the *Preterite definite* is formed the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, by changing *ai* into *asse* for the first conjugation; as, *je parlai*, *que je parlasse*; and, by adding *se* for the three others; as, *je finis*, *que je finisse*; *je reçus*, *que je reçusse*; *je vendis*, *que je vendisse*.

TABLE
OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF REGULAR VERBS.

INFINITIVE Present.	PARTICIPLE Present.	PARTICIPLE Past.	INDICATIVE Present.	PRETERITE Definite.
FIRST CONJUGATION.				
Parl-er.	Parl-ant.	Parl-é.	Je parl-e.	Je parl-ai.
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
Fin-ir.	Fin-issant.	Fin-i.	Je fin-is.	Je fin-is.
Ouv-rir.	Ouv-rant.	Ouv-ert.	J'ouv-re.	J'ouv-ris.
Sen-tir.	Sen-tant.	Sen-ti.	Je sen-s.	Je sen-tis.
T-enir.	T-enant.	T-enu.	Je t-iens.	Je t-ins.
THIRD CONJUGATION.				
Rec-evoir.	Rec-evant.	Reç-u.	Je reç-ois.	Je reç-us.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
Ven-dre.	Ven-dant.	Ven-du.	Je ven-ds.	Je ven-dis.
Pl-aire.	Pl-aisant.	Pl-u.	Je pl-ais.	Je pl-us.
Par-aître.	Par-aissant.	Par-u.	Je par-ais.	Je par-us.
Réd-uire.	Réd-uissant.	Réd-uit.	Je réd-uis.	Je réd-uisis.
Cra-indre.	Cra-ignant.	Cra-int.	Je cra-ins.	Je cra-ignis.

This Table shows that the *first* and *third* conjugations never change, whereas the *second* and *fourth* vary in such a manner that the *Primitive tenses* of the four principal conjugations are naturally divided into eleven classes.

As, however, these eleven classes have been reduced to *four* by all the most approved Grammarians, we shall give only the models of the conjugation of these four classes, not doubting that with the preceding table of the primitive tenses, the rules we have given for the formation of the tenses, and the subsequent conjugation of all the irregular verbs in general use, the student will be sufficiently guided to conjugate all kinds of verbs.

§ I. OF THE CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

An *Active* verb expresses an action done by the subject, and has an object, either expressed or understood. In this phrase: *Jean aime Dieu*, John loves God, *Jean* is the subject, *aime* the verb active, and *Dieu* the object.

MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION IN *ER*.*PARLER*, TO SPEAK.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Parler, *to speak.* | Avoir parlé, *to have spoken*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.

Parlant, *speaking.* | Ayant parlé, *having spoken.*

PARTICIPLE PAST.—Parlé, *spoken.*

INDICATIVE.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

PRESENT

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je parle, *I speak.*
tu parles, *thou speakest.*
il parle, *he speaks.*
nous parlons, *we speak.*
vous parlez, *you speak.*
ils parlent, *they speak.*

J'ai parlé, *I have*
tu as parlé, *thou hast*
il a parlé, *he has*
nous avons parlé, *we have*
vous avez parlé, *you have*
ils ont parlé, *they have* } *spoken.*

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Je parlais, *I was*
tu parlais, *thou wast*
il parlait, *he was*
nous parlions, *we were*
vous parliez, *you were*
ils parlaient, *they were* } *speaking.*

J'avais parlé, *I had*
tu avais parlé, *thou hadst*
il avait parlé, *he had*
nous avions parlé, *we had*
vous aviez parlé, *you had*
ils avaient parlé, *they had* } *spoken.*

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je parlai, *I spoke.*
tu parlas, *thou spokest.*
il parla, *he spoke.*
nous parlâmes, *we spoke.*
vous parlâtes, *you spoke.*
ils parlèrent, *they spoke.*

J'eus parlé, *I had*
tu eus parlé, *thou hadst*
il eut parlé, *he had*
nous eûmes parlé, *we had*
vous eûtes parlé, *you had*
ils eurent parlé, *they had* } *spoken.*

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je parlerai, *I shall*
 tu parleras, *thou shalt*
 il parlera, *he shall*
 nous parlerons, *we shall*
 vous parlerez, *you shall*
 ils parleront, *they shall*

} *speaking.*

J'aurai parlé,
 tu auras parlé,
 il aura parlé,
 nous aurons parlé,
 vous aurez parlé,
 ils auront parlé,

} *I shall have spoken.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Je parlerais *I should*
 tu parlerais, *thou shouldst*
 il parlerait, *he should*
 nous parlerions, *we should*
 vous parleriez, *you should*
 ils parleraient, *they should*

} *speaking.*

J'aurais parlé,
 tu aurais parlé,
 il aurait parlé,
 nous aurions parlé,
 vous auriez parlé,
 ils auraient parlé,

} *I should have spoken.*

IMPERATIVE.

Parle,
 qu'il parle,
 parlons,
 parlez,
 qu'ils parlent,

*Speak (thou).
 let him speak.
 let us speak.
 speak (you).
 let them speak.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE.

Que je parle,
 que tu parles,
 qu'il parle,
 que nous parlions,
 que vous parliez,
 qu'ils parlent,

} *That I may speak.*

Que j'aie parlé,
 que tu aies parlé,
 qu'il ait parlé,
 que nous ayons parlé,
 que vous ayez parlé,
 qu'ils aient parlé,

} *That I may have spoken.*

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Que je parlasse,
 que tu parlasses,
 qu'il parlât,
 que nous parlussions,
 que vous parlassiez,
 qu'ils parlassent,

} *That I might speak.*

Que j'eusse parlé,
 que tu eusses parlé,
 qu'il eût parlé,
 que nous eussions parlé,
 que vous eussiez parlé,
 qu'ils eussent parlé,

} *That I might have spoken.*

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular Verbs terminating in *er*; as,

Accepter,	to accept.	fermer,	to shut.
chanter,	to sing.	garder,	to keep.
chercher,	to seek.	louer,	to praise.
demander,	to ask.	montrer,	to show.
donner,	to give.	porter,	to carry.
éviter,	to avoid.	raconter,	to relate.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.—I study geography and
étudier art. géographie f.

history. — He dines at five o'clock.—We admire the
art. histoire f. h m. dîner heure admirer
 beauty of that landscape.—You forgive your enemies.—
beauté f. paysage m. pardonner à ennemi
 They correct the faults.
corriger faule f.

IMPERF.—I was accusing my friend.—He was listening
accuser écouter
 attentively.—We were blaming our neighbours.—You were
attentivement blâmer voisin
 proposing a salutary advice.—They were praising your
proposer avis m. louer
 prudence.—The ancient Peruvians worshipped the sun.
— f. ancien Péruvien adorer soleil m.

EXERCISE XL.

PRET. DEF.—I approved his action.—She sung two or three
approuver — f. chanter
 songs.—He borrowed money.—We declined his offer.
chanson emprunter pr. art. argent m. refuser offre f.
 You rewarded the servant.—They declared war.
récompenser domestique m. déclarer art. guerre f.

PRET. INDEF.—I have surmounted all the difficulties.—He
surmonter tout difficulté f.
 has offended His Majesty.—We have bought an estate.—You
offenser Majesté f. acheter terre f.
 have protected his youth.—They have considered the justice
protéger jeunesse f. considérer — f.
 of his demand.
demande f.

EXERCISE XII.

PLUPERFECT.—I had asked his consent. — The queen
demander consentement m.
 had manifested her displeasure. — We had consulted
montrer mécontentement m. consulter
 men of honour. — You had emptied the bottle. —
 pr. art. *honneur h m. vider bouteille f.*
 They had repaired the house.
réparer maison f.

FUT. ABSOL.—I shall cross the river.—She will travel
traverser rivière f. voyager
 with us.—We will breakfast with you.—You will shut the
avec déjeuner fermer
 shutters.—They will bring letters.
volet m. apporter pr. art. lettre f.

EXERCISE XLII.

CONDIT. PRESENT.—I would explain the rule.—She would
expliquer règle f.
 prepare the ball dresses.—We would walk faster.—They
préparer habit de bal marcher plus vite
 would gain the victory.—
remporter victoire f.

IMPERATIVE.—Give me your address.—Let us frequent
Donner adresse f. fréquenter
 good company. — Carry this letter to the (post-office).
 art. *compagnie f. Porter lettre f. poste f.*

SUBJ. PRESENT.—That I may re-enforce my party.—That
renforcer parti m.
 he may appease his anger.—That you may find real
apaiser colère f. trouver de vrai
 friends.
ami

IMPERF.—That I might prove the truth.—That she might
prouver vérité f.
 remain in town.—That they might (take advantage) of the
rester en ville profiter
 circumstances.
circonstance f.

MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.*FINIR*, TO FINISH.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Finir,	<i>to finish.</i>	Avoir fini,	<i>to have finished.</i>
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.	
Finissant,	<i>finishing.</i>	Ayant fini,	<i>having finished.</i>
PARTICIPLE PAST.—Fini, <i>finished.</i>			

INDICATIVE.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

PRESENT.

Je finis,	<i>I finish.</i>
tu finis,	<i>thou finishest.</i>
il finit,	<i>he finishes.</i>
nous finissons,	<i>we finish.</i>
vous finissez,	<i>you finish.</i>
ils finissent,	<i>they finish.</i>

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai fini,	<i>I have finished.</i>
tu as fini,	<i>thou hast finished.</i>
il a fini,	<i>he has finished.</i>
nous avons fini,	<i>we have finished.</i>
vous avez fini,	<i>you have finished.</i>
ils ont fini,	<i>they have finished.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je finissais,	<i>I was</i>
tu finissais,	<i>thou wast</i>
il finissait,	<i>he was</i>
nous finissions,	<i>we were</i>
vous finissiez,	<i>you were</i>
ils finissaient,	<i>they were</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais fini,	<i>I had</i>
tu avais fini,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il avait fini,	<i>he had</i>
nous avions fini,	<i>we had</i>
vous aviez fini,	<i>you had</i>
ils avaient fini,	<i>they had</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je finis,	<i>I finished.</i>
tu finis,	<i>thou finishedst.</i>
il finit,	<i>he finished.</i>
nous finîmes,	<i>we finished.</i>
vous finîtes,	<i>you finished.</i>
il finirent,	<i>they finished.</i>

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus fini,	<i>I had</i>
tu eus fini,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut fini,	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes fini,	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes fini,	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent fini,	<i>they had</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je finirai,	<i>I shall finish.</i>
tu finiras,	<i>thou shalt finish.</i>
il finira,	<i>he shall finish.</i>
nous finirons,	<i>we shall finish.</i>
vous finirez,	<i>you shall finish.</i>
ils finiront,	<i>they shall finish.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai fini,	<i>I shall have</i>
tu auras fini,	<i>thou shalt have</i>
il aura fini,	<i>he shall have</i>
nous aurons fini,	<i>we shall have</i>
vous aurez fini,	<i>you shall have</i>
ils auront fini,	<i>they shall have</i>

CONDITIONAL.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

PRESENT.

PAST.

Je finirais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>finish.</i>	J'aurais fini,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have finished.</i>
tu finirais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>		tu aurais fini,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il finirait,	<i>he should</i>		il aurait fini,	<i>he should</i>	
nous finirions,	<i>we should</i>		nous aurions fini,	<i>we should</i>	
vous finiriez,	<i>you should</i>		vous auriez fini,	<i>you should</i>	
ils finiraient,	<i>they should</i>		ils auraient fini,	<i>they should</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Finis,	<i>Finish (thou).</i>
qu'il finisse,	<i>let him finish.</i>
finissons,	<i>let us finish.</i>
finissez,	<i>finish (you).</i>
qu'ils finissent,	<i>let them finish.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE.

Que je finisse,	<i>That I may</i>	} <i>finish.</i>	Que j'aie fini,	} <i>(That I may) have finished.</i>
que tu finisses,	<i>that thou mayst</i>		que tu aies fini,	
qu'il finisse,	<i>that he may</i>		qu'il ait fini,	
que nous finissions,	<i>that we may</i>		que nous ayons fini,	
que vous finissiez,	<i>that you may</i>		que vous ayez fini,	
qu'ils finissent,	<i>that they may</i>		qu'ils aient fini,	

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Que je finisse,	} <i>That I might finish.</i>	Que j'eusse fini,	} <i>That I might have finished.</i>
que tu finisses,		que tu eusses fini,	
qu'il finît,		qu'il eût fini,	
que nous finissions,		que nous eussions fini,	
que vous finissiez,		que vous eussiez fini,	
qu'ils finissent,		qu'ils eussent fini,	

Conjugate in the same manner :

Abolir,	<i>to abolish.</i>	enrichir,	<i>to enrich.</i>
adoucir,	<i>to soften.</i>	établir,	<i>to establish.</i>
affermir,	<i>to strengthen.</i>	fléchir,	<i>to soften.</i>
agir,	<i>to act.</i>	fournir,	<i>to furnish.</i>
applaudir,	<i>to applaud.</i>	franchir,	<i>to leap over.</i>
avertir,	<i>to warn.</i>	frémir,	<i>to shudder.</i>
bâtir,	<i>to build.</i>	garantir,	<i>to warrant.</i>
choisir,	<i>to choose.</i>	guérir,	<i>to cure.</i>
démolir,	<i>to demolish.</i>	nourrir,	<i>to nourish.</i>
divertir,	<i>to divert.</i>	obéir,	<i>to obey.</i>
embellir,	<i>to embellish.</i>	punir,	<i>to punish.</i>
emplir,	<i>to fill.</i>	réussir, etc.	<i>to succeed, et</i>

EXERCISE XLIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I shudder when I think (of it).—He
frémir quand penser y
 fulfils his promise. —She enjoys good health. —
remplir promesse f. jouir d'une santé f.
 You act as a master. —They punish the idlers. —
*agir en * maître punir paresseux*
 IMPERF.—I was varnishing a picture. —He was climbing
vernir tableau m. gravir
 the hill. — They were building fortifications.
colline f. bâtir pr. art. — f.
 PRET. DEF.—I warned my sister of her danger. —You have
avertir — m.
 chosen a pretty colour. — They succeeded in repelling the
choisir joli couleur f. réussir à repousser
 enemy.
ennemi m.

EXERCISE XLIV.

PRET. INDEF.—I have chosen it (out of) a thousand. —
*choisir entre **
 He has enriched science with new discoveries. —You
enrichir art. — f. de nouveau découverte f.
 have grown tall. —The greatest empires have perished.
grandir — m. périr
 PRET. ANT.—I had done before him. — When he had
finir avant lui Quand
 filled his pockets, he went away.
remplir poche f. s'en alla
 PLUPERFECT.—That merchant had supplied this house
marchand m. fournir maison f.
 with wine. —The king had ennobled him. —They had disobeyed
de anoblir désobéir
 my orders.
à ordre m.

EXERCISE XLV.

FUT. ABSOLUTE.—I will search into that affair. —That will
approfondir affaire f.
 cure him. —We will rebuild our country-house. —I hope
guérir le rebâtir maison de campagne f. espérer
 you will succeed. —They will obey the laws.
vue réussir obéir à loi f.

FUT. ANT.—I shall have finished my exercise before dinner.—
finir thème m. avant dîner
 They will have cooled his ardour.
refroidir ardeur f.

CONDIT. PRES.—I would mitigate the punishment.—
adoucir punition f.
 If he (were to do) that good action, (everybody) would
faisait —f. tout le monde
 applaud him.
applaudir lui

EXERCISE XLVI.

IMPERATIVE. — Let us banish vice and cherish
bannir art. — m. chérir
 virtue. — Act as a man of honour. — Choose of the
 art. *vertu f. Agir en * honneur h m. Choisir*
 two.— Reflect for a moment.
*Réfléchir * — m.*

SUBJ. PRESENT.—That I may accomplish my design. —
accomplir dessein m.
 That you may establish peace.
établir art. paix f.

IMPERF.—That she might match the colours.—That you
assortir couleur f.
 might enjoy your glory.
jouir de gloire f.

PLUPERF.—That we might have fathomed that mystery.—
approfondir mystère m.
 That they might have fed the poor.
nourrir pauvre m. pl.

MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST.
Recevoir,	to receive.	Avoir reçu, to have received.
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.
Recevant,	receiving.	Ayant reçu, having received.
PARTICIPLE PAST.—Reçu, received.		

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je reçois,	<i>I receive.</i>
tu reçois,	<i>thou receivest.</i>
il reçoit,	<i>he receives.</i>
nous recevons,	<i>we receive.</i>
vous recevez,	<i>you receive.</i>
ils reçoivent,	<i>they receive.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai reçu,	<i>I have</i>	} <i>received.</i>
tu as reçu,	<i>thou hast</i>	
il a reçu	<i>he has</i>	
nous avons reçu,	<i>we have</i>	
vous avez reçu,	<i>you have</i>	
ils ont reçu,	<i>they have</i>	

IMPERFECT.

Je recevais,	<i>I was</i>	} <i>receiving.</i>
tu recevais,	<i>thou wast</i>	
il recevait,	<i>he was</i>	
nous recevions,	<i>we were</i>	
vous receviez,	<i>you were</i>	
ils recevaient,	<i>they were</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais reçu,	<i>I had</i>	} <i>received.</i>
tu avais reçu,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il avait reçu,	<i>he had</i>	
nous avions reçu,	<i>we had</i>	
vous aviez reçu,	<i>you had</i>	
ils avaient reçu,	<i>they had</i>	

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je reçus,	<i>I received.</i>
tu reçus,	<i>thou receivedst.</i>
il reçut,	<i>he received.</i>
nous reçûmes,	<i>we received.</i>
vous reçûtes,	<i>you received.</i>
ils reçurent,	<i>they received.</i>

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus reçu,	<i>I had</i>	} <i>received.</i>
tu eus reçu,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il eut reçu,	<i>he had</i>	
nous eûmes reçu,	<i>we had</i>	
vous eûtes reçu,	<i>you had</i>	
ils eurent reçu,	<i>they had</i>	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je recevrai,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>receive.</i>
tu recevras,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il recevra,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous recevrons,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous recevrez,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils recevront,	<i>they shall</i>	

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai reçu,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have received.</i>
tu auras reçu,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il aura reçu,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous aurons reçu,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez reçu,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils auront reçu,	<i>they shall</i>	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je recevrais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>receive.</i>
tu recevrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il recevrait,	<i>he should</i>	
nous recevriions,	<i>we should</i>	
vous recevriez,	<i>you should</i>	
ils recevraient,	<i>they should</i>	

PAST.

J'aurais reçu,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have received.</i>
tu aurais reçu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il aurait reçu,	<i>he should</i>	
nous aurions reçu,	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez reçu,	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient reçu,	<i>they should</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Reçois,	<i>Receive (thou).</i>
qu'il reçoive,	<i>let him receive.</i>
recevons,	<i>let us receive.</i>
recevez,	<i>receive (you).</i>
qu'ils reçoivent,	<i>let them receive.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Que je reçoive,	{ That I may receive.
que tu reçoives,	
qu'il reçoive,	
que nous recevions,	
que vous receviez,	
qu'ils reçoivent,	

IMPERFECT.

Que je reçusse,	{ That I might receive.
que tu reçusses,	
qu'il reçût,	
que nous reçussions,	
que vous reçussiez,	
qu'ils reçussent,	

Compound Tenses.

PRÉTERITE.

Que j'aie reçu,	{ That I may have received.
que tu aies reçu,	
qu'il ait reçu,	
que nous ayons reçu,	
que vous ayez reçu,	
qu'ils aient reçu,	

PLUPÉRFECT.

Que j'eusse reçu,	{ That I might have received.
que tu eusses reçu,	
qu'il eût reçu,	
que nous eussions reçu,	
que vous eussiez reçu,	
qu'ils eussent reçu,	

Conjugate in the same manner :

Apercevoir,	<i>to perceive.</i>	redevoir,	<i>to remain in debt.</i>
devoir,	<i>to owe.</i>	etc.	etc.

EXERCISE XLVII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I perceive the steeple of the village.—
apercevoir clocher m. — m.

He perceives the top of the mountain.
sommet m. montagne f.

IMPERF.—He owed a large sum to his partner.—They
devoir grand somme f. associé m.

were collecting the taxes.
percevoir impôt m.

PRET. DEF.—We perceived a man coming towards us.—
qui venait à

The besieged received succour.
assiégé m. pl. pr. art. secours m. pl.

74 EXERCISES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRET. INDEF.—I received a letter this morning.—That
lettre f. matin m.
 regiment has received recruits.—We have perceived
régiment m. pr. art. recrue f.
 you from afar.—The soldiers have received provisions
loin soldat pr. art. vivre m. pl.
 for three days.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

FUTURE ABSOL.—I shall receive your letter on the fifteenth.
 *
 —He will still owe thirteen guineas.—They will owe their
redevoir guinée f. devoir
 misfortunes to their faults.
malheur m. faute f.

CONDIT. PRES.—I would conceive the greatest hopes.—
concevoir espérance f.
 You ought to behave differently.
devoir vous conduire autrement.

IMPERATIVE.—Receive this as a mark of my
comme marque f.
 confidence and esteem.—Let us receive his apology.—
confiance f. de mon estime f. excuse f.
 Conceive the horror of his situation.—Receive him
Concevoir horreur h m. — f.
 kindly.
avec bonté.

MODEL OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *RE*.
VENDRE, TO SELL.

PRESENT.		INFINITIVE.		PAST.	
Vendre,	to sell.		Avoir vendu,	to have sold.	
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.			COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.		
Vendant,	selling.		Ayant vendu,	having sold.	
PARTICIPLE PAST.—Vendu, sold.					

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je vends,	<i>I sell.</i>
tu vends,	<i>thou sellest.</i>
il vend,	<i>he sells.</i>
nous vendons,	<i>we sell.</i>
vous vendez,	<i>you sell.</i>
ils vendent,	<i>they sell.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai vendu,	<i>I have sold.</i>
tu as vendu,	<i>thou hast sold.</i>
il a vendu,	<i>he has sold.</i>
nous avons vendu,	<i>we have sold.</i>
vous avez vendu,	<i>you have sold.</i>
ils ont vendu,	<i>they have sold.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je vendais,	<i>I was selling.</i>
tu vendais,	<i>thou wast selling.</i>
il vendait,	<i>he was selling.</i>
nous vendions,	<i>we were selling.</i>
vous vendiez,	<i>you were selling.</i>
ils vendaient,	<i>they were selling.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais vendu,	<i>I had sold.</i>
tu avais vendu,	<i>thou hadst sold.</i>
il avait vendu,	<i>he had sold.</i>
nous avions vendu,	<i>we had sold.</i>
vous aviez vendu,	<i>you had sold.</i>
ils avaient vendu,	<i>they had sold.</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je vendis,	<i>I sold.</i>
tu vendis,	<i>thou soldest.</i>
il vendit,	<i>he sold.</i>
nous vendîmes,	<i>we sold.</i>
vous vendîtes,	<i>you sold.</i>
ils vendirent,	<i>they sold.</i>

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus vendu,	<i>I had</i>	} <i>sold.</i>
tu eus vendu,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il eut vendu,	<i>he had</i>	
nous eûmes vendu,	<i>we had</i>	
vous eûtes vendu,	<i>you had</i>	
ils eurent vendu,	<i>they had</i>	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je vendrai,	<i>I shall sell.</i>
tu vendras,	<i>thou shalt sell.</i>
il vendra,	<i>he shall sell.</i>
nous vendrons,	<i>we shall sell.</i>
vous vendrez,	<i>you shall sell.</i>
ils vendront,	<i>they shall sell.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai vendu,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have sold.</i>
tu auras vendu,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il aura vendu,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous aurons vendu,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez vendu,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils auront vendu,	<i>they shall</i>	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je vendrais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>sell.</i>
tu vendrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il vendrait,	<i>he should</i>	
nous vendrions,	<i>we should</i>	
vous vendriez,	<i>you should</i>	
ils vendraient,	<i>they should</i>	

PAST.

J'aurais vendu,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have sold.</i>
tu aurais vendu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il aurait vendu,	<i>he should</i>	
nous aurions vendu,	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez vendu,	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient vendu,	<i>they should</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Vends,	<i>Sell (thou).</i>
qu'il vende,	<i>let him sell.</i>
vendons,	<i>let us sell.</i>
vendez,	<i>sell (you).</i>
qu'ils vendent,	<i>let them sell.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Que je vende,	{ <i>That I may</i> <i>sell.</i>
que tu vendes,	
qu'il vende,	
que nous vendions,	
que vous vendiez,	
qu'ils vendent,	

IMPERFECT.

Que je vendisse,	{ <i>That I</i> <i>might sell.</i>
que tu vendisses,	
qu'il vendît,	
que nous vendissions,	
que vous vendissiez,	
qu'ils vendissent,	

Compound Tenses.

PRÆTERITE.

Que j'aie vendu,	{ <i>That I may</i> <i>have sold.</i>
que tu aies vendu,	
qu'il ait vendu,	
que nous ayons vendu,	
que vous ayez vendu,	
qu'ils aient vendu,	

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse vendu,	{ <i>That I might</i> <i>have sold.</i>
que tu eusses vendu,	
qu'il eût vendu,	
que nous eussions vendu,	
que vous eussiez vendu,	
qu'ils eussent vendu,	

Conjugate in the same manner :

Attendre,	<i>to wait for.</i>	pendre,	<i>to hang.</i>
correspondre,	<i>to correspond.</i>	perdre,	<i>to lose.</i>
défendre,	<i>to defend.</i>	prétendre,	<i>to pretend.</i>
dépendre,	<i>to depend.</i>	rendre,	<i>to render.</i>
descendre,	<i>to descend.</i>	répandre,	<i>to spread.</i>
entendre,	<i>to hear.</i>	répondre,	<i>to answer.</i>
fendre,	<i>to split.</i>	suspendre,	<i>to suspend.</i>
fondre,	<i>to melt.</i>	tordre,	<i>to twist.</i>
mordre,	<i>to bite.</i>	etc.	etc.

EXERCISE XLIX.

INDICAT. PRESENT.—I hear some one coming.—He
entendre ²*quelqu'un* ¹*venir*
 understands English (a little).—That depends on
entendre ²*l'anglais* ¹*dépendre de art.*
 circumstances.—That dog bites.—We expect several
circonstance f. *chien m.* *mordre* *attendre*

friends to dinner.—You claim a half.—They confound
à dîner prétendre moitié f. confondre
 the arts with the sciences.
 — m. — f.

IMPERF.—I was waiting for the steam-boat.—He was
*attendre * bateau à vapeur m.*
 waiting for him.—We heard them laughing and singing.—
entendre rire chanter
 You were coming down.—They were wasting their time.
descendre perdre temps m.

EXERCISE L.

PRET. DEF.—I alighted at the hotel de France.—He
descendre
 answered in a few words.—We aimed at an honest end.—
répondre en peu de mot m. pl. tendre ²honnête ¹but m.
 They lost their lawsuit.
perdre procès m.

PRET. INDEF.—I have heard that musician.—He has
entendre musicien m.
 restored the money.—The sun has melted the snow.—The
rendre fondre neige f.
 thermometer has fallen four degrees since yesterday.
thermomètre m. descendre de degré m. depuis hier
 —You have defended him with much talent.—Have you
défendre beaucoup de — m.
 heard the music of the new opera?
musique f. nouveau opéra m.

EXERCISE LI.

FUTURE.—Make haste, I will wait for you.—It is a
*Dépêchez-vous attendre * C'*
 thing to which he will never condescend.—You will
chose f. ne ²jamais ¹condescendre
 wait a long time.
*attendre * longtemps.*

COND. PRES.—I would correspond with my friends.—
correspondre
 Your hens would (lay eggs) every day.
poule f. pondre tous les jours.

IMPERATIVE.—Let us answer their letter.—Wait
répondre à *Attendre*
 till to-morrow. — Hang up your hat and your
jusqu'à demain *Pendre ** *chapeau m.*
 cloak. — Render unto Cæsar (the things which be Cæsar's).
manteau m. Rendre à César ce qui appartient à César.

CONJUGATION

OF A VERB WITH A NEGATIVE

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

The English negatives *no* and *not* are rendered in French by *ne*, which is placed immediately after the subject, whether it be a noun or pronoun, and *pas* or *point* after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses.

“When the verb is in the Present of the Infinitive, it is optional to place *pas* and *point* before or after the verb. *Pour ne POINT souffrir.*—*Pour ne souffrir POINT.* The first manner of speaking, however, is more used.”—

(FR. ACAD. “Dict. crit. de *Féraud*,” etc.)

The same rules are applicable to other negatives, such as, *ne jamais*, never; *ne rien*, nothing; *ne plus*, no more, not any more.

When the negative is followed by a substantive, *de* is used instead of the definite article; as, *Je n'ai pas DE livres*, I have no books; *elle n'a point DE place*, she has no room.

The words *do* or *did*, which precede an English verb in some tenses, are not expressed in French.

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED
NEGATIVELY

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Nepasparler, *not to speak.* | N'avoir pas parlé, *not to have spoken.*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne parlant *not speaking.* | N'ayant pas parlé, *not having spoken.*
pas,

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je ne parle pas,
tu ne parles pas,
il ne parle pas,
nous ne parlons pas,
vous ne parlez pas,
ils ne parlent pas,

)
I do not
speak.
)

Je n'ai pas parlé,
tu n'as pas parlé,
il n'a pas parlé,
nous n'avons pas parlé,
vous n'avez pas parlé,
ils n'ont pas parlé,

)
I have not
spoken.
)

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Je ne parlais pas,
tu ne parlais pas,
il ne parlait pas,
nous ne parlions pas,
vous ne parliez pas,
ils ne parlaient pas,

)
I was not
speaking.
)

Je n'avais pas parlé,
tu n'avais pas parlé,
il n'avait pas parlé,
nous n'avions pas parlé,
vous n'aviez pas parlé,
ils n'avaient pas parlé,

)
I had not
spoken.
)

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

PRETERITE ANTERIO

Je ne parlai pas,
tu ne parlas pas,
il ne parla pas,
nous ne parlâmes pas,
vous ne parlâtes pas,
ils ne parlèrent pas,

)
I did not
speak.
)

Je n'eus pas parlé,
tu n'eus pas parlé,
il n'eut pas parlé,
nous n'eûmes pas parlé,
vous n'eûtes pas parlé,
ils n'eurent pas parlé,

)
I had not
spoken.
)

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je ne parlerai pas,
tu ne parleras pas,
il ne parlera pas,
nous ne parlerons pas,
vous ne parlerez pas,
ils ne parleront pas,

)
I shall not
speak.
)

Je n'aurai pas parlé,
tu n'auras pas parlé,
il n'aura pas parlé,
nous n'aurons pas parlé,
vous n'aurez pas parlé,
ils n'auront pas parlé,

)
I shall not
have spoken.
)

CONDITIONAL.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je ne parlerais pas,
tu ne parlerais pas,
il ne parlerait pas,
nous ne parlerions pas,
vous ne parleriez pas,
ils ne parleraient pas,

(*I should not
speak.*)

Compound Tenses.

PAST.

Je n'aurais pas parlé,
tu n'aurais pas parlé,
il n'aurait pas parlé,
nous n'aurions pas parlé,
vous n'auriez pas parlé,
ils n'auraient pas parlé,

(*I should not
have spoken.*)

IMPERATIVE.

Ne parle pas,
qu'il ne parle pas,
ne parlons pas,
ne parlez pas,
qu'ils ne parlent pas,

*Do not speak.
let him not speak.
let us not speak.
do not speak.
let them not speak.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je ne parle pas,
que tu ne parles pas,
qu'il ne parle pas,
que nous ne parlions pas,
que vous ne parliez pas,
qu'ils ne parlent pas,

(*That I may
not speak.*)

PRÆTERITE.

Que je n'aie pas parlé,
que tu n'aies pas parlé,
qu'il n'ait pas parlé,
que nous n'ayons pas parlé,
que vous n'ayez pas parlé,
qu'ils n'aient pas parlé,

(*That I may not
have spoken.*)

IMPERFECT.

Que je ne parlasse pas,
que tu ne parlasses pas,
qu'il ne parlât pas,
que nous ne parlussions pas,
que vous ne parlassiez pas,
qu'ils ne parlassent pas,

(*That I might
not speak.*)

PLUPERFECT.

Que je n'eusse pas parlé,
que tu n'eusses pas parlé,
qu'il n'eût pas parlé, [parlé,
que nous n'eussions pas
que vous n'eussiez pas parlé,
qu'ils n'eussent pas parlé,

(*That I might not
have spoken.*)

EXERCISE LII.

INDICAT. PRÆS.—I have no change.—My sister does
monnaie f.

not sing.—We do not speak of that.—You do not answer
chanter *répondre à*
his letters.—They are not playing.
lettre f. *jouer*

IMPERF.—I did not expect that of you.—She was not dancing.—You were not thinking of him.—They were not happy.
attendre
danser *penser à*
heureux

EXERCISE LIII.

PRET. DEF.—I did not receive his note in time.—He did not forget his promise.
billet m. à temps
oublier *promesse f.*
 PRET. INDEF.—I have not yet received his answer. — He has never spoken to his colonel.—You have not brought the parcel. —They have not passed this way.
encore *réponse f.*
parquet m. *passer par ici*
 PLUPERF.—I had not finished, when you came.
quand *vintes*

EXERCISE LIV.

FUTURE.—I shall not speak (of it).—We will not travel this year.—You will never succeed.
en *voyager*
année f. *réussir*
 COND. PRES.—I would owe nothing.—You would not wait long.
attendre longtemps
 IMPER.—Let us not imitate his conduct. —Do not lose your time.—Don't shut the window.
imiter *conduite f.* *perdre*
temps m. *fermer* *fenêtre f.*

CONJUGATION OF A VERB INTERROGATIVELY.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

1. To conjugate a verb *interrogatively*, which can take place only in the Indicative and Conditional Moods, we place the pronoun, which serves as the subject, after the verb, connecting them by a hyphen; as, *Avez-vous?* have you? *Jouez-vous?* do you play?

2. In *compound tenses*, the pronoun is placed between the auxiliary and the participle, joined to the former by a hyphen; as, *Ai-je parlé?* have I spoken? *Ont-ils dîné?* have they dined?

3. When the third person singular of a verb ends with a vowel, we place between the verb and the pronoun the euphonic letter *t*, preceded and followed by a hyphen; as, *Aura-t-il?* will he have? *Danse-t-elle?* does she dance?

4. When the subject of a verb is a substantive, that substantive comes first, and one of the pronouns, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, is placed after the verb, and joined to it by a hyphen; as, *Mes frères parlent-ils?* do my brothers speak? *Votre sœur aurait-elle chanté?* would your sister have sung?

5. When the first person singular of a verb ends with a mute *e*, an *acute accent* is placed over that *e*, which is a sign to pronounce it; as, *Parlé-je?* do I speak? *Chanté-je?* do I sing?

6. Questions are often asked by *Est-ce que*, and then the subject precedes the verb; as, *Est-ce que vous lisez Horace?* do you read Horace?—This mode of interrogation is also used with verbs that have but one syllable in the first person singular of the Present of the Indicative; so instead of saying, *Vends-je?* *rends-je?* *mens-je?* *perds-je?* *fonds-je?* *pars-je?* and the like, we say, *Est-ce que je vends?* *est-ce que je rends?* etc. By employing the former mode of expression, we sometimes could not even

be understood ; as, for instance, *Vends-je ? rends-je ? mens-je ?* might be mistaken for the Imperative *venge, range, mange*. Usage, however, permits us to say, *Ai-je ? suis-je ? dis-je ? fais-je ? dois-je ? vois-je ? vais-je ?*

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Donné-je ?	<i>Do I give ?</i>	Ai-je donné ?	<i>Have I</i>
donnes-tu ?	<i>dost thou give ?</i>	as-tu donné ?	<i>hast thou</i>
donne-t-il ?	<i>does he give ?</i>	a-t-il donné ?	<i>has he</i>
donnons-nous ?	<i>do we give ?</i>	avons-nous donné ?	<i>have we</i>
donnez-vous ?	<i>do you give ?</i>	avez-vous donné ?	<i>have you</i>
donnent-ils ?	<i>do they give ?</i>	ont-ils donné ?	<i>have they</i>

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Donnais-je ?	<i>Was I</i>	Avais-je donné ?	<i>Had I</i>
donnais-tu ?	<i>wast thou</i>	avais-tu donné ?	<i>hadst thou</i>
donnait-il ?	<i>was he</i>	avait-il donné ?	<i>had he</i>
donnions-nous ?	<i>were we</i>	avions-nous donné ?	<i>had we</i>
donniez-vous ?	<i>were you</i>	aviez-vous donné ?	<i>had you</i>
donnaient-ils ?	<i>were they</i>	avaient-ils donné ?	<i>had they</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Donnai-je ?	<i>Did I give ?</i>
donnas-tu ?	<i>didst thou give ?</i>
donna-t-il ?	<i>did he give ?</i>
donnâmes-nous ?	<i>did we give ?</i>
donnâtes-vous ?	<i>did you give ?</i>
donnèrent-ils ?	<i>did they give ?</i>

The *Preterite anterior* is not used interrogatively.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Donnerai-je ?	<i>shall I</i>	Aurai-je donné ?	<i>Shall I</i>
donneras-tu ?	<i>shalt thou</i>	auras-tu donné ?	<i>shalt thou</i>
donnera-t-il ?	<i>shall he</i>	aura-t-il donné ?	<i>shall he</i>
donnerons-nous ?	<i>shall we</i>	aurons-nous donné ?	<i>shall we</i>
donnerez-vous ?	<i>shall you</i>	aurez-vous donné ?	<i>shall you</i>
donneront-ils ?	<i>shall they</i>	auront-ils donné ?	<i>shall they</i>

CONDITIONAL.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

PRESENT.

PAST.

Donnerais-je ? *Should I*
 donnerais-tu ? *shouldst thou*
 donnerait-il ? *should he*
 donnerions-nous ? *should we*
 donneriez-vous ? *should you*
 donneraient-ils ? *should they*

Aurais-je donné ?
 aurais-tu donné ?
 aurait-il donné ?
 aurions-nous donné ?
 auriez-vous donné ?
 auraient-ils donné ?

*Should I
 have given ?*

EXERCISE LV.

INDICATIVE. PRES.—Have I friends ?—Is she pleased ?
satisfait

Does he bring good news ? —Does she dance well ?—
apporter nouvelle f. danser

Is breakfast ready ?—Do you call ?
déjeuner m. prêt appeler

IMPERF.—Was he waiting for your arrival ?—Were you
*attendre * arrivée f.*
 speaking to our captain ?
capitaine

PRET. DEF.—Did he prefer your house to hers ?—Did
préférer maison f.
 they clear up his doubts ?
éclaircir doute m.

EXERCISE LVI.

PRET. INDEF.—Has the king rewarded his services ?—
récompenser — m.

Has your mother received my letter ?—Have your partners
associé m.
 sold my goods ?
marchandise f.

PLUPERF.—Had she offended her mistress ?—Had you
offenser maîtresse
 forgotten the date ?
oublier — f.

FUT.—Shall I have that pleasure ?—Will Miss Isabella
plaisir m.
 sing ?—Shall we alight here ?
chanter descendre

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

REMARK.—To add the negative form to a verb used interrogatively, *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the personal pronoun, both in the simple and compound tenses.

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Est-ce que je ne perds pas ?
(*for ne perds-je pas ?*)
ne perds-tu pas ?
ne perd*-il pas ?
ne perdons-nous pas ?
ne perdez-vous pas ?
ne perdent-ils pas ?

{
Do I not
lose ?
}

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

N'ai-je pas perdu ?
n'as-tu pas perdu ?
n'a-t-il pas perdu ?
n'avons-nous pas perdu ?
n'avez-vous pas perdu ?
n'ont-ils pas perdu ?

{
Have I not
lost ?
}

IMPERFECT.

Ne perdais-je pas ?
ne perdais-tu pas ?
ne perdait-il pas ?
ne perdions-nous pas ?
ne perdiez-vous pas ?
ne perdaient-ils pas ?

{
Was I not
losing ?
}

PLUPERFECT.

N'avais-je pas perdu ?
n'avais-tu pas perdu ?
n'avait-il pas perdu ?
n'avions-nous pas perdu ?
n'aviez-vous pas perdu ?
n'avaient-ils pas perdu ?

{
Had I not
lost ?
}

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Ne perdis-je pas ?	<i>Did I not lose ?</i>
ne perdis-tu pas ?	<i>didst thou not lose ?</i>
ne perdit-il pas ?	<i>did he not lose ?</i>
ne perdîmes-nous pas ?	<i>did we not lose ?</i>
ne perdiez-vous pas ?	<i>did you not lose ?</i>
ne perdirent-ils pas ?	<i>did they not lose ?</i>

* D takes the sound of t, when at the end of a verb followed by one of the pronouns *il, elle, on*.—(*Dumarsais, Féraud, Bouillette, Demandre, etc.*)

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Ne perdrai-je pas ?	(Shall I not lose ?)	N'aurai-je pas perdu ?	(Shall I not have lost ?)
ne perdras-tu pas ?		n'auras-tu pas perdu ?	
ne perdra-t-il pas ?		n'aura-t-il pas perdu ?	
ne perdrons-nous pas ?		n'aurons-nous pas perdu ?	
ne perdrez-vous pas ?		n'aurez-vous pas perdu ?	
ne perdront-ils pas ?		n'auront-ils pas perdu ?	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Ne perdrais-je pas ?	(Should I not lose ?)	N'aurais-je pas perdu ?	(Should I not have lost ?)
ne perdrais-tu pas ?		n'aurais-tu pas perdu ?	
ne perdrait-il pas ?		n'aurait-il pas perdu ?	
ne perdrons-nous pas ?		n'aurions-nous pas perdu ?	
ne perdriez-vous pas ?		n'auriez-vous pas perdu ?	
ne perdraient-ils pas ?		n'auraient-ils pas perdu ?	

EXERCISE LVII.

INDICAT. PRES.—Am I not troublesome?—Is she not
importun
 attentive?—Does your sister not draw?—Do we not walk
dessiner *marcher*
 too fast?—Do you not hear the drum?—Do they not
trop vite *entendre* *tambour m.*
 ask (too much?)
demander trop

IMPERF.—Did he not deserve your esteem and mine?—
mériter *estime f.*
 Had he not a short coat and a cloak above it?
²*court* ¹*habit m.* *manteau m.* *par-dessus **

EXERCISE LVIII.

PRET. DEF.—Did he not answer your question?—Did
répondre à *— f.*
 she not turn the box topsyturvy?
renverser *boîte f.* *sens dessus dessous*

PRET. INDEF.—Has he not sold again his country-house?—
revendre *maison de campagne f.*
 Have you not signed the letter?
signer

FUT. ABSOL.—Will he not betray your confidence?—Will
trahir *confiance* f.
 you not consult your lawyer?
consulter *avocat*

§ II. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

The *Passive* verb expresses an action received or suffered by the subject.

There is only one mode of conjugating passive verbs; it is by adding to the verb *être*, through all its tenses, the past participle of the active verb.

Every past participle employed with *être*, must agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject of it. To form the feminine, an *e* is added, and to form the plural, an *s*.

We have already said (page 33), that the participle must be put in the singular, when the pronoun *vous* is used instead of *tu*; thus, we must say, in speaking to a man, *vous êtes loué*; and, in speaking to a female, *vous êtes louée*.

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST.
Être loué,	<i>to be praised.</i>	Avoir été loué, <i>to have been praised.</i>
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		PARTICIPLE PAST.
Êtant loué,	<i>being praised.</i>	Ayant été loué, <i>having been praised.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.		PRÉTERITE INDÉFINITE.	
Je suis	{ loué, m. }	J'ai été	{ loué, m. }
tu es	{ louée, f. }	tu as été	{ louée, f. }
il or elle est	{ loués, m. }	il or elle a été	{ loués, m. }
nous sommes	{ louées, f. }	nous avons été	{ louées, f. }
vous êtes	{ loués, m. }	vous avez été	{ loués, m. }
ils or elles sont	{ louées, f. }	ils or elles ont été	{ louées, f. }

Simple Tenses.

IMPERFECT.

J'étais	{ loué, m. }	I was praised.
tu étais	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle était	{ loués, m. }	
nous étions	{ louées, f. }	
vous étiez	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles étaient	{ louées, f. }	

PRÉTERITE DEFINITE.

Je fus	{ loué, m. }	I was praised.
tu fus	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle fut	{ loués, m. }	
nous fûmes	{ louées, f. }	
vous fûtes	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles furent	{ louées, f. }	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai	{ loué, m. }	I shall be praised.
tu seras	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle sera	{ loués, m. }	
nous serons	{ louées, f. }	
vous serez	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles seront	{ louées, f. }	

Compound Tenses.

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été	{ loué, m. }	I had been praised.
tu avais été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle avait été	{ loués, m. }	
nous avions été	{ louées, f. }	
vous aviez été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles avaient	{ louées, f. }	

PRÉTERITE ANTERIEUR.

J'eus été	{ loué, m. }	I had been praised.
tu eus été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle eut été	{ loués, m. }	
nous eûmes été	{ louées, f. }	
vous eûtes été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles eurent été	{ louées, f. }	

FUTURE ANTERIEUR.

J'aurai été	{ loué, m. }	I shall have been praised.
tu auras été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle aura été	{ loués, m. }	
nous aurons été	{ louées, f. }	
vous aurez été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles auront été	{ louées, f. }	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je serais	{ loué, m. }	I should be praised.
tu serais	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle serait	{ loués, m. }	
nous serions	{ louées, f. }	
vous seriez	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles seraient	{ louées, f. }	

PAST.

J'aurais été	{ loué, m. }	I should have been praised.
tu aurais été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle aurait été	{ loués, m. }	
nous aurions été	{ louées, f. }	
vous auriez été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles auraient	{ louées, f. }	

IMPERATIVE.

Sois	{ loué, m. }	Be (thou) praised.
qu'il or qu'elle soit	{ louée, f. }	
soyons	{ loués, m. }	
soyez	{ louées, f. }	
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	{ loués, m. }	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je sois	{ loué, m. }	That I may be praised.
que tu sois	{ louée, f. }	
qu'il or qu'elle soit	{ loués, m. }	
que nous soyons	{ louées, f. }	
que vous soyez	{ loués, m. }	
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	{ louées, f. }	

PRÉTERITE.

Que j'aie été	{ loué, m. }	That I may have been praised.
que tu aies été	{ louée, f. }	
qu'il or qu'elle ait	{ loués, m. }	
que nous ayons été	{ louées, f. }	
que vous ayez été	{ loués, m. }	
qu'ils or qu'elles aient été	{ louées, f. }	

Simple Tenses.

IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse	{ loué, m.
que tu fusses	{ louée, f.
qu'il or qu'elle fût	{ loués, m.
que nous fussions	{ louées, f.
que vous fussiez	{ loués, f.
qu'ils or qu'elles fussent	

*That I might
be praised.*

Compound Tenses.

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse été	{ loué, m.
que tu eusses été	{ louée, f.
qu'il or qu'elle eût	{ loués, m.
que nous eussions été	{ louées, f.
que vous eussiez été	{ loués, f.
qu'ils or qu'elles eus- sent été	

*That I might have
been praised.*

EXERCISE LIX.

INDICAT. PRES.—He is loved and esteemed by everybody.
aimer estimer de tout le monde

PRET. DEF.—The city of Rome was several times sacked.
ville f. — fois f. saccagé

He was saved from a great danger by (his youngest son).
délivrer — m. par le plus jeune de ses fils

She was accused of theft by her mistress.—The Gauls
accuser vol m. par Gaules f. pl.

were conquered by Cæsar.
conquis par

PRET. INDEF.—Your work has been praised in a very
ouvrage m. d' fort
delicate manner by an academician.—The Jews have been
manière f. par académicien Juif
punished by God.
de

FUT. ABS.—You will be recognised.—Your conduct will
reconnu conduite f.
be approved by wise and enlightened people.
par art. 2 éclairé personne f. pl.

§ III. CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS.

The *Neuter* verb expresses merely the state of its subject; as, *J'existe*, I exist; or else an action limited to the subject which produces it; as, *Je marche*, I walk.

A *neuter* verb may be easily known by its not admitting immediately after it the words *quelqu'un*, somebody, or *quelque chose*, something. We cannot say: *Je*

marche quelqu'un, je languis quelque chose ; marcher and languir, therefore, are neuter verbs.

There are, in French, nearly six hundred *neuter verbs* ; about five hundred take the auxiliary *avoir* in the compound tenses.

Those which follow form their compounds with *être* :

Aller,	to go.	parvenir,	to attain.
arriver,	to arrive.	provenir,	to come from.
déchoir,	to decay.	redevenir	to become again.
devenir,	to become.	rentrer,	to come in again.
disconvenir,	to deny, to disown.	repartir,	to set off again.
échoir,	to become due.	rester,	to stay.
éclore,	to blow, to be hatched.	retomber,	to fall again.
entrer,	to come in.	retourner,	to go back.
mourir,	to die.	revenir,	to come back.
naître,	to be born.	survenir,	to happen.
partir,	to set out.	tomber,	to fall.
		venir,	to come.

The following neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être* in their compound tenses, according to the idea one wishes to express. *Avoir* is used when we consider the action, and *être* when regard is had to the result of the action.

Aborder,	to land.	disparaître,	to disappear.
accourir,	to run to.	échapper,	to escape.
accroître,	to increase.	grandir,	to grow.
croître,	to grow.	monter,	to go up.
déborder,	to overflow.	passer,	to pass.
demeurer,	to remain.	remonter	to go up again.
descendre,	to go down.		

§ IV. OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

Pronominal Verbs are those which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person ; as, *je me repens*, I repent ; *il se propose*, he intends ; *nous nous flattons*, we flatter ourselves.

Pronominal Verbs are called *reflected*, when they express an action or a state which relates only to the subject of the verb ; as, *se blesser*, to hurt one's self ; *se réjouir*, to

rejoice. They are called *reciprocal*, when they express a reciprocity of action between two or more subjects; as, *s'entr'aimer*, to love each other; *s'entr'aider*, to help one another.

Pronominal Verbs have no conjugation peculiar to themselves; they follow the one to which they belong, which is known by the termination of the Infinitive. In their compound tenses, they take the verb *être*, to be, contrary to the English expression, which requires *have*.

CONJUGATION OF A PRONOMINAL VERB.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Se promener,	<i>to walk.</i>	S'être promené, or proménée, <i>f.</i>	} <i>to have walked.</i>
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		PARTICIPLE PAST.	
Se promenant,	<i>walking.</i>	S'étant promené, or proménée, <i>f.</i>	} <i>having walked.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.		PRETERITE INDEFINITE.	
Je me promène, tu te promènes, il se promène, nous nous promenons, vous vous promenez, ils se promènent,	<i>I walk. thou walkest. he walks. we walk. you walk. they walk.</i>	Je me suis promené, tu t'es promené, il s'est promené, nous nous sommes promenés, vous vous êtes promenés, ils se sont promenés,	<i>(I have walked.)</i>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Je me promenais, tu te promenais, il se promenait, nous nous promenions, vous vous promeniez, ils se promenaient,	<i>I was walk- ing.</i>	Je m'étais promené, tu t'étais promené, il s'était promené, nous nous étions promenés, vous vous étiez promenés, ils s'étaient promenés,	<i>(I had walked.)</i>
PRETERITE DEFINITE.		PRETERITE ANTERIOR.	
Je me promenai, tu te promenais, il se promena, nous nous promenâmes, vous vous promenâtes, ils se promenèrent,	<i>I walked.</i>	Je me fus promené, tu te fus promené, il se fut promené, nous nous fûmes promenés, vous vous fûtes promenés, ils se furent promenés,	<i>(I had walked.)</i>

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je me promènerai,
tu te promèneras,
il se promènera,
nous nous promènerons,
vous vous promèneriez,
ils se promèneront,

(I shall
walk.)

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je me serai promené,
tu te seras promené,
il se sera promené,
nous nous serons proménés,
vous vous serez proménés,
ils se seront proménés.

(I shall
have walked.)

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je me promènerais,
tu te promènerais,
il se promènerait,
nous nous promènerions,
vous vous promèneriez,
ils se promèneraient,

(I should
walk.)

PAST.

Je me serais promené,
tu te serais promené,
il se serait promené,
nous nous serions proménés,
vous vous seriez proménés,
ils se seraient proménés,

(I should
have walked.)

IMPERATIVE.

Promène-toi,
qu'il se promène,
promenons-nous,
promenez-vous,
qu'ils se promènent,

*Walk (thou).
let him walk.
let us walk.
walk (you).
let them walk.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je me promène,
que tu te promènes,
qu'il se promène,
que nous nous promenions,
que vous vous promeniez,
qu'ils se promènent,

(That I
may walk.)

PRETERITE.

Que je me sois promené,
que tu te sois promené,
qu'il se soit promené,
que nous nous soyons proménés,
que vous vous soyez proménés,
qu'ils se soient proménés,

(That I may
have walked.)

IMPERFECT.

Que je me promenasse,
que tu te promenasses,
qu'il se promenât,
que nous nous promenassions,
que vous vous promenassiez,
qu'ils se promenassent,

(That I
might walk.)

PLUPERFECT.

Que je me fusse promené,
que tu te fusses promené,
qu'il se fût promené, [menés,
que nous nous fussions pro-
que vous vous fussiez proménés,
qu'ils se fussent proménés,

(That I might
have walked.)

Conjugate in the same manner :

S'accorder, to agree.
s'adresser, to apply.
s'arrêter, to stop.
s'avancer, to come or go
forward.
se baigner, to bathe.
se baisser, to stoop.
se dépêcher, to make haste.
s'arrêter, to resolve upon.

s'emporter to fly into a
passion.
s'enrhumer, to catch cold.
s'envoler, to fly away.
s'étonner, to wonder.
se fâcher, to be angry.
se hâter, to make haste.
s'imaginer, to fancy.
se lever, etc., to rise, etc.

EXERCISE LX.

INDIC. PRES.—I flatter myself.—That woman nurses
se flatter *s'écouter*
 herself too much.—We intend to travel.—You wonder
se proposer de voyager *s'étonner*
 at this news.—They defend themselves.
de nouvelle f. *se défendre*
 IMPERF.—I was riding (on horseback).—He was
se promener à cheval
 rejoicing at his good fortune.—We were fatiguing ourselves
se réjouir de — f. *se fatiguer*
 (to no purpose).—You were amusing yourself in the garden.
inutilement *s'amuser* *dans*
 —They quarrelled with (every body).
se disputer *tout le monde*

EXERCISE LXI.

PRET. DEF.—I presented myself to the assembly.—He
se présenter *assemblée f.*
 lost himself in the crowd.—She laughed at his advice.
se perdre *foule f.* *se moquer de* *avis m.*
 —We applied to the prime minister.—You perceived
s'adresser *premier ministre* *s'apercevoir de*
 the snare.—They met in the street.
piège m. *se rencontrer* *rue f.*
 PRET. INDEF.—I have exposed myself.—He has amused
s'exposer *s'amuser*
 himself.—She has revenged herself.—Where did you stop?
se venger *s'arrêter*

EXERCISE LXII.

PLUPERF.—I had (fallen asleep).—They had (grown rich)
s'endormir *s'enrichir*
 at your expense.
dépens m. pl.
 FUT. ABS.—I shall bathe to-morrow.—You will
se baigner *demain*
 (catch cold).
s'enrhumer

COND. PRES.—I would not expose myself so rashly.
s'exposer *si témérairement.*

—They would (grow bold).
s'enhardir

IMPER.—Let us rest under the shade of this
se reposer à ombre f.

tree. — Rise from there, that is not your place.
arbre m. se lever là ce — f.

§ V. OF IMPERSONAL OR UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

The Verbs to which the old Grammarians give generally the name of *impersonal*, and the modern that of *unipersonal*,* are certain defective verbs, which, throughout all their tenses, are used only in the third person singular; as, *il faut*, it is necessary; *il y a*, there is, there are.

Unipersonal Verbs have their inflections according to the conjugation to which they belong; and, in their compound tenses, some take *avoir*, as, *il a plu*, *il a tonné*; and others take *être*, as, *il est résulté*, *il est arrivé*. In either case, the past participle admits of no variation in gender or number.

LIST of the Unipersonal Verbs of most general occurrence :

<i>Il pleut,</i>	<i>it rains.</i>	<i>il convient,</i>	<i>it becomes.</i>
<i>il neige,</i>	<i>it snows.</i>	<i>il faut,</i>	<i>it is necessary.</i>
<i>il grêle,</i>	<i>it hails.</i>	<i>il importe,</i>	<i>it matters.</i>
<i>il tonne,</i>	<i>it thunders.</i>	<i>il paraît,</i>	<i>it appears.</i>
<i>il éclaire,</i>	<i>it lightens.</i>	<i>il semble,</i>	<i>it seems.</i>
<i>il gèle,</i>	<i>it freezes.</i>	<i>il s'ensuit que,</i>	<i>it follows that.</i>
<i>il dégèle,</i>	<i>it thaws.</i>	<i>il sied,</i>	<i>it is becoming.</i>
<i>il arrive,</i>	<i>it happens.</i>	<i>il y a,</i>	<i>there is, there are.</i>

* IMPERSONAL means, that has no person; and UNIPERSONAL, that has one person.

CONJUGATION
OF THE IRREGULAR UNIPERSONAL VERB
PLEUVOIR, TO RAIN.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Pleuvoir, *to rain*.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Pleuvant, *raining*.

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Plu, *rained*.

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Il pleut.

IMPERFECT.

Il pleuvait.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Il plut.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Il pleuvra.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Il a plu.

PLUPERFECT.

Il avait plu.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Il eut plu.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Il aura plu.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Il pleuvrait.

PAST.

Il aurait plu.

NO IMPERATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Qu'il pleuve.

PRETERITE.

Qu'il ait plu.

IMPERFECT.

Qu'il plût.

PLUPERFECT.

Qu'il eût plu.

CONJUGATION

OF THE UNIPERSONAL VERB

Y AVOIR, THERE TO BE.

INFINITIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Y avoir, *there to be.* | **Y avoir eu,** *there to have been.*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Y ayant, *there being.* | **Y** ayant eu, *there having been.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Il y a, there is, there are. | Il ya eu, there has, or have been.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Il y avait, there was, there were. | Il y avait eu, there had been.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Il y eut, *there was, there were.* | Il y eut eu, *there had been.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Π y aura, *there will be.* | Π y a u r a e u, *there will have been.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Il y aurait, *there would be.* Il y aurait eu, *{ there would have been.*

NO IMPERATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE.

Qu'il y ait, *that there may be.* | Qu'il y ait eu, { *that there may*
have been.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Qu'il y eût, *that there might be.* | Qu'il y eût eu, { *that there might have been.*

CONJUGATION

OF THE IRREGULAR UNIPERSONAL VERB
FALLOIR, TO BE NECESSARY, REQUISITE.

INFINITIVE.	
<i>Simple Tenses.</i>	<i>Compound Tenses.</i>
PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
Falloir.	Ayant fallu.
INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PRETERITE INDEFINITE.
Il faut (<i>it is necessary, it must.</i>)	Il a fallu.
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Il fallait.	Il avait fallu.
PRETERITE DEFINITE.	PRETERITE ANTERIOR.
Il fallut.	Il eut fallu.
FUTURE ABSOLUTE.	FUTURE ANTERIOR.
Il faudra.	Il aura fallu.
CONDITIONAL.	
PRESENT.	PAST.
Il faudrait.	Il aurait fallu.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT.	PRETERITE.
Qu'il faille.	Qu'il ait fallu.
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Qu'il fallût.	Qu'il eût fallu.

This verb has neither Part. Pres. nor Imperative.

REMARKS.—The usual construction with *falloir* is to place the conjunction *que* after *il faut*, *il fallait*, etc., then to use the subject of the English verb *must*, as a subject to the second verb in French, which must be put in the

subjunctive ; as, *Il faut que je finisse mon thème*, I must finish my exercise.

Another construction is to allow the second verb to remain in the infinitive, as in English, then the personal pronoun which is the subject of the verb *must*, is to be expressed by one of the pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, placed after the impersonal pronoun *il*; as, *Il me faut commencer mon ouvrage*, I must begin my work.

All expressions implying necessity, obligation, or want, may be rendered by *falloir* ; as,

Il lui faut un habit.—(ACAD.)

He wants a coat.

Il me faut un dictionnaire.

I want a dictionary.

EXERCISE LXIII.

N.B.—*The Tenses will now be used promiscuously.*

Does it *rain*?—Was it not raining?—I think it *thunders*.
crois qu'

—Does it not *lighten*?—Did it *freeze* last night?—
ind-4 art. ²*dernier* ¹*nuît* f.

ind-4 art. ²dernier ¹nuit f.

Does it *snow* this morning?—*There is nothing to do.* —
matin m. *faire*

matin m. *faire*

There are many people.—*There were more than a*
 beaucoup de gens *de*

beaucoup de gens de .

thousand persons.—*There has been* a great battle. —*There*
bataille f.

bataille f.

would be no harm.

mal

EXERCISE LXIV.

Children *must* obey their parents.—I *must* sell my house.—
obéir à ——— maison f.

obéir à — *maison f.*

You *must* speak to him.—(How much) do you *want*?—They
Combien

Combien

must answer. — *Must* I show you my work? — *It*
répondre *montrer* *ouvrage m.*

répondre montrer ouvrage m.

was necessary to consent to that bargain. — *It would be*
** consentir* *marché m.*

consentir *marché m.*

necessary (to inquire about it).—*I want a grammar.*

s'en informer

BEFORE giving the conjugation of the *irregular Verbs*, we shall exemplify several verbs, which, although regular in their conjugation, present a peculiarity in the orthography of some of their tenses.

§ I. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS
ENDING IN *GER*.

MANGER, TO EAT.

	<i>Part. Pres. mangeant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. mangé.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mange, nous mangeons,	tu manges, vous mangez, ils mangent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mangeais, nous mangions,	tu mangeais, vous mangiez, ils mangeaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mangeai, nous mangeâmes,	tu mangeas, vous mangeâtes, ils mangèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mangerai, nous mangerons,	tu mangeras, vous mangerez, ils mangeront.
COND.	Je mangerais, nous mangerions,	tu mangerais, vous mangeriez, ils mangeraient.
IMPER.	mangeons, mange,	mangez, qu'il mange ; qu'ils mangent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mange, nous mangions,	tu manges, vous mangiez, ils mangent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mangeasse, nous mangeassions,	tu mangeasses, vous mangeassiez, ils mangeassent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Abréger,	<i>to abridge.</i>	engager,	<i>to engage.</i>
arranger,	<i>to arrange.</i>	gager,	<i>to bet.</i>
bouger,	<i>to stir.</i>	juger,	<i>to judge.</i>
corriger,	<i>to correct.</i>	négliger,	<i>to neglect.</i>
déranger,	<i>to disorder.</i>	partager,	<i>to divide.</i>
diriger,	<i>to direct.</i>	songer,	<i>to think.</i>
encourager,	<i>to encourage.</i>	venger,	<i>to revenge, etc.</i>

REMARK.—Verbs ending in *ger*, require an *e* mute after the *g*, when that consonant is followed by the vowel

100 CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *GER*.

a or *o*; as, *mangeant, mangeons, mangeais*; but we write without *e* mute, *mangions, mangèrent*, because the *g* is not followed by the vowels *a, o*.

(*Acad.—Wailly.—Féraud, etc.*)

EXERCISE LXV.

The eye *judges* of colours; the ear *judges* of
œil m. art. *couleur f.* *oreille f.*
 sounds.—Where do you *direct* your steps?—He *disturbed*
 art. *son m.* *pas m.* *déranger*
 everybody.—The example of the general *encouraged* the
tout le monde *exemple m.*
 army.—Have you *corrected* your exercise?—I *would wager*
armée f. *thème m.* *gager*
 a hundred francs (that it is not so).—*Abridge* your speech.—
 * —m. *que cela n'est pas* *discours m.*
 Don't *stir*.

§ II. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *ÉER*.

AGRÉER, TO ACCEPT, TO PLEASE.

	<i>Part. Pres. agréant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. agréé.</i>
IND. Pres.	J'agrée, nous agréons,	tu agrées, vous agréez, ils agrément.
Imp.	J'agréais, nous agréions,	tu agréais, vous agréiez, ils agréaient.
Pre.	J'agréai, nous agréâmes,	tu agréas, vous agréâtes, ils agréèrent.
Fut.	J'agréerai, nous agréerons,	tu agréeras, vous agréerez, ils agréeront.
COND.	J'agréerais, nous agréerions,	tu agréerais, vous agréeriez, ils agréeraient.
IMPER.	agréons, agréez,	qu'il agrée; qu'ils agrément.
SUBJ. Pres.	Qu'j'agrée, Qu'nous agréions,	tu agrées, vous agréiez, ils agrément.
Imp.	Que j'agréeasse, Que nous agréas- sions,	tu agréasses, vous agréassiez, ils agréassent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Créer,	to create.	suppléer,	to supply.
récréer,	to divert.	etc.	etc.

REMARK.—The Participle past of these verbs takes three *e*'s in the feminine. In the Future and Conditional, where there are two, the poets usually suppress one.

Votre cœur d'Ardaric *agrèrait*-il la flamme ?—(CORNEILLE.)

Nos hôtes *agrèront* les soins qui leur sont dus.—(LA FONTAINE.)

In prose, that suppression would be a fault.

§ III. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *CR*.

AVANCER, TO ADVANCE.

	<i>Part. Pres. avançant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. avancé.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	J'avance, nous avançons,	tu avances, il avance ; vous avancez, ils avancent.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'avancais, nous avançons,	tu avançais, il avançait ; vous avanciez, ils avançaient.
<i>Prët.</i>	J'avancaï, nous avançâmes,	tu avanças, il avança ; vous avançâtes, ils avancèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'avancerai, nous avancerons,	tu avanceras, il avancera ; vous avancerez, ils avanceront.
COND.	J'avancerais, nous avancerions,	tu avancerais, il avancerait ; vous avanceriez, ils avanceraient.
IMPER.	avançons,	avance, qu'il avance ; avancez, qu'ils avancent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Je j'avance, Nous avançons,	tu avances, il avance ; vous avanciez, ils avancent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je j'avançasse, Nous avançassions,	tu avançasses, il avançât ; vous avançassiez, ils avançassent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Amorcer,	to bait.	énoncer,	to express, utter.
annoncer,	to announce.	percer,	to pierce.
bercer,	to rock.	pincer,	to pinch.
commencer,	to begin.	rincer,	to rinse, wash.
devancer,	to outrun.	sucer,	to suck.
enfoncer,	to sink, break open.	etc.	etc.

REMARK.—In all these verbs the *c* takes a cedilla, when followed by the vowel *a* or *o*.

102 EXERCISE ON VERBS ENDING IN *ÊRE* AND *CER*.

The same rule applies to those verbs in which it is followed by a *u*, whenever it is wished to give the *c* the soft pronunciation of the *s*; as, *il reçut, il a aperçu*.

EXERCISE LXVI.

God *created* man after his own image.—God has *created*
 art. à * — f.
 heaven and earth.—His proposal was *accepted*.—
 art. ciel m. art. proposition f. agréer
 I shall (*make up*) the rest.—He *announced* that news to all
 suppléer nouvelle f.
 his friends.—It was *beginning* to rain when we (set off).—A
 quand partimes
 ball *pierced* his clothes. — Wash these glasses.
 balle f. habit m. pl. Rincer verre m.

IV. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *UER*.

JOUER, TO PLAY.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> jouant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> joué.
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je joue, nous jouons,	tu joues, vous jouez, ils jouent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je jouais, nous jouions,	tu jouais, vous jouiez, ils jouaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je jouai, nous jouâmes,	tu jouas, vous jouâtes, ils jouèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je jouerai, nous jouerons,	tu joueras, vous jouerez, ils joueront.
COND.	Je jouerais, nous jouerions,	tu jouerais, vous joueriez, ils joueraient.
IMPER.	jouons,	joue, jouez, qu'il joue ; qu'ils jouent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Je joue, nous jouions,	tu joues, vous jouiez, ils jouent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je jouasse, nous jouassions,	tu jouasses, vous jouassiez, ils jouassent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Avouer,	<i>to avow, confess.</i>	distribuer,	<i>to distribute.</i>
attribuer,	<i>to attribute.</i>	nouer,	<i>to tie.</i>
clouer,	<i>to nail.</i>	secouer,	<i>to shake off.</i>
contribuer,	<i>to contribute.</i>	tuer,	<i>to kill.</i>
dénouer,	<i>to untie.</i>	etc.	etc.

REMARK.—In verbs of the first conjugation, when the termination *er* of the infinitive is preceded by a vowel, as in *jouer, prier, avouer*, etc., the *e* of the termination may be preserved or suppressed, in poetry, in the Future and Conditional; but, if it be suppressed, a circumflex accent is placed over the vowel preceding. So poets write *je jouerai* or *je joûrai*; *j'avouerai* or *j'avouârai*; *je prierais* or *je prîrais*.

§ V. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *ELER*.

APPELER, TO CALL.

	<i>Pres. Part. appellant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. appelé.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	J'appelle,	tu appelles,	il appelle ;
	nous appelons,	vous appelez,	ils appellent.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'appelais,	tu appelais,	il appelait ;
	nous appelions,	vous appeliez,	ils appelaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	J'appelai,	tu appelas,	il appela ;
	nous appelâmes,	vous appelâtes,	ils appelèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'appellerai,	tu appelleras,	il appellera ;
	nous appellerons,	vous appellerez,	ils appelleront.
COND.	J'appellerais,	tu appellerais,	il appellerait ;
	nous appellerions,	vous appelleriez,	ils appelleraient.
IMPER.		appelle,	qu'il appelle ;
	appelons,	appelez.	qu'ils appellent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Je j'appelle,	tu appelles,	il appelle ;
	On nous appelions,	vous appeliez,	ils appellent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je j'appelasse,	tu appelasses,	il appelât ;
	On nous appelassions,	vous appelassiez,	ils appelassent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Amonceler,	<i>to heap up.</i>	épeler,	<i>to spell.</i>
atteler,	<i>to put horses to.</i>	niveler,	<i>to level.</i>
chanceler,	<i>to totter, stagger.</i>	rappeler,	<i>to recall.</i>
dételer,	<i>to unyoke.</i>	renouveler, etc.	<i>to renew, etc.</i>

REMARKS.—As has been exemplified in *appeler*, verbs ending in *eler*, double the *l* before an *e* mute: *J'appelle, tu nivelles, il étincelle, ils renouvelleraient*, etc.; but we write with a single *l*: *nous appelons, vous nivelez, ils étincelaient*, etc., because the vowel which follows the *l* is not an *e* mute.

Geler, to freeze; *dégeler*, to thaw; *harceler*, to harass; *peler*, to peel, do not double the *l*, but the *e*, which precedes it, takes a grave accent: *Il gèle, il dégèlera, ils pèleraient*, etc.

The verbs *receler*, to conceal stolen things; *révéler*, to reveal, etc., being terminated by *éler*, and not *eler*, never double the *l*: *Je recèle, tu révèles*, etc.

EXERCISE LXVII.

Do you *play* on the violin?—The children *are playing* at
de violon m.
 blindman's-buff.—He was *killed* by a (cannon shot).—The
colin-maillard de coup de canon m.
 bells *call* to church.—*Call* them (as you please).—
cloche f. art. église f. comme il vous plaira.
 He is (near falling), he *staggers*.—We have *renewed*
près de tomber
 acquaintance.—*Spell* that word.
connaissance mot m.

§ VI. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS
ENDING IN *ETER*.*JETER*, TO THROW.

	<i>Part. Pres. jetant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. jeté.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je jette,	tu jettes,	il jette ;
	nous jetons,	vous jetez,	ils jettent.
Imp.	Je jetais,	tu jetais,	il jetait ;
	nous jetions,	vous jetiez,	ils jetaient.
Pret.	Je jetai,	tu jetas,	il jeta ;
	nous jetâmes,	vous jetâtes,	ils jetèrent.
Fut.	Je jetterai,	tu jetteras,	il jettera ;
	nous jetterons,	vous jetterez,	ils jetteront.

COND.	Je jetterais,	tu jetterais,	il jetterait ;
	nous jetterions,	vous jetteriez,	ils jetteraient
IMPER.		jette,	qu'il jette ;
	jetons,	jetez,	qu'ils jettent.
SUBJ. Pres.	je jette,	tu jettes,	il jette ;
	nous jetions,	vous jetiez,	ils jettent.
Imp.	je jetasse,	tu jetasses,	il jetât ;
	nous jetassions,	vous jetassiez,	ils jetassent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Cacheter, to seal. | Projeter, to project, etc.

Acheter, to buy ; étiqueter, to ticket, make *j'achète*, *j'achèterai*, *ils étiquettent*, etc., and not *j'achette*, *j'achetterai*, *ils étiquettent*.—(ACAD.)

§ VII. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *YER*.

EMPLOYER, TO EMPLOY.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> employant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> employé.
IND.		
	Pres. J'emploie,	tu emploies, il emploie ;
	nous employons,	vous employez, ils emploient.
	Imp. J'employais,	tu employais, il employait ;
	nous employions,	vous employiez, ils employaient.
	Pret. J'employai,	tu employas, il employa ;
	nous employâmes,	vous employâtes, ils employèrent.
	Fut. J'emploierai,	tu emploieras, il emploiera ;
	nous emploierons,	vous emploierez, ils emploieront.
COND.	J'emploierais,	tu emploierais, il emploierait ;
	nous emploierions,	vous emploieriez, ils emploieraient.
IMPER.		emploie, qu'il emploie ;
	employons,	employez, qu'ils emploient.
SUBJ.		
	Pres. je j'emploie,	tu emploies, il emploie ;
	nous employions,	vous employiez, ils emploient.
	Imp. j'employasse,	tu employasses, il employât ;
	nous employas-	vous employas-
	sions,	siez, ils employassent.

(Acad.—Girard.—Restaut.—Wailly, etc.)

Conjugate in the same manner verbs in *yer*, and in general all those whose Present Participle ends in *yant*, as :—

Balayer,	to sweep.	nettoyer,	to clean.
effrayer,	to frighten.	appuyer,	to prop; to rest upon.
essayer,	to try.	essuyer,	to wipe.
payer,	to pay.	ennuyer,	to tire.

Envoyer, to send ; and, *renvoyer*, to send back, deviate from the preceding model of conjugation in the Future and Conditional, making—*J'enverrai*, *j'enverrais* ; *je renverrai*, *je renverrais*, instead of *j'enverrai*, etc.

REMARKS.—In the preceding verbs, the *y* is preserved in every part of the verb, except before the *mute* terminations *e*, *es*, *ent*, where it is changed into *i* : *Je paie*,* *tu nettoies*, *ils appuient*. Moreover, these verbs take a *y* and an *i* in the two first persons plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative and Present of the Subjunctive ; that is, the *y* of the radical part (as *employ*), and the *i* of the final part *ions*, *iez*.—(Modern Grammarians.)

EXERCISE LXVIII.

That *throws* me into a great *dilemma*.—He *threw* himself
dans *embarras* m.
into the midst of the enemy. — Have you sealed your
à milieu m. ennemi m. pl.
letter ?—He is *cleaning* his gun. — All that he takes, he
fusil m. ce que prend
pays (ready money).— I shall endeavour to persuade
le argent comptant essayer de persuader
them.—He will support you with all his credit. — He
appuyer de crédit m.
employs everybody to obtain that place.—That *tires* me
tout le monde pour — f.
to death.—Don't *frighten* the child.
art. mort f. enfant.

* The French Academy leaves the choice of writing *il paie*, or *il paie* ; *je payerai*, or *je paierai*, or even *je paîrai* ; but the generality of Grammarians are agreed on the change of the *y* into *i*, and present usage is in conformity with their opinion.

§ VIII. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF
VERBS ENDING IN *IER*.

PRIER, TO PRAY.

	<i>Part. Pres. priant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. prié.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je prie, nous prions,	tu pries, vous priez,	il prie ; ils prient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je priais, nous priions,	tu priais, vous priiez,	il priait ; ils priaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je priai, nous priâmes,	tu prias, vous priâtes,	il pria ; ils prièrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je prierai, nous prierons,	tu prieras, vous prierez,	il priera ; ils prieront.
COND.	Je prierais, nous prierions,	tu prierais, vous prieriez,	il prierait ; ils prieraient.
IMPER.		prie, priez,	qu'il prie ; qu'ils prient.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Je prie, nous prions,	tu pries, vous priiez,	il prie ; ils prient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je priasse, nous priassions,	tu priasses, vous priassiez,	il priât ; ils priassent.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs ending in *ier* ;
as,

Certifier, <i>to certify.</i>	nier, <i>to deny.</i>
crier, <i>to cry.</i>	oublier, <i>to forget.</i>
étudier, <i>to study.</i>	plier, <i>to bend.</i>
lier, <i>to tie.</i>	relier, <i>to bind.</i>
manier, <i>to handle.</i>	remercier, <i>to thank.</i>

REMARK.—*Prier* and all verbs whose Present Participle ends in *iant*, take *ii* in the first and the second person plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative and Present of the Subjunctive ; that is, the *i* of the radical part (as *pri*), and that of the termination : *Nous priions, vous priez ; que nous liions, que vous liez.*

EXERCISE LXIX.

I thank you for the honour you do me.—He studies
de que faites
night and day.—The plank was bending under him.—
planche f. sous

shall never forget (what I owe you).—*Request* him to come
ce que je vous dois *Prier* *de venir*
and (speak to me).—One (does not become) learned without
 * *me parler* *On ne devient pas* *sans*
studying.—In *handling* that vase, he broke it.
 inf-1 — m. *briser* ind-4

OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

However irregular a verb may be, its irregularities never occur in the compound tenses, for which reason we shall, except in very few instances, dispense with them in the various conjugations of irregular verbs.

§ I. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The only irregular verbs of this conjugation are, *aller*, to go; *s'en aller*, to go away; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back.

ALLER, TO GO.

	<i>Part. Pres. allant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. allé.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je vais, nous allons,	tu vas, vous allez,	il va ; ils vont.
Imp.	J'allais, nous allions,	tu allais, vous alliez,	il allait ; ils allaient.
Pret.	J'allai, nous allâmes,	tu allas, vous allâtes,	il alla ; ils allèrent.
Fut.	J'irai, nous irons,	tu iras, vous irez,	il ira ; ils iront.
COND. Pres.	J'irais, nous irions,	tu irais, vous iriez,	il irait ; ils iraient.
IMPER.		va, allez,	qu'il aille ; qu'ils aillent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je j'aïlle, Nous allions,	tu aïlles, vous alliez,	il aïlle ; ils aïllent.
Imp.	Je j'allasse, Nous allussions,	tu allasses, vous allassiez,	il allât ; ils allassent.

REMARKS.—*Aller* is conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, in all its compound tenses: *Je suis allé, j'étais allé*, etc.

The Imperative *va* takes an *s*, when followed by *en* or *y*; as, *vas en savoir des nouvelles; vas-y*.

We sometimes say, *je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été*, instead of *j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé*. These expressions, however, have this difference, that *avoir été* implies the return, and *être allé* does not. Thus: *il a été à Rome*, means, that he went to Rome, and is returned, or that he has been in Rome, and has left it; but *il est allé à Rome* means only, that he is gone to Rome.—(ACAD.)

S'EN ALLER, TO GO AWAY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

S'en aller, to go away. | *S'en être allé, to have gone away.*

PAST.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

S'en allant, going away. | *S'en étant allé, having gone away.*

COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.

PARTICIPLE PAST.—*En allé, gone away.*

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

*Je m'en vais,
tu t'en vas,
il s'en va,
nous nous en allons,
vous vous en allez,
ils s'en vont,*

IMPERFECT.

*Je m'en allais,
tu t'en allais,
il s'en allait,
nous nous en allions,
vous vous en alliez,
ils s'en allaient,*

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

*Je m'en allai,
tu t'en allas,
il s'en alla,
nous nous en allâmes,
vous vous en allâtes,
ils s'en allèrent,*

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

*Je m'en suis allé,
tu t'en es allé,
il s'en est allé,
nous nous en sommes allés,
vous vous en êtes allés,
ils s'en sont allés,*

PLUPERFECT.

*Je m'en étais allé,
tu t'en étais allé,
il s'en était allé,
nous nous en étions allés,
vous vous en étiez allés,
ils s'en étaient allés,*

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

*Je m'en fus allé,
tu t'en fus allé,
il s'en fut allé,
nous nous en fûmes allés,
vous vous en fûtes allés,
ils s'en furent allés,*

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je m'en irai,
tu t'en iras,
il s'en ira,
nous nous en irons,
vous vous en irez,
ils s'en iront,

(I shall go
away.)

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je m'en serai allé,
tu t'en seras allé,
il s'en sera allé,
nous nous en serons allés,
vous vous en serez allés,
ils s'en seront allés,

(I shall have
gone away.)

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je m'en irais,
tu t'en irais,
il s'en irait,
nous nous en irions,
vous vous en iriez,
ils s'en iroient,

(I would or
should go away.)

PAST.

Je m'en serais allé,
tu t'en serais allé,
il s'en serait allé,
nous nous en serions allés,
vous vous en seriez allés,
ils s'en seraient allés,

(I should
have gone away.)

IMPERATIVE.

Affirmatively.

Va-t'en,
qu'il s'en aille,
allons-nous-en,
allez-vous-en,
qu'ils s'en aillent,

(Go
(thou) away.)

Negatively.

Ne t'en va pas,
qu'il ne s'en aille pas,
ne nous en allons pas,
ne vous en allez pas,
qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas,

(Do not
go away.)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je m'en aille,
que tu t'en ailles,
qu'il s'en aille,
que nous nous en allions,
que vous vous en alliez,
qu'ils s'en aillent,

(That I may
go away.)

PRETERITE.

Que je m'en sois allé,
que tu t'en sois allé,
qu'il s'en soit allé,
que nous nous en soyons allés,
que vous vous en soyez allés,
qu'ils s'en soient allés,

(That I may
have gone away.)

IMPERFECT.

Que je m'en allasse,
que tu t'en allasses,
qu'il s'en allât,
que nous nous en allussions,
que vous vous en allassiez,
qu'ils s'en allassent,

(That I
might go away.)

PLUPERFECT.

Que je m'en fusse allé,
que tu t'en fusses allé,
qu'il s'en fût allé,
que nous nous en fussions allés,
que vous vous en fussiez allés,
qu'ils s'en fussent allés,

(That I might
have gone away.)

When *S'en aller* is used interrogatively, we say, *M'en irai-je, t'en iras-tu, s'en ira-t-il, nous en irons-nous, vous en irez-vous, s'en iront-ils?*

Envoyer, to send, and *renvoyer*, to send back, to dismiss, are regular, except the Future and the Conditional, which, as we have already observed (page 106), make *j'enverrai*, *j'enverrais*; *je renverrai*, *je renverrais*.

EXERCISE LXX.

I am going to pay some visits.—He goes from town to town.
** faire visite f. en*
 They are going to the country. — Blue and pink go
campagne f. art. bleu m. art. rose m.
 well together.—We went by land.—She is gone to church.—
art. église f.
 Let us go away from here.— Why do you go away so soon?
Pourquoi tôt
 —I will send my servant to the post-office.—She would
domestique m. poste f
 dismiss her chambermaid.—They would send back their horses.
femme de chambre

§ II. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ABSTENIR (S'), to abstain, is conjugated like *tenir*, which is exemplified farther on.

ACCOURIR, to run to, is conjugated like *courir*, with this difference, that its compound tenses are sometimes formed with *avoir*, and sometimes with *être*, according as it denotes state or action. (See page 90.)

ACCUEILLIR, to receive; see *cueillir*.

ACQUÉRIR, TO ACQUIRE.

<i>Part Pres. acquérant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. acquis.</i>	
IND. Pres. J'acquiers,	tu acquiers,	il acquiert ;
nous acquérons,	vous acquérez,	ils acquièrent.
Imp. J'acquerais,	tu acquerais,	il acquérait ;
nous acquérions,	vous acquériez,	ils acquéraient.
Pret. J'acquis,	tu acquis,	il acquit ;
nous acquîmes,	vous acquîtes,	ils acquirent.
Fut. J'acquerrai,	tu acquerras,	il acquerra ;
nous acquerrons,	vous acquerez,	ils acquerront.

COND. Pres.	J'acquerrais,	tu acquerrais,	il acquerrait ;
	nous acquerrions,	vous acquerriez,	ils acquerraient.
IMPER.		acquiers,	qu'il acquière ;
	acquérons,	acquérez,	qu'ils acquièrent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je j'acquière,	tu acquières,	il acquière ;
	nous acquérions,	vous acquériez,	ils acquièrent.
Imp.	Je j'acquisse,	tu acquisses,	il acquît ;
	nous acquissions,	vous acquissiez,	ils acquissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Conquérir, <i>to conquer,</i>	{ seldom used but in the infinitive, the preterite definite, the imperfect of the subjunctive, and the compound tenses.
Requérir, <i>to request,</i> <i>to require,</i>	{ chiefly used in law.
S'enquérir, <i>to inquire,</i>	{ seldom used but in the infinitive, and compound tenses.

Querir, to fetch, is used after the verbs *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer* ; as, *allez querir*, go and fetch ; *envoyez querir*, send for. It is confined to familiar conversation, and is getting obsolete.

ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT.

Part. Pres. assaillant.	Part. Past. assailli.
IND. Pres. J'assaille,	tu assailles, il assaille ;
	nous assaillons, vous assaillez, ils assaillent.
Imp. J'assillais,	tu assillais, il assillait ;
	nous assillions, vous assilliez, ils assillaient.
Pre. J'assillis,	tu assillis, il assillit ;
	nous assillîmes, vous assillîtes, ils assillirent.
Fut. J'assillirai,	tu assilliras, il assillira ;
	nous assillirons, vous assillirez, ils assilliront.
COND. Pres. J'assillirais,	tu assillirais, il assillirait ;
	nous assillirions, vous assilliriez, ils assilliraient.
IMPER.	assaille, qu'il assaille ;
	assaillons, assaillez, qu'ils assaillent.
SUBJ. Pres. Je j'assaille,	tu assailles, il assaille ;
	nous assillions, vous assilliez, ils assaillent.
Imp. Je j'assillisse,	tu assillisses, il assillît ;
	nous assillissions, vous assillissiez, ils assillissent.

(Acad.—Restaut.—Gattel.—Landais, etc.)

Conjugate in the same manner *tressaillir*, to start.— J. J. Rousseau, and other writers, have, for the sake of euphony, written in the present of the Indicative, *il tressaillit*, instead of *il tressaille*.

EXERCISE LXXI.

He had *acquired* great influence over his contemporaries.—
une — f. *sur* *contemporain* m.
 He *would acquire* honour and reputation.—
pr. art. *pr. art.*
 Alexander *conquered* a great part of Asia.—A *conquered*
ind-3 *partie* f. *art.*
 province. — We were *overtaken* by a furious storm. — At
—f. *ind-3* *assaillir* d' *tempête* f.
 every word they said to him about his son, the good
chaque *qu' on disait* * *de*
 (old man) *leaped* for joy.
vieillard *tressaillir* *ind-2* *de joie*.

BÉNIR, to bless, is conjugated like *finir* (see page 68).

It is only irregular in its past participle, which makes *bénit*, *bénite*; and *béni*, *bénie*.

Bénit, *bénite*, is used only in speaking of things consecrated by a religious ceremony; as, *du pain bénit*, consecrated bread; *de l'eau bénite*, holy water.

BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.

	Part. Pres. bouillant.	Part. Past. bouilli.
IND. Pres.	Je bous, nous bouillons,	tu bous, vous bouillez, il bout; ils bouillent.
Imp.	Je bouillais, nous bouillions,	tu bouillais, vous bouilliez, il bouillait; ils bouillaient.
Pret.	Je bouillis, nous bouillîmes,	tu bouillis, vous bouillîtes, il bouillit; ils bouillirent.
Fut.	Je bouillirai, nous bouillirons,	tu bouilliras, vous bouillirez, il bouillira; ils bouilliront.
COND. Pres.	Je bouillirais, nous bouillirions,	tu bouillirais, vous bouilliriez, il bouillirait; ils bouilliraient.
IMPER.	bouillons, bouillez,	bous, qu'il bouille; qu'ils bouillent.

SUBJ.	Pres. ^e je bouille,	tu bouilles,	il bouille ;
	○ nous bouillons,	vous bouilliez.	ils bouillent.
	Imp. ^e je bouillisse,	tu bouillisses.	il bouillît ;
	○ nous bouillissions,	vous bouillissiez,	ils bouillissent.

This verb is seldom used but in the third persons singular and plural ; as, *L'eau bout*, the water boils ; *ces choux ne bouillaient pas*, these cabbages did not boil. But if it be required to use it in all its persons as an active verb, as its corresponding to boil is in English, we then make use of the different tenses of the verb *faire* before the infinitive *bouillir* ; as, *Je fais bouillir*, nous faisons bouillir, etc. Therefore say, *Je fais bouillir de la viande*, I boil some meat, and not *je bous*.

Rebouillir, to boil again, is conjugated in the same manner, and follows the same rules.

Ébouillir, to boil away, is seldom used but in the infinitive, and past participle *ébouilli*.

COURIR, TO RUN.

	Part. Pres. courant.	Part. Past. couru.
IND.	Pres. Je cours,	tu cours, il court ;
	nous courons,	vous courez, ils courent.
	Imp. Je courais,	tu courais, il courait ;
	nous courions,	vous couriez, ils couraient.
	Pret. Je courus,	tu courus, il courut ;
	nous courûmes,	vous courûtes, ils coururent.
	Fut. Je courrai,	tu courras, il courra ;
	nous courrons,	vous courrez, ils courront.
COND.	Pres. Je courrais,	tu courrais, il courrait ;
	nous courrions,	vous courriez, ils courraient.
	IMPER.	cours, qu'il coure ;
	courons,	courez, qu'ils courent.
SUBJ.	Pres. ^e je coure,	tu coures, il coure ;
	○ nous courions,	vous couriez, ils courent.
	Imp. ^e je courusse,	tu courusses, il courût ;
	○ nous courussions,	vous courussiez, ils courussent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Accourir, to run to.	encourir, to incur.
concourir, to concur.	parcourir, to run over.
discourir, to discourse.	secourir, to succour.

EXERCISE LXXII.

God had *blessed* the race of Abraham.—Does the water
 — f. —
boil?—*Boil* that meat *again*, it is not (done enough).—You
viande f. *assez cuite*
run faster than I. — *Will* men always *run* after
plus vite *moi* art. pr. art.
 shadows? — Socrates passed the last day of his life in
chimère f. pl. *passer* à
discoursing on the immortality of the soul.—You *would incur*
 inf-1 *immortalité*
 the displeasure of the prince.—I have *run over* the whole
disgrâce f. —
 town to find him.
pour trouver

COUVRIR, to cover ; see Ouvrir.

CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

	Part. Pres. cueillant.		Part. Past. cueilli.
IND. Pres.	Je cueille, nous cueillons,	tu cueilles, vous cueillez,	il cueille ; ils cueillent.
Imp.	Je cueillais, nous cueillions,	tu cueillais, vous cueilliez,	il cueillait ; ils cueillaient.
Pret.	Je cueillis, nous cueillîmes,	tu cueillis, vous cueillîtes,	il cueillit ; ils cueillirent.
Fut.	Je cueillerai, nous cueillerons,	tu cueilleras, vous cueillerez,	il cueillera ; ils cueilleront.
COND. Pres.	Je cueillerais, nous cueillerions,	tu cueillerais, vous cueilleriez,	il cueillerait ; ils cueilleraient.
IMPER.		cueille, cueillez,	qu'il cueille ; qu'ils cueillent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^e Je cueille, nous cueillions,	tu cueilles, vous cueilliez,	il cueille ; ils cueillent.
Imp.	^e Je cueillisse, nous cueillissions,	tu cueillisses, vous cueillissiez,	il cueillît ; ils cueillissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Accueillir, to receive, to welcome. | recueillir, to collect.

DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

	<i>Part. Pres. dormant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. dormi.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je dors,	tu dors,	il dort ;
	nous dormons,	vous dormez,	ils dorment.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je dormais,	tu dormais,	il dormait ;
	nous dormions,	vous dormiez,	ils dormaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je dormis,	tu dormis,	il dormit ;
	nous dormîmes,	vous dormîtes,	ils dormirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je dormirai,	tu dormiras,	il dormira ;
	nous dormirons,	vous dormirez,	ils dormiront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je dormirais,	tu dormirais,	il dormirait ;
	nous dormirions,	vous dormiriez,	ils dormiraient.
IMPER.		dors,	qu'il dorme ;
	dormons,	dormez,	qu'ils dorment.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	que je dorme,	tu dormes,	il dorme ;
	que nous dormions,	vous dormiez,	ils dorment.
<i>Imp.</i>	que je dormisse,	tu dormisses,	il dormît ;
	que nous dormissions,	vous dormissiez,	ils dormissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Endormir, *to lull asleep.*
s'endormir, *to fall asleep.*

se rendormir, *to fall asleep again.*

FAILLIR, to fail. This verb is used only in the present of the Infinitive ; in the Participle past *failli* ; in the Preterite definite, *je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit ; nous faillîmes, vous faillîtes, ils faillirent* ; and in the compound tenses, *j'ai failli, j'avais failli*, etc.

Its derivative *défaillir*, to faint, to fail, is scarcely ever used but in the first and third persons plural of the present of the Indicative, *nous défailions, ils défont* ; in the Imperfect, *je défaillais*, etc. ; in the Preterite definite, *je défaillis*, etc. ; in the Preterite indefinite, *j'ai défailli*, etc. ; and in the Infinitive, *défaillir*.

FLEURIR, to blossom, in its *literal* sense, is regular ; but used *figuratively*, meaning to be in a prosperous state, to flourish, to be in repute, honour, or esteem, it makes *florissant* in the present Participle, and *florissait, florissaient*, in the Imperfect of the Indicative.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

I will gather you some flowers.—We *shall collect* in
fleur f. *dans art.*
 ancient history, important and valuable facts.—The
² ¹ ^{pr. art.} ² — ³ *précieux* ¹ *fait m.*
 hare generally sleeps with its eyes open.—That
lièvre m. *ordinairement* ¹ ** art.* *ouvert*
 song lulls one asleep.—I fell asleep about three o'clock.—He
^{*} ^{ind-4} *vers art.*
 (was near) losing his life.—His strength *fails*
faillir ind-3 *perdre * art.* *force f. pl.* *défaillir*
 (every day).—Athens flourished under Pericles.
tous les jours Athènes *sous Périclès*

FUIR, TO FLY, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN.

*Part. Pres. fuyant.**Part. Past. fui.*

IND. Pres.	Je fuis,	tu fuis,	il fuit ;
	nous fuyons,	vous fuyez,	ils fuient.
Imp.	Je fuyais,	tu fuyais,	il fuyait ;
	nous fuyions,	vous fuyiez,	ils fuyaient.
Pret.	Je fus,	tu fus,	il fut ;
	nous fûmes,	vous fûtes,	ils fuirent.
Fut.	Je fuirai,	tu fuiras,	il fuira ;
	nous fuirons,	vous fuirez,	ils fuiront.
COND. Pres.	Je fuirais,	tu fuirais,	il fuirait ;
	nous fuirions,	vous fuiriez,	ils fuiraient.
IMPER.		fuis,	qu'il fuie ;
	fuyons,	fuyez,	qu'ils fuient.
SUBJ. Pres.	que je fuie,	tu fuies,	il fuie ;
	que nous fuyions,	vous fuyiez,	ils fuient.
Imp.	que je fusse,	tu fusses,	il fût ;
	que nous fuissions,	vous fussiez,	ils fussent.

(Acad.—Wailly.—Restaut, etc.)

Conjugate after the same manner, *s'enfuir*, to run away. In the Imperative we say, *enfuis-toi*, and not *enfuis-t'en*, nor *fuis-t'en*.

GÉSIR, to lie, to lie down, is obsolete. We, however, still say, *Il gît, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent. Je gisais,*

tu gisais, il gisait; nous gisions, vous gisiez, ils gisaient.
Gisant.—(ACAD.)

Ci-gît (here lies) is the usual form by which an epitaph is begun.

HAÏR, TO HATE.

	<i>Part. Pres. haïssant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. haï.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je hais, nous haïssons,	tu hais, il hait; vous haïssez, ils haïssent.
Imp.	Je haïssais, nous haïssions,	tu haïssais, il haïssait; vous haïssiez, ils haïssaient.
Pret.	Je haïs, nous haïmes,	tu haïs, il haît; vous haïtes, ils haïrent.
Fut.	Je haïrai, nous haïrons,	tu haïras, il haïra; vous haïrez, ils haïront.
COND. Pres.	Je haïrais, nous haïrions,	tu haïrais, il haïrait; vous haïriez, ils haïraient.
IMPER.	haïssons,	hais, qu'il haïsse; haïssez, qu'ils haïssent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je haïsse, nous haïssions,	tu haïsses, il haïsse; vous haïssiez, ils haïssent.
Imp.	Je haïsse, nous haïssions,	tu haïsses, il haît; vous haïssiez, ils haïssent.

(*Wailly.*—*Restart.*—*Demandre*, etc.)

REMARKS.—The *h* is aspirated in this verb, and a diæresis (·) is placed over the *i*, throughout all the tenses, to show that it is to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel *a*; as, *ha-ï*; except, however, the three first persons singular of the present of the Indicative, and the second person singular of the Imperative, which, forming only one syllable, are written without the diæresis, thus: *Je hais, tu hais, il hait; haïs*, and pronounced—*Je hê, tu hê, il hê; hê*.

This verb, as it is observed by *Restart* and *Wailly*, is seldom used in the second person singular of the Imperative, the Preterite definite, or the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, and in these two last tenses, instead of making use of the circumflex accent: *nous haïmes, vous*

haïtes; qu'il haït, we use the diæresis, *nous haïmes, vous haïtes; qu'il haït*.

MENTIR, to lie, to utter falsehood, is conjugated like *sentir*.

MOURIR, TO DIE.

<i>Part. Pres. mourant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. mort.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je meurs,	tu meurs,	il meurt ;
	nous mourons,	vous mourez,	ils meurent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mourais,	tu mourais,	il mourait ;
	nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils mouraient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mourus,	tu mourus,	il mourut ;
	nous mourûmes,	vous mourûtes,	ils moururent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mourrai,	tu mourras,	il mourra ;
	nous mourrons,	vous mourrez,	ils mourront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mourrais,	tu mourrais,	il mourrait ;
	nous mourrions,	vous mourriez,	ils mourraient.
IMPER.	meurs,	meurs,	qu'il meure ;
	mourez,	mourez,	qu'ils meurent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	^{je} je meure,	tu meures,	il meure ;
	^{vous} nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils meurent.
<i>Imp.</i>	^{je} je mourusse,	tu mourusses,	il mourût ;
	^{vous} nous mourus- sions,	vous mourus- siez,	ils mourussent.

Mourir is conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in its compound tenses.—The double *r* of the Future and Conditional must be sounded strongly.

When this verb takes the reflected form, *se mourir*, it means *to be at the point of death*; but, in this sense, it is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the Indicative.—(ACAD.)

OUIR, to hear. (Active and defective verb.)

Part. past. ouï. IND. *pret.* j'ouïs, tu ouïs, etc. SUBJ. *imperf.* que j'ouïsse, que tu ouïsses, qu'il ouît, etc.

The principal use of this verb is in the *compound tenses*, and then it is generally followed by another verb in the infinitive; as,

Je l'ai ouï prêcher.—(ACAD.)
Je l'avais ouï dire.

I have heard him preach.
I had heard it said.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

(Let us make haste), time *flies*.—I cannot meet him,
Hâtons-nous art. *ne puis rencontrer*
 he *shuns* me.—I *hate* falsehood. — *Let us hate* vice.—
 art. *mensonge* m. art. — m.
 He *died* some time after. — John Calvin, the celebrated
célèbre
 reformer, *died* at Geneva, on the 27th May, 1564.—
réformateur
 The envious *will die*, but *envy never*. — He
envieux m. pl. *non* art. *2* *1*
is dying.—All the witnesses have been *heard*.
se mourir *témoin* m.

OUVIRIR, TO OPEN.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> ouvrant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> ouvert.
IND. <i>Pres.</i> J'ouvre,	tu ouvres, il ouvre ;
nous ouvrons,	vous ouvrez, ils ouvrent.
<i>Imp.</i> J'ouvrirai,	tu ouvriras, il ouvrira ;
nous ouvrirons,	vous ouvrirez, ils ouvriraient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'ouvris,	tu ouvris, il ouvrit ;
nous ouvrîmes,	vous ouvrîtes, ils ouvrirent.
<i>Fut.</i> J'ouvrirai,	tu ouvriras, il ouvrira ;
nous ouvrirons,	vous ouvrirez, ils ouvriront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i> J'ouvrirais,	tu ouvrirais, il ouvrirait ;
nous ouvririons,	vous ouvririez, ils ouvriraient.
IMPER.	ouvrez, qu'il ouvre ;
ouvrons, qu'ils ouvrent.	
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ j'ouvre,	tu ouvres, il ouvre ;
$\frac{e}{e}$ nous ouvrons,	vous ouvriez, ils ouvrent.
<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ j'ouvrissse,	tu ouvriesses, il ouvrit ;
$\frac{e}{e}$ nous ouvriss- vous ouvriessiez, ils ouvrissent.	
$\frac{e}{e}$ sions,	

Conjugate in the same manner :

Couvrir, to cover.	recouvrir, to cover again.
découvrir, to discover. to uncover.	rouvrir, to open again.
offrir, to offer.	souffrir, to suffer.

PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> partant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> parti.
IND. <i>Pres.</i> Je pars,	tu pars, il part ;
nous partons,	vous partez, ils partent.

<i>Imp.</i>	Je partais,	tu partais,	il partait ;
	nous partions,	vous partiez,	ils partaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je partis,	tu partis,	il partit ;
	nous partîmes,	vous partîtes,	ils partirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je partirai,	tu partiras,	il partira ;
	nous partirons,	vous partirez,	ils partiront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je partirais,	tu partirais,	il partirait ;
	nous partirions,	vous partiriez,	ils partiraient.
IMPER.		pars,	qu'il parte ;
	partons,	partez,	qu'ils partent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	que je parte,	tu partes,	il parte ;
	que nous partions,	vous partiez,	ils partent.
<i>Imp.</i>	que je partisse,	tu partiasses,	il partît ;
	que nous partissions,	vous partiassiez,	ils partissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *repartir*, to go back, to set off again, to reply.

Répartir (with an accent ever the *é*), to divide, to distribute, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

EXERCISE LXXV.

Open this press.—Harvey discovered the circulation of the
armoire f. — f.

blood.—I offer you my services with all my heart.—The
sang m. — de cœur m.

house has not been covered again, since the roof
maison f. depuis que toit m.

was burnt down.—That effort opened his wound again.—
ind-4 brûlé * — m. plaie f.

He suffers more than you think.—We set out to-morrow for
plus que ne pensez demain

the country. — He will set out in three days. — That
campagne f. dans

coach starts every day at (twelve o'clock).
voiture f. tous les jours midi.

SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> sentant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> senti.
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je sens,	tu sens,
	nous sentons,	vous sentez,
		ils sentent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je sentais,	tu sentais,
	nous sentions,	vous sentiez,
		ils sentaient.

	<i>Pret.</i> Je sentis,	tu sentis,	il sentit ;
	nous sentîmes,	vous sentîtes,	ils sentirent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je sentirai,	tu sentiras,	il sentira ;
	nous sentirons,	vous sentirez,	ils sentiront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je sentirais,	tu sentirais,	il sentirait ;
	nous sentirions,	vous sentiriez,	ils sentiraient.
IMPER.		sens,	qu'il sente ;
	sentons,	sentez,	qu'ils sentent.
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je sente,	tu sentes,	il sente ;
	$\frac{o}{o}$ nous sentions,	vous sentiez,	ils sentent.
	<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je sentisse,	tu sentisses,	il sentît ;
	$\frac{o}{o}$ nous sentissions,	vous sentissiez,	ils sentissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Consentir, to consent.	ressentir, to resent.
mentir, to lie.	se repentir, to repent.
pressentir, to foresee.	etc. etc.

SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> servant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> servi.
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je sers,	tu sers, il sert ;
	nous servons,	vous servez, ils servent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je servais,	tu servais, il servait ;
	nous servions,	vous serviez, ils servaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je servis,	tu servis, il servit ;
	nous servîmes,	vous servîtes, ils servirent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je servirai,	tu serviras, il servira ;
	nous servirons,	vous servirez, ils serviront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je servirais,	tu servirais, il servirait ;
	nous servirions,	vous serviriez, ils serviraient.
IMPER.		sers, qu'il serve ;
	servons,	servez, qu'ils servent.
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je serve,	tu serves, il serve ;
	$\frac{o}{o}$ nous servions,	vous serviez, ils servent.
	<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je servisse,	tu servisses, il servît ;
	$\frac{o}{o}$ nous servissions,	vous servissiez, ils servissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *desservir*, to clear the table.

Asservir, to enslave, to subject, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

I *feel* for him an unsurmountable aversion.—You *will feel*
²*insurmountable* ¹— f.
 the effects of it.—*Smell* this rose.—*Shall* we consent to
^{effet} m. — f.
 that bargain?—Never (*tell a falsehood*).—I *foresaw* all those
^{marché} m. ^{mentir}
 misfortunes.—He *repents* of his bad conduct.—He *serves*
^{malheur} m. ^{mauvais conduite} f.
 his friends with warmth.—*Help* the gentleman to some
^{chaleur} f. ^à * ^{monsieur} ¹
 partridge.—*Shall* I have the honour to *help* you to a wing of
^{perdre} f. ^{de} ^{aile} f.
 a chicken?—*Clear the table*.

*

SORTIR, TO GO OUT, TO COME OUT.

	<i>Part. Pres. sortant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. sorti.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je sors, nous sortons,	tu sors, vous sortez,
		il sort ; ils sortent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je sortais, nous sortions,	tu sortais, vous sortiez,
		il sortait ; ils sortaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je sortis, nous sortîmes,	tu sortis, vous sortîtes,
		il sortit ; ils sortirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je sortirai, nous sortirons,	tu sortiras, vous sortirez,
		il sortira ; ils sortiront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je sortirais, nous sortirions,	tu sortirais, vous sortiriez,
		il sortirait ; ils sortiraient.
IMPER.		sors, sortez,
	sortons,	qu'il sorte ; qu'ils sortent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	^{je} je sorte, ^{nous} nous sortions,	tu sortes, vous sortiez,
		il sorte ; ils sortent.
<i>Imp.</i>	^{je} je sortisse, ^{nous} nous sortissions,	tu sortisses, vous sortissiez,
		il sortît ; ils sortissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *ressortir*, to go out again.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

I go out every morning before breakfast. — The
tout art. matin m. pl. avant
fox comes out of his hole. — We went out of the town
renard m. terrier m.
after him. — (Every body) is gone out. — I shall go out in half
après Tout le monde
an hour. — If I were as ill as you, I would not go out. —
malade
Do not go out to-day. — He (is just) gone out. — He went
aujourd'hui vient de inf-1
out again immediately. — I will not go out again this evening.
sur-le-champ soir m.

TENIR, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

	<i>Part. Pres. tenant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. tenu.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je tiens, nous tenons,	tu tiens, vous tenez,	il tient ; ils tiennent.
Imp.	Je tenais, nous tenions,	tu tenais, vous teniez,	il tenait ; ils tenaient.
Pret.	Je tins, nous tîmes,	tu tins, vous tîntes,	il tint ; ils tinrent.
Fut.	Je tiendrai, nous tiendrons,	tu tiendras, vous tiendrez,	il tiendra ; ils tiendront.
COND. Pres.	Je tiendrais, nous tiendrions,	tu tiendrais, vous tiendriez,	il tiendrait ; ils tiendraient.
IMPER.		tiens, tenez,	qu'il tienne ; qu'ils tiennent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je tiennne, nous tenions,	tu tiennes, vous teniez,	il tiennne ; ils tiennent.
Imp.	Je tinsse, nous tinssions,	tu tinsses, vous tinssiez,	il tint ; ils tinssent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

S'abstenir, <i>to abstain.</i>	maintenir, <i>to maintain.</i>
appartenir, <i>to belong.</i>	obtenir, <i>to obtain. [retain.</i>
contenir, <i>to contain.</i>	retenir, <i>to get hold again ; to</i>
entretenir, <i>to keep up ; to converse.</i>	soutenir, <i>to sustain.</i>

Observe that in these verbs the *n* is doubled, whenever it is followed by *e* mute ; but in no other case.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

I hold it fast, it shall not escape from me.—Liberality holds
bien échapper * art.
 a medium between prodigality and avarice.—This
le milieu m. entre art. art. — f.
 garden is well kept.—He abstained from drinking on that day.
*boire * ce jour-là*
 These horses belong to our general. — England and the
 art.
 principality of Wales contain fifty-two counties.—They
principauté f. Galles comté m. s'
 conversed about trifles.—I shall maintain it everywhere.—
de bagatelles partout
 Do not maintain so absurd an opinion.—Has he obtained
si absurde f.
 permission?—Detain not the wages of a servant.—That
—f. retenir gages m. pl. domestique m.
 column supports all the building.
colonne f. soutenir bâtiment m.

VENIR, TO COME.

	<i>Part. Pres. venant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. venu.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je viens, nous venons,	tu viens, vous venez, ils viennent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je venais, nous venions,	tu venais, vous veniez, ils venaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je vins, nous vîmes,	tu vins, vous vîtes, ils vinrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je viendrai, nous viendrons,	tu viendras, vous viendrez, ils viendront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je viendrais, nous viendrions,	tu viendrais, vous viendriez, ils viendraient.
IMPER.	venons,	viens, venez, qu'il vienne ; qu'ils viennent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	je vienne, nous venions,	tu viennes, vous veniez, ils viennent.
<i>Imp.</i>	je vinsse, nous vinssions,	tu vinsses, vous vinssiez, ils vinssent.

Venir is conjugated like *tenir*, but with this difference,

that in its compound tenses it always takes the auxiliary *être*.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Convenir, <i>to agree ; to suit.</i>	prévenir, <i>to anticipate ; to pre-</i>
devenir, <i>to become.</i>	se ressouvenir, <i>to recollect. [vent.</i>
disconvenir, <i>to deny. [terfere.</i>	revenir, <i>to come back.</i>
intervenir, <i>to intervene ; to in-</i>	se souvenir, <i>to remember.</i>
parvenir, <i>to attain.</i>	subvenir, <i>to relieve.</i>

Prévenir and *subvenir* are conjugated in their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir* — *Convenir*, when it signifies *to agree*, takes *être* ; but *avoir*, when it signifies *to suit*.

VÊTIR, TO CLOTHE

	<i>Part. Pres. vêtant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. vêtu.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je vêts, nous vêtons,	tu vêts, vous vêtez,	il vêt ; ils vêtent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je vêtais, nous vêtions,	tu vétais, vous vétiez,	il vêtait ; ils vêtaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je vêtis, nous vêtîmes,	tu vêtis, vous vêtîtes,	il vêtit ; ils vêtirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je vêtirai, nous vêtirons,	tu vêtiras, vous vêtirez,	il vêtira ; ils vêtiront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je vêtirais, nous vêtirions,	tu vêtirais, vous vêtiriez,	il vêtirait ; ils vêtiraient.
IMPER.	vêtons, vêtez,	vêts, vêtez,	qu'il vête ; qu'ils vêtent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Je vête, nous vêtions,	tu vêtes, vous vétiez,	il vête ; ils vêtent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je vêtisse, nous vêtissions,	tu vêtisses, vous vêtissiez,	il vêtît ; ils vêtissent.

(Acad.—Trévoux.—Gattel.—Lemare, etc.)

Vêtir is seldom used in the singular of the Present of the Indicative, or in the singular of the Imperative. It is most frequently reflected, and then it signifies *to dress oneself*. In this sense it is conjugated in its compound tenses, like all other pronominal verbs, with the auxiliary *être* : *Je me SUIS vêtu ; nous nous SOMMES vêtus*.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Dévéti*r*, to divest, to strip. | Revêti*r*, to clothe, to invest.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

I come from London.— You come very seasonably.—He
fort à propos
 came on foot.—Come on Saturday morning, at ten o'clock.—He
 ind-4 à pied *
 will come back before the end of this month.—We have agreed
fin f. mois m.
 about the conditions.—That she might become more prudent. —
de — f. —
 Do you deny the fact?—He will not interfere with that
de fait m. dans
 affair. — We shall attain our end. — Remember your
affaire f. à but m. de
 promises. — They have relieved his wants. — He only
promesse f. On à besoin m. ne
 passed for a traveller, but lately he has assumed the
 ind-2 que voyageur depuis peu revêti*r* un
 character of an envoy.
*caractère m. * envoyé m.*

§ III. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, to set, is an active verb; but it is principally used as a reflected verb, and is conjugated as follows :—

S'ASSEOIR, TO SEAT ONESELF, TO SIT DOWN.

Part. Pres. s'asseyant.

Part. Past. assis.

IND.

Pres. Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied ;
 nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.

Imp. Je m'asseyais, tu t'asseyais, il s'asseyait ;
 nous nous asseyions, vous vous asseyiez, ils s'asseyaient.

<i>Prët.</i> Je m'assis,	tu t'assis,	il s'assit ;
nous nous assimes,	vous vous assîtes,	ils s'assirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je m'assiérai,	tu t'assiéras,	il s'assiéra ;
or je m'asseierai,	tu t'asseieras,	il s'asseiera ;
nous nous assiérons,	vous vous assiérez,	ils s'assiéront ;
or nous nous asseierons,	vous vous asseierez,	ils s'asseieront.

COND. Pres.

Je m'assiérais,	tu t'assiérais,	il s'assiérait ;
or je m'asseierais,	tu t'asseierais,	il s'asseierait ;
nous nous assiérions,	vous vous assiériez,	ils s'assiéraient ;
or nous nous asseierions,	vous vous asseierez,	ils s'asseieraient.

IMPER.

assieds-toi,	qu'il s'asseie ;
asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous,	qu'ils s'asseient.

SUBJ. Je m'asseie,	tu t'asseies,	il s'asseie ;
<i>Pres.</i> Nous nous asseyions,	vous vous asseyiez,	ils s'asseient.
<i>Imp.</i> Je m'assisse,	tu t'assisses,	il s'assît ;
Nous nous assissions,	vous vous assissiez,	ils s'assissent.

There is no verb which has experienced so many variations in its conjugation ; but the greater number of modern Grammarians, and present usage, have decided that it should be conjugated in the manner we have given it.

Conjugate in the same manner, *rasseoir*, to set again, to sit down again, to calm.

AVOIR, to have. (Active and auxiliary verb.)

This is one of the most irregular verbs ; it is conjugated at length, page 55.

CHOIR, to fall. This verb is not much used ; it is sometimes employed in the Infinitive, especially in poetry, where it is a very expressive term, when well brought in.

The Participle past, *chu*, *chue*, is also used, but rather in verse than in prose, and rather in the jocular and familiar than in the serious and dignified style.

(*Acad.*—*Féraud.*—*Demandre.*—*Wailly*, etc.)

DÉCHOIR, to decay. Participle past, *déchu*. It is seldom used in any other tense.

ÉCHOIR, to fall to ; to expire, to be due. Part. pres. *échéant*. Part. past, *échu*. In the present of the Indicative, it is seldom used except in the 3rd person singular, *il échoit*, which is sometimes pronounced, and even written, *il échet*. Pret. *j'échus*. Fut. *j'écherrai*. Cond. *j'écherais*. Imperf. Subj. *que j'échusse*.—(ACAD.)

Many Grammarians are of opinion that the auxiliary *être* should always be used with the Participle past of this verb. They say : *Ce billet est échu* (that bill is due), and not *a échu*. The following phrases, however, appear to us quite correct :—*Ce billet a échu le 30 du mois dernier. Il y a un mois qu'il est échu.*—(GIRAULT-DUVIVIER.)

FALLOIR, *to be necessary*, is a unipersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given, page 97.

EXERCISE LXXX.

Set the child in an arm-chair. — Why do you not sit down ?—He sat down under the shade of a tree. — Shall we sit down here ?—Let us sit down, my friends.—Sit down on this form.—I (had risen) to go out, but he made me sit down again.—He is much fallen in the esteem of the public.—This bill of exchange is due to-day.
fauteuil m. Pourquoi
à ombre f. arbre m.
sur banc m. m'étais levé pour ²*fit* ¹
fort déchoir *estime f.*
— m. lettre f. change aujourd'hui.

MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

	<i>Part. Pres. mouvant.</i>		<i>Part. Part. mù.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je meus,	tu meus,	il meut ;
	nous mouvons,	vous mouvez,	ils meuvent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mouvais,	tu mouvais,	il mouvait ;
	nous mouvions,	vous moviez,	ils mouvaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mus,	tu mus,	il mut ;
	nous mûmes,	vous mûtes,	ils murent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mouvrai,	tu movras,	il mouvra ;
	nous mouvrons,	vous mouvrez,	ils mouvront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mouvrais,	tu mouvrais,	il mouvrait ;
	nous mouvriions,	vous mouvriez,	ils mouvraient.
IMPER.		meus,	qu'il meuve ;
	mouvons,	mouvez,	qu'ils meuvent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	^{je} je meuve,	tu meuves,	il meuve ;
	^{on} nous mouvions,	vous moviez,	ils meuvent.
<i>Imp.</i>	^{ne} je musse,	tu musses,	il mût ;
	^{on} nous mussions,	vous mussiez,	ils mussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *émouvoir*, to stir up, to move; and, *promouvoir*, to promote. * This last verb is seldom used but in the Infinitive, and in the compound tenses.

PLEUVOIR, to rain; see page 95.

POURVOIR, TO PROVIDE.

	<i>Part. Pres. pourvoyant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. pourvu.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je pourvois, tu pourvois, nous pourvoyons, vous pourvoyez,	il pourvoit; ils pourvoient.
Imp.	Je pourvoyais, tu pourvoyais, nous pourvoyions, vous pourvoyiez,	il pourvoyait; ils pourvoyaient.
Pret.	Je pourvus, tu pourvus, nous pourvûmes, vous pourvûtes,	il pourvut; ils pourvurent.
Fut.	Je pourvoirai, tu pourvoiras, nous pourvoirons, vous pourvoirez,	il pourvra; ils pourvront.
COND. Pres.	Je pourvoirais, tu pourvoirais, nous pourvoirions, vous pourvoiriez,	il pourvoirait; ils pourvoiraient.
IMPER.		pourvois, qu'il pourvoie. pourvoyons, pourvoyez, qu'ils pourvoient.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je pourvoie, tu pourvoies, nous pourvoyions, vous pourvoyiez,	il pourvoie; ils pourvoient.
Imp.	Je pourvusse, tu pourvusses, nous pourvus-sions, vous pourvus-siez,	il pourvût; ils pourvus-sent.

(Acad. and the modern Grammarians.)

POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE. (To can.—Johnson and Walker.)

	<i>Part. Pres. pouvant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. pu.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je puis, or je peux, tu peux, nous pouvons, vous pouvez,	il peut, ils peuvent.
Imp.	Je pouvais, tu pouvais, nous pouvions, vous pouviez,	il pouvait; ils pouvaient.
Pret.	Je pus, tu pus, nous pûmes, vous pûtes,	il put; ils purent.
Fut.	Je pourrai, tu pourras, nous pourrons, vous pourrez,	il pourra; ils pourront.
COND. Pres.	Je pourrais, tu pourrais, nous pourrions, vous pourriez,	il pourrait; ils pourraient.

(No Imperative.)

SUBJ. Pres.	^{ne} je puisse,	tu puisses,	il puisse ;
	¶ nous puissions,	vous puissiez,	ils puissent.
Imp.	^{ne} je pusse,	tu pusses,	il pût ;
	¶ nous pussions,	vous pussiez,	ils pussent.

(Acad. and the modern Grammarians.)

REMARKS.—In the Future and Conditional of this verb, one *r* only is pronounced, although they are written with two.

In the Present of the Indicative, we say *je puis* or *je peux*; however, *je puis* is much more used, and ought to be preferred, since interrogatively we always say *puis je*.

Quels vœux *puis-je* former ?—(*La Harpe*.)Que *puis-je* ajouter à cet éloge ?—(*C. Delavigne*.)

Moreover, *je puis*, and not *je peux*, is the expression employed in the writings of the best French authors.

. . . Enfin *je puis* parler en liberté ;*Je puis* dans tout son jour mettre la vérité.—(*Racine*.)Je ne *puis* bien parler, et ne saurais me taire.—(*Boileau*.). . . Je ne *puis* songerQue cette horloge existe, et n'ait point d'horloger.—(*Voltaire*.)*Je puis* être un serviteur inutile.—(*Massillon*.)

We say: *je ne puis*, and *je ne puis pas*. In the first phrase, the negative is less strong: *Je ne puis* implies difficulties. *Je ne puis pas* expresses impossibility.

PRÉVALOIR, to prevail ; see *Valoir*.PROMOUVOIR, to promote ; see *Mouvoir*.

RAVOIR, to have again, to get again, is only used in the Present of the Infinitive.

Figuratively, and familiarly, we say *se ravoir*, in the sense of to recover, to gather new strength :

Allons, monsieur, tâchez un peu de vous *ravoir*.—(*J. J. Rousseau*.)

EXERCISE LXXXI.

The spring which moves the whole machine is very ingenious.—He moved the heart of that unfeeling man.—He has been promoted to the dignity of chancellor.—He will provide

ressort m. mouvoir — f.

émouvoir cœur m. ²insensible ¹

chancelier.

for all your wants.—I *cannot* answer you.—*Can* I be useful
 à *besoin* m. *utile*
 to you?—(Save himself) who *can*.—*Can* you lend me an
Sauve *prêter*
 umbrella?—I *could* not foresee that event. — I never
 ind-2 *prévoir* *événement* m.
 shall be able to persuade him.—We *would* be able to go out.—
 * *persuader* *

Try to get it again.
Tâcher de

SAVOIR, TO KNOW

	Part. Pres. sachant.		Part. Past. su.
IND. Pres.	Je sais,	tu sais,	il sait ;
	nous savons,	vous savez,	ils savent.
Imp.	Je savais,	tu savais,	il savait ;
	nous savions,	vous saviez,	ils savaient.
Pres.	Je sus,	tu sus,	il sut ;
	nous sûmes,	vous sûtes,	ils surent.
Fut.	Je saurai,	tu sauras,	il saura ;
	nous saurons,	vous saurez,	ils sauront.
COND. Pres.	Je saurais,	tu saurais,	il saurait ;
	nous saurions,	vous sauriez,	ils sauraient.
IMPER.		sache,	qu'il sache ;
	sachons,	sachez,	qu'ils sachent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je sache,	tu saches,	il sache ;
	Nous sachions,	vous sachiez,	ils sachent.
Imp.	Je susse,	tu susses,	il sût ;
	Nous sussions,	vous sussiez,	ils sussent.

We find *savoir* written *scavoir* in some old and esteemed works ; but now, the *French Academy*, and all the modern Grammarians, suppress the letter *ç* as useless, because it does not affect the pronunciation of the word, nor does it even serve to point out its Latin derivation, since all the best French etymologists derive *savoir* from *sapere*, and not from *scire*.

We sometimes employ the Subjunctive of *savoir* instead of the Indicative, but never without a negative ; as, *JE NE SACHE rien de plus digne d'éloge*, I know nothing more praiseworthy.

Je ne saurais is often used for *je ne puis* (I cannot) ; yet we do not say, *je ne saurais* for *je ne pourrais*, nor *je saurais* for *je puis*.

The student must not confound *savoir* with *connaître*, which also signifies *to know*. We do not say *savoir quelqu'un*, but *connaître quelqu'un*, to know, or be acquainted with some one.

Savoir is employed in speaking of everything that can be learned : *Savoir les langues, les mathématiques, les nouvelles du jour, les secrets d'un ami*, to know languages, mathematics, the news of the day, the secrets of a friend. —(*Demandre.*)

Savoir is to know by the mind ; while *connaître* is to know by the senses.—(*The Linguist.*)

SEOIR, *to become, to befit*, is never used in the present of the Infinitive. It has only the participle present *seyant*, and the third persons of some of the simple tenses : *il sied, ils sièent ; il seyait, ils seyaient ; il siéra, ils sièront ; il sièrait, ils sièraient ; qu'il siée, qu'ils sièent*.

When *seoir* signifies *to sit*, it has only the two Participles, *séant* and *sis*, which last is used in law as an adjective, and generally translated into English by *situate* or *situated*.

SURSEOIR, *to suspend, to put off ; see Voir.*

EXERCISE LXXXII.

I know that he is not your friend, but I know likewise that
 he is a man of probity. — The wise man knows how to regulate
 his taste, his labours, and his pleasures. — Do you know
 French ? — They do not know their lessons. — Milton knew
 Homer almost by heart. — I shall know well how to
 (defend myself). — (In order) that you may know it. — The
 head-dress which that lady wore became her very well. —
 Colours that are too gaudy will not become you.

de pl. aussi
** bien sage * * régler*
goût pl. travail art.
leçon —
*Homère presque cœur * **
me défendre Afin
coiffure f. que porter ind-2 ind-2 lui
*art. couleur f. * * voyant*

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

	<i>Part. Pres. valant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. valu.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je vaux, nous valons,	tu vaux, vous valez,	il vant ; ils valent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je valais, nous valions,	tu valais, vous valiez,	il valait ; ils valaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je valus, nous valûmes,	tu valus, vous valûtes,	il valut ; ils valurent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je vaudrai, nous vaudrons,	tu vaudras, vous vaudrez,	il vaudra ; ils vaudront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je vaudrais, nous vaudrions,	tu vaudrais, vous vaudriez,	il vaudrait ; ils vaudraient.
IMPER.		vaux, valez,	qu'il vaille ; qu'ils valent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	$\frac{2}{0}$ je vaille, nous valions,	tu vailles, vous valiez,	il vaille ; ils valent.
<i>Imp.</i>	$\frac{2}{0}$ je valusse, nous valussions,	tu valusses, vous valussiez,	il valût ; ils valussent.

In the compound tenses, *valoir* takes the auxiliary *avoir*.

Conjugate in the same manner :

équivaloir, to be equivalent. | *revaloir*, to return like for like.

Prévaloir, to prevail, follows the same conjugation, except that in the Subj. Pres. it makes, *que je prévale*, *que tu prévaies*, *qu'il prévale* ; *que nous prévalions*, *que vous prévaliez*, *qu'ils prévalent* ; and not, *que je prévaillai*, *que tu prévaillais*, etc.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

This cloth is worth twenty shillings a yard.— Actions
drap m. *schelling l' aune* art. effet m.
 are better than words.—His horse was not worth ten
valoir art. parole f.
 guineas.—That victory procured him the staff of a marshal
guinée victoire f. *valoir lui bâton m.* *maréchal*
 of France.—One ounce of gold is equivalent to fifteen ounces
 once f. or
 of silver.—That answer will be equivalent to a refusal.—
argent réponse f. refus m.

Favour often *prevails* over merit. — His advice
 art. ² *sur* art. ¹ *mérite* m. *avis* m.
prevailed. — That consideration has *prevailed* over all
consideration f. art.
 others.

VOIR, TO SEE.

	Part. Pres. voyant.		Part. Past. vu.
IND. Pres.	Je vois,	tu vois,	il voit ;
	nous voyons,	vous voyez,	ils voient.
Imp.	Je voyais,	tu voyais,	il voyait ;
	nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voyaient.
Pret.	Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
	nous vîmes,	vous vîtes,	ils virent.
Fut.	Je verrai,	tu verras,	il verra ;
	nous verrons,	vous verrez,	ils verront.
COND. Pres.	Je verrais,	tu verrais,	il verrait ;
	nous verrions,	vous verriez,	ils verraient.
IMPER.		vois,	qu'il voie ;
	voyons,	voyez,	qu'ils voient.
SUBJ. Pres.	^g je voie,	tu voies,	il voie ;
	^g nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voient.
Imp.	^g je visse,	tu visses,	il vît ;
	^g nous vissions,	vous vissiez,	ils vissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

entrevoir, to have a glimpse of ; revoir, to see again ; and, prévoir, to foresee. Observe, however, that this last verb makes in the Future, *je prévoirai*, *tu prévoiras*, etc., and in the Conditional, *je prévoirais*, etc.

Many poets, ancient and modern, for the sake of rhyme, write without *s*, *je voi*, *j'aperçoi*, *je prévoi*, etc.

Surseoir, to put off (a law term), though a compound of *seoir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except in the Fut. *je surseoirai*, and in the Cond. *je surseoirais*.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

I see it now. — I saw it with my own eyes. — That
maintenant ind-4 *de propre*
 reform (will take place), but we shall not see it. — You shall
réforme f. *aura lieu*

see what I can do. — *Let us see your purchases.* — See the
ce que *sais faire* *emplette f.*
 admirable order of the universe : does it not announce a
² — ¹ *ordre m.* *univers m.* *annoncer*
 supreme architect ? — When shall we see your sisters again ?
Quand
 — To finish their affairs, it would be necessary that they
Pour *affaire f.* *falloir*
 should see each other. — Wise men foresee events. —
s'entrevoir subj-2 art. ² ¹ *art.*
 I shall not put off the pursuit of that affair.
poursuite f. pl.

VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING ; TO WISH.

	<i>Part. Pres. voulant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. voulu.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je veux, nous voulons,	tu veux, il veut ; vous voulez, ils veulent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je voulais, nous voulions,	tu voulais, il voulait ; vous vouliez, ils voulaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je voulus, nous voulûmes,	tu voulus, il voulut ; vous voulûtes, ils voulurent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je voudrai, nous voudrons,	tu voudras, il voudra ; vous voudrez, ils voudront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je voudrais, nous voudrions,	tu voudrais, il voudrait ; vous voudriez, ils voudraient.
IMPER.	Veuillez, { The 2nd pers. pl. is the only one used, and signifies, <i>be so good as, be so kind as to.</i>	
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	^o je veuille, ^o nous voulions,	tu veuilles, il veuille ; vous vouliez, ils veuillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	^o je voulusse, ^o nous voulussions,	tu voulusses, il voulût ; vous voulussiez, ils voulussent.

Observe that the Subj. Pres. is *que je veuille* ; but the plural is *que nous voulions, que vous vouliez* ; and not *que nous veuillions, que vous veuilliez*, as some writers have it.

(ACAD., Féraud, Gattel, Wailly, Lemare, etc.)

EXERCISE LXXXV.

I can and will tell the truth. — He wishes to set out
 pron. dire vérité f. *

to-morrow.—If you *are willing*, he *will be willing* also.—
demain le le aussi
 We *wish* to be free.—He *wished* to accompany me.—They
 * *libre* * *accompagner* *On*
 will give you whatever you *wish*.—I *should wish* (him to come).
tout ce que ind-7 qu'il vint
 — He *would wish* to speak to you in private.—
 * * *en particulier.*
Have the goodness to read this letter.
*vouloir * lire*

§ IV. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ABSOUÐRE, TO ABSOLVE.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> absolvant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> absous, m. absoute, f.
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> J'absous, tu absous, il absout ; nous absolvons, vous absolvez, ils absolvent.	
	<i>Imp.</i> J'absolvais, tu absolvais, il absolvait ; nous absolvions, vous absolviez, ils absolvaient.	
	(No Preterite Definite.)	
	<i>Fut.</i> J'absoudrai, tu absoudras, il absoudra ; nous absoudrons, vous absoudrez, ils absoudront.	
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> J'absoudrais, tu absoudrais, il absoudrait ; nous absoudrions, vous absoudriez, ils absoudraient.	
IMPER.	absolvons, absolvez, qu'il absolve ; absolvez, qu'ils absolvent.	
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i> J'absolve, tu absolves, il absolve ; nous absolvions, vous absolviez, ils absolvent.	
	(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)	

Conjugate in the same manner, *dissoudre*, to dissolve.

ABSTRAIRE, to abstract, is conjugated like *traire* ; but is very little used ; we more generally say *faire abstraction de*.

ACCROIRE, is used in the Present of the Infinitive only, with any of the tenses of the verb *faire*, when it signifies, *faire croire ce qui n'est pas*, to make one believe what is not true, to impose upon one.

ACCROÎTRE, *to increase*, is conjugated like *croître*.

ADMETTRE, *to admit*, like *mettre*.

ATTEINDRE, *to reach*; see the conjugation of the verb *peindre*.

ATTRAIRE, *to attract, to allure*, is used only in the Infinitive: *Le sel est bon pour attirer les pigeons*, salt is good to attract pigeons. *Attirer* often supplies its place, and is more harmonious.

BATTRE, TO BEAT.

	Part. Pres. battant.		Part. Past. battu.
IND. Pres.	Je bats, nous battons,	tu bats, vous battez,	il bat; ils battent.
Imp.	Je battais, nous battions,	tu battais, vous battiez,	il battait; ils battaient.
Pret.	Je battis, nous battîmes,	tu battis, vous battîtes,	il battit; ils battirent.
Fut.	Je battrai, nous battrons,	tu battras, vous battrez,	il battra; ils battront.
COND. Pres.	Je battrais, nous battrions,	tu battrais, vous battriez,	il battrait; ils battraient.
IMPER.		bats, battez,	qu'il batte; qu'ils battent.
SUBJ. Pres.	je batte, nous battions,	tu battes, vous battiez,	il batte; ils battent.
Imp.	je battisse, nous battissions,	tu battisses, vous battissiez,	il battit; ils battissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Abattre, <i>to pull down.</i>	rabattre, <i>to abate.</i>
combattre, <i>to fight.</i>	rebattre, <i>to beat again.</i>
débattre, <i>to debate.</i>	se débattre, <i>to struggle.</i>

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

I *pardon* you for the sake of your repentance.—She was *absoudre* *en* *faveur* *repentir*. ind-3
acquitted.—These acids *dissolve* metals.—After the death
absoudre *acide* art.
of Alexander, his empire was *dissolved*.—Why do you *beat*
— m.

my dog?—Our left wing *beat* the right wing of the
chien m. ²*gauche* ¹*aile* f. ind-3 ²*droit* ¹

enemy. — Believe me, general, we *shall beat* them. — The
 pl
 cannon (*beat down*) the walls of the fortress. — They
 canon m. *abattre* ind-3 *muraille* f. *forteresse* f. *On*
fought bravely on both sides. — They have *discussed*
 ind-4 *vaillamment de part et d'autre* *Ils* *débattre*
 that question. — *Beat* these mattresses again.
 — f. *matelas* m.

BOIRE, TO DRINK.

	<i>Part. Pres. buvant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. bu.</i>
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je bois, nous buvons,	tu bois, vous buvez,	il boit ; ils boivent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je buvais, nous buvions,	tu buvais, vous buviez,	il buvait ; ils buvaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je bus, nous bûmes,	tu bus, vous bûtes,	il but ; ils burent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je boirai, nous boirons,	tu boiras, vous boirez,	il boira ; ils boiront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je boirais, nous boirions,	tu boirais, vous boiriez.	il boirait ; ils boiraient.
IMPER.		bois, buvez,	qu'il boive ; qu'ils boivent.
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i> e je boive, e nous buvions,	tu boives, vous buviez,	il boive ; ils boivent.
	<i>Imp.</i> e je busse, e nous bussions,	tu bussés, vous bussiez,	il bût ; ils bussent.

CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE.

	<i>Part. Pres. concluant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. conclu, m., conclue, f.</i>
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je conclus, nous concluons,	tu conclus, vous concluez,	il conclut ; ils concluent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je concluais, nous concluions,	tu concluais, vous concluiez,	il concluait ; ils concluaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je conclus, nous conclûmes,	tu conclus, vous conclûtes,	il conclut ; ils conclurent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je conclurai, nous conclurons,	tu concluras, vous conclurez,	il conclura ; ils concluront.

COND.	Pres.	Je conclurais,	tu conclurais,	il conclurait ;
		nous conclurons,	vous concluriez,	ils concluraient.
IMPER.		concluons,	concluez,	qu'il conclue ;
				qu'ils concluent.
SUBJ.	Pres.	^{en} je conclue,	tu conclues,	il conclue ;
		^O nous concluions,	vous concluïez,	ils concluent.
	Imp.	^{ne} je conclusse,	tu conclusses,	il conclût ;
		^O nous conclusions,	vous conclussiez,	ils conclussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *exclure*, to exclude.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

I have the honour of *drinking* your health.—His best
de inf-1 à \ *santé* f.
 wine is *drunk*.—This paper *blots*.—They *drank* two bottles
vin m. *boire* *bouteille* f.
 of champagne.—I *shall drink* a glass of white wine.—Let us
 — *verre* m. 2 1
drink to the health of our friends.—Come, *drink*.— Since he
Allons *Puisqu'*
 is not arrived, I *conclude* that he will not come.—What do
en
 you *conclude* from all this?—They have *concluded* the bargain.
marché m.
 —He was *excluded* from the assembly.
assemblée f.

CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT.

	Part. Pres.	conduisant.	Part. Past.	conduit, m., conduite, f.
IND.	Pres.	Je conduis,	tu conduis,	il conduit ;
		nous conduisons,	vous conduisez,	ils conduisent.
	Imp.	Je conduisais,	tu conduisais,	il conduisait ;
		nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisaient.
	Pret.	Je conduisis,	tu conduisis,	il conduisit ;
		nous conduisîmes,	vous conduisîtes,	ils conduisirent.
	Fut.	Je conduirai,	tu conduiras,	il conduira ;
		nous conduirons,	vous conduirez,	ils conduiront.
COND.	Pres.	Je conduirais,	tu conduirais,	il conduirait ;
		nous conduirions,	vous conduiriez,	ils conduiraient.
IMPER.		conduisons,	conduisez,	qu'il conduise ;
				qu'ils conduisent.

SUBJ.	^{ne} je conduise,	tu conduises,	il conduise :
Pres.	^O nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisent.
Imp.	^{ne} je conduisisses,	tu conduisisses,	il conduisît ;
	^O nous conduisissions,	vous conduisissiez,	ils conduisissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Construire, to construct.	introduire, to introduce.
cuire, to cook, to bake.	produire, to produce.
déduire, to deduct.	reconduire, to reconduct.
détruire, to destroy.	réduire, to reduce.
instruire, to instruct.	traduire, to translate.

Nuire, to hurt, is conjugated like *conduire* ; but its past participle is *nui*, which has no feminine.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

This road *leads* to the town.—Moses *conducted* the
chemin m. conduire Moïse
 people of Israel.—They *built* several ships. — This
peuple m. Israël construire vaisseau m.
 baker *bakes* twice a day.—*Deduct* what you have
boulangier deux fois par ce que
 received.—Time *destroys* (everything).—The overflowing
art. tout débordement m.
 of the river *destroyed* his crop. —Those who *instruct*
rivière f. récolte f. art.
 youth, (must arm themselves) with patience.—I *shall inform*
jeunesse f. doivent s'armer de — instruire
 his family of his conduct.—He *introduced* me into the king's
famille f. conduite f. dans
 closet.—This country has *produced* many great men.—
cabinet m. pays m. beaucoup de
 What book *are you translating* ?—This is well *translated*.—
livre m.
 That affair *has hurt* his reputation.
affaire f. à

CONFIRE, TO PICKLE, TO PRESERVE.

Part. Pres. confisant.	Part. Past. confit, m., confite, f.
IND. Pres. Je confis,	tu confis, il confit ;
nous confisons,	vous confisez, ils confisent.

IND.	<i>Imp.</i>	Je confisais, nous confisions,	tu confisais, vous confissiez,	il confisait ; ils confisaient.
	<i>Pret.</i>	Je confis, nous confimes,	tu confis, vous confîtes,	il confit ; ils confirent.
	<i>Fut.</i>	Je confirai, nous confirons,	tu confiras, vous confirez,	il confira ; ils confiront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i>	Je confirais, nous confirions,	tu confirais, vous confiriez,	il confirait ; ils confiraient.
IMPER.		confisons, confisez,	confis, confissez,	qu'il confise ; qu'ils confisent.
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i>	^{ne} je confise, O nous confisions,	tu confises, vous confissiez,	il confise ; ils confissent.
	<i>Imp.</i>	^{ne} je confisse, O nous confissions,	tu confisses, vous confissiez,	il confit ; ils confissent.

Some authors give no Imperfect Subjunctive to this verb, and prefer having recourse to a circumlocution, and say, *Je voudrais que vous FISSIEZ CONFIRE des prunes*, rather than *je voudrais que vous confissiez des prunes*, I wish you would preserve some plums.

Suffire, to suffice, to be sufficient, is conjugated like *confire* ; but its Participle past is *suffi*, which has no feminine.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

I shall preserve some fruits this year. — Will you preserve
 — *année f.*
 these cherries with sugar or with brandy ? — Preserve
cerise f. à art. art. eau-de-vie f.
 some apricots and peaches. — Have you pickled any
abricot m. pr. art. pêche f.
 cucumbers ? — Little suffices to the wise. — A hundred
concombre m. Peu de bien *
 pounds a year suffice him for his maintenance. —
livres sterling par an m. subsistance f.
 If he lose that lawsuit, all his property will not suffice. —
perd procès m. bien m. y
 That would not suffice me. — That sum is not sufficient to
somme f. pour
 pay your debts. — (Here are) three thousand francs, will that
dette f. Voici
 be enough ? — That is enough.
suffire

CONNAÎTRE, TO KNOW.

Part. Pres. connaissant.

Part. Past. connu.

IND.

<i>Pres.</i> Je connais,	tu connais,	il connaît ;
nous connaissons,	vous connaissez,	ils connaissent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je connaissais,	tu connaissais,	il connaissait ;
nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je connus,	tu connus,	il connut ;
nous connûmes,	vous connûtes,	ils connurent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je connaîtrai,	tu connaîtras,	il connaîtra ;
nous connaîtrons,	vous connaîtrez,	ils connaîtront.

COND.

<i>Pres.</i> Je connaîtrais,	tu connaîtrais,	il connaîtrait ;
nous connaîtrions,	vous connaîtriez,	ils connaîtraient.

IMPER.

connais,	qu'il connaisse ;
connaissez,	qu'ils connaissent.

SUBJ.

<i>Pres.</i> Je connaisse,	tu connaisses,	il connaisse ;
nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissent.

Imp.

Je connusse,	tu connusses,	il connût ;
nous connussions,	vous connussiez,	ils connussent.

[See page 133, our Remarks on *Savoir* and *Connaître*.]

Conjugate in the same manner :

Disparaître, to disappear.	reconnaître, to know again.
paraître, to appear.	reparaître, to appear again.

EXERCISE XC.

I know him perfectly. —He knows his (weak side).—
parfaitement *faible m.*

We know nobody in this neighbourhood.—Do you know our
voisinage m.

house?—He knew me by my voice.—I would know him
*à * art. voix f.*

among a thousand.—The compass was not known by the
*entre * boussole f. de*

ancients.—At the approach of our troops, the enemy disappeared.
approche f. pl.

—It seems you are wrong. —You do not appear
paraître que avoir tort

convinced.—Do you not recognise me?—Do they acknowledge
convaincu reconnaître reconnaître

their errors?—He knew his horse again.

CONTREDIRE, to contradict; see the conjugation of *dire*.

COUDRE. TO SEW.

	<i>Part. Pres. cousant.</i>	<i>Part. Pres. cousu.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je couds, nous cousons,	tu couds, vous cousez,
		il coud ; ils cousent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je cousais, nous cousions,	tu cousais, vous cousiez,
		il cousait ; ils cousaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cousis, nous cousîmes,	tu cousis, vous cousîtes,
		il cousit ; ils cousirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je coudrai, nous coudrons,	tu coudras, vous coudrez,
		il coudra ; ils coudront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je coudrais, nous coudrions,	tu coudrais, vous coudriez,
		il coudrait ; ils coudraient.
IMPER.		couds, cousez,
	cousons,	qu'il couse ; qu'ils cousent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	$\frac{e}{e}$ je couse, $\frac{e}{e}$ nous cousions,	tu couses, vous cousiez,
		il couse ; ils cousent.
<i>Imp.</i>	$\frac{e}{e}$ je cousisse, $\frac{e}{e}$ nous cousissions,	tu cousisses, vous cousissiez,
		il cousît ; ils cousissent.

Découdre, to unsew, and *recoudre*, to sew again, are conjugated in the same manner.

CRAINDRE, TO FEAR.

	<i>Part. Pres. craignant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. craint, m., crainte, f.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je crains, nous craignons,	tu crains, vous craignez,
		il craint ; ils craignent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je craignais, nous craignions,	tu craignais, vous craigniez,
		il craignait ; ils craignaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je craignis, nous craignîmes,	tu craignis, vous craignîtes,
		il craignit ; ils craignirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je craindrai, nous craindrons,	tu craindras, vous craindrez,
		il craindra ; ils craindront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je craindrais, nous craindrions,	tu craindrais, vous craindriez,
		il craindrait ; ils craindraient.
IMPER.		crains, craignez,
	craignons,	qu'il craigne ; qu'ils craignent.

SUBJ. Pres. *je* craigne, tu craignes, il craigne ;
nous craignons, vous craigniez, ils craignent.
Imp. *je* craignisse, tu craignisses, il craignît ;
nous craignissions, vous craignissiez, ils craignissent.

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *aindre* and *oindre*; as, *plaindre*, to pity, and *joindre*, to join.—When *plaindre* is used reflectedly, it signifies to complain: *Je vous plains, mais JE ne ME PLAINS pas de vous*, I pity you, but I do not complain of you.

EXERCISE XCI

That girl *sews* well.—My sisters *were sewing* all yesterday.—
ind-3 *hier*
Sew a button on this waistcoat.—That is badly *sewed*.—
bouton m. à gilet m. mal
His coat was torn, but his tailor *sewed it again* very neatly.—
habit m. déchiré tailleur proprement
He is *afraid* of being discovered.—He was a man who *feared*
craindre d' inf-1 découvert C' ind-2
nothing.—I *pity* his family.—He *complains* without cause.—
famille f. se plaindre sujet
They *were* always *complaining*.—They *united* their efforts.—
2jours ind-2 joindre — m.
Let us unite prudence with courage.
art. — f. à art. — m.

CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> croyant.	<i>Part. Past. cru, m., crue, f.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je crois, nous croyons,	tu crois, il croit ; vous croyez, ils croient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je croyais, nous croyions,	tu croyais, il croyait ; vous croyiez, ils croyaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je crus, nous crûmes,	tu crus, il crut ; vous crûtes, ils crurent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je croirai, nous croirons,	tu croiras, il croira ; vous croirez, ils croiront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je croirais, nous croirions,	tu croirais, il croirait ; vous croiriez, ils croiraient.
IMPER.	croyons, croyez,	crois, qu'il croie ; qu'ils croient.

I *should think* (I would be wanting) in my duty. — *Believe*
manquer à devoir m.
 nothing of all that. — He *thought* he was doing well. — The
 ind-4

vine does not *grow* in cold countries. — These plants
vigne f. art. 2 1pays m. plante f.
 grow on the margin of streams. — His fortune *increases*
bord m. art. ruisseau m. — f. s'

every day. — The river has *fallen* two inches. —
tous les jours rivière f. décroître de pouce m.
 After Midsummer, the days begin to *shorten*.
la Saint-Jean décroître

DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.

<i>Part. Pres. disant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. dit, m., dite, f.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je dis,	tu dis,	il dit ;
	nous disons,	vous dites,	ils disent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je disais,	tu disais,	il disait ;
	nous disions,	vous disiez,	ils disaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je dis,	tu dis,	il dit ;
	nous dûmes,	vous dûtes,	ils dirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je dirai,	tu diras,	il dira ;
	nous dirons,	vous direz,	ils diront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je dirais,	tu dirais,	il dirait ;
	nous dirions,	vous diriez,	ils diraient.
IMPER.	disons,	dis,	qu'il dise ;
	dites,	dites,	qu'ils disent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	je dise,	tu dises,	il dise ;
	nous disions,	vous disiez,	ils disent.
<i>Imp.</i>	je disse,	tu dissés,	il dît ;
	nous dissions,	vous dissiez,	ils dissent.

Redire, to say again, is conjugated exactly like *dire* ; but

contredire, to contradict,	} make in the 2d pers. plur. of the pres. of the Ind. and of the Imper.	contredisez.
dédire, to disown,		dédisez.
interdire, to prohibit,		interdisez.
médire, to slander,		médisez.
prédire, to foretell,		prédisez.

Maudire, to curse, is conjugated like *dire*, except that
 it takes double *s* in the Part. pres. *maudissant* ; in the
 IND. pres. *nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent* .

in the Imperf. *je maudissais*, etc.; in the Imper. *qu'il maudisse*, *maudissons*, etc., and in the SUBJ. *que je maudisse*, *que tu maudisses*, etc.

EXERCISE XCIII.

I tell you.—He tells all he knows.—What do you say?—Those who say: I shall not work, are the most miserable.—Tell us which you would prefer.—You always contradict me.—That physician prohibits wine to all his patients.—He slanders (every body).—The makers of almanacks foretell rain and fine weather.—Do not say: (That man) is of one people, and I am of another people: for all people have had on earth the same father, who was Adam, and have in heaven the same father, who is God.

ce qu' savoir
Ceux travailler
préférer
contradict *1* *That physician prohibits* *2* *wine to all his*
malade *de tout le monde* *faiseur*
art. pluie f. art. temps m.
Celui-là *peuple m. moi*
car art. *art.*
ind-2 — art. ciel m.

DISSOUDRE, to dissolve, is conjugated like *absoudre*, which has neither Preterite definite, nor Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

ÉCLORE, to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower, is used only in the present of the Infinitive; in the Part. past, *éclos*, f. *éclo*, and in the third persons of the following tenses: IND. pres. *il éclôt*, *ils éclosent*. Fut. *il éclôra*, *ils écloront*. COND. *il éclôrait*, *ils éclôraient*. SUBJ. pres. *qu'il éclore*, *qu'ils éclosent*. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much in use.

The primitive of *éclore*, is *clore*, to close, to shut. Another compound is *enclore*, to enclose.

ÉCRIRE, TO WRITE.

<i>Part. Pres. écrivant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. écrit.</i>
IND. Pres. J'écris,	tu écris, il écrit;
nous écrivons,	vous écrivez, ils écrivent.

IND. <i>Imp.</i> J'écrivais,	tu écrivais,	il écrivait ;
nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivaient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'écrivis,	tu écrivis,	il écrivit ;
nous écrivîmes,	vous écrivîtes,	ils écrivirent.
<i>Fut.</i> J'écrirai,	tu écriras,	il écrira ;
nous écrirons,	vous écrirez,	ils écriront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i> J'écrirais,	tu écrirais,	il écrirait ;
nous écririons,	vous écrieriez,	ils écriraient.
IMPER.	écris,	qu'il écrive ;
écrivons,	écrivez,	qu'ils écrivent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> Je j'écrive,	tu écrives,	il écrive ;
nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je j'écrivisse,	tu écrivisses,	il écrivît ;
nous écrivissions,	vous écrivissiez,	ils écrivissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Circonscrire, <i>to circumscribe.</i>	proscrire, <i>to proscribe.</i>
décrire, <i>to describe.</i>	récrire, <i>to write again.</i>
inscrire, <i>to inscribe.</i>	souscrire, <i>to subscribe.</i>
prescrire, <i>to prescribe.</i>	transcrire, <i>to transcribe.</i>

EXERCISE XCIV.

Silk-worms are hatched in the beginning of
 art. *ver à soie* ind-1 à • commencement m. art.
 spring. — These flowers will soon blow. — That man
printemps m. ²bientôt ¹
 speaks well, but he writes badly. — Saint John wrote his
 mal — ind-3
 gospel, at the age of ninety, and joined the quality of an
évangile m. ind-3 *qualité* f. *
 evangelist to that of an apostle and a prophet. — I shall
 * *apôtre* de *
 write to you from Naples. — Write that on a sheet of paper. —
 — *feuille* f.
 This poet describes a battle well. — His physician has
² *bataille* f. ¹ *médecin*
 prescribed to him another regimen. — Sylla proscribed three or
régime m. — ind-3
 four thousand Roman citizens. — He is not writing again, it is
²romain ¹citoyen m. c'
 a sign that he is coming. — I shall subscribe for that atlas. —
 * *signe* m. — m.
 I have transcribed several passages from Cicero and Tacitus.
 — *Cicéron de Tacite*

ENSUIVRE (s'), to follow from, to ensue ; see *Suivre*.

ÊTRE, to be, is conjugated at length, p. 58.

FAIRE, TO DO, TO MAKE

	<i>Part. Pres. faisant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. fait.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je fais, nous faisons,	tu fais, vous faites,
Imp.	Je faisais, nous faisions,	tu faisais, vous faisiez,
Pret.	Je fis, nous fîmes,	tu fis, vous fîtes,
Fut.	Je ferai, nous ferons,	tu feras, vous ferez,
COND. Pres.	Je ferais, nous ferions,	tu ferais, vous feriez,
IMPER.	faisons, faites,	fais, faites,
SUBJ. Pres.	Je fasse, nous fassions,	tu fasses, vous fassiez,
Imp.	Je fisse, nous fissions,	tu fisses, vous fissiez,

(Acad.—Trévoux.—Dict. des Dict.—Restaut.—Noël & Chapsal, etc.)

The diphthong *ai* having the sound of *e* mute, in *faisant*, *nous faisons*, *je faisais*, as well as in the derivatives *bienfaisant*, *bienfaisance*, *contre-faisant*, etc., *Voltaire*, and many writers after his example, have substituted *e* mute instead of *ai*. But *Dumarsais*, *Condillac*, *Girard*, *Beauzée*, *D'Olivet*, and *Domergue*, have constantly opposed the adoption of this change, and the *French Academy*, the true judges in this matter, have formally rejected it.

Conjugate like *faire* :

contrefaire, to counterfeit, to	refaire, to do again.
[mimic.]	satisfaire, to satisfy.
défaire, to undo, to defeat.	surfaire, to exact, to overcharge.

EXERCISE XCV.

I do my duty ; do yours.—(Everything) she does, she
devoir m. Tout ce qu'
 does well.—Pliny relates that Cæsar took above
le Plinie rapporter faire ind-3 plus de
 800,000 prisoners.—The king has made him a knight of
** chevalier*

the legion of honour.—She *mimics* (everybody).—What the
tout le monde *Ce que*
 one *does*, the other *undoes*.—Penelope *undid*, at night,
le *Pénélope* ind-2 * art.
 the work she had *done* during the day.—The fleet of
ouvrage m. qu'
 the enemy was completely *defeated*.—If it were to
 pl. ind-3 *complètement* c' ind-2 à
 do again, I would not do it.—That scholar *pleases* all his
satisfaire
 masters.—You ask too much for your goods.
surfaire * *marchandise f.*

FRINDRE, to feign, is conjugated like *peindre*.

FRIRE, to fry, besides the Present of the Infinitive, is used only in the singular of the Present of the Indicative, *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*; in the Future, *Je frirai, tu friras, il frira, nous frirons, vous frirez, ils friront*; in the Conditional, *Je frirais, tu frirais, il frirait, nous fririons, vous fririez, ils friraient*; in the second person singular of the Imperative, *fris*; and in the compound tenses, which are formed with the Participle past, *frit, frite*.

To supply the persons and tenses which are wanting, we make use of the verb *faire* prefixed to the Infinitive *frire*; as, *Nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils font frire; je faisais frire, etc.*

LIRE, TO READ.

	<i>Part. Pres. lisant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. lu.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je lis, nous lisons,	tu lis, vous lisez,	il lit; ils lisent.
Imp.	Je lisais, nous lisions,	tu lisais, vous lisiez,	il lisait; ils lisaient.
Pret.	Je lus, nous lûmes,	tu lus, vous lûtes,	il lut; ils lurent.
Fut.	Je lirai, nous lirons,	tu liras, vous lirez,	il lira; ils liront.
COND. Pres.	Je lirais, nous lirions,	tu lirais, vous liriez,	il lirait; ils liraient.
IMPER.	lisons,	lis, lisez,	qu'il lise; qu'ils lisent.

SUBJ. Pres.	^{je} je lise,	tu lises,	il lise ;
	^{nous} nous lisions,	vous lisiez,	ils lisent.
Imp.	^{je} je lusse,	tu lusses,	il lût ;
	^{nous} nous lussions,	vous lussiez,	ils lussent.

The regular mode of interrogation is, *lis-je bien ?* and not *liset-je bien ?* If *lis-je bien* be thought harsh to the ear, another turn of expression may be adopted.—(ACAD., *Th. Corneille*.) See page 82, Rem. 6th.

Élire, to elect, and *relire*, to read again, are conjugated like *lire*.

LUIRE, TO SHINE.

	Part. Pres. luisant.	Part. Past. lui, m. No feminine.	
IND. Pres.	Je luis,	tu luis,	il luit ;
	nous luisons,	vous luisiez,	ils luisent.
Imp.	Je luisais,	tu luisais,	il luisait ;
	nous luisions,	vous luisiez,	ils luisaient.
	(No Preterite Definite.)		
Fut.	Je luirai,	tu luiras,	il luira ;
	nous luirons,	vous luirez,	ils luiront.
COND. Pres.	Je luirais,	tu luirais,	il luirait ;
	nous luirions,	vous luiriez,	ils luiraient.
	(No Imperative.)		
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je luisse,	que tu lisses,	qu'il luisse ;
	que nous luisions,	que vous lussiez,	qu'ils lussent.
	(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)		

(Acad. and the modern Grammarians.)

Reluire, to shine, to glitter, is conjugated like *luire*, but the participle present has never been used in a figurative sense.

MAUDIRE, to curse ; see page 147.

EXERCISE XCVI.

Get that fish *fried*.—The soles are not yet *fried*.—
Faites ² ²poisson m. ¹inf.—f. *encore*
 I am reading the Roman history.—She reads well.—They read
₂ ₁
 distinctly. —What author do you read in your class?—
distinctement *autour m.* *classe f.*
 I was reading Don Quixote.—He is a man who has read
 — *Quichotte C'* ₂

(a great deal).—He can neither *read* not *write*.—*Read* that
¹*beaucoup* *ne sait ni ni*
 letter again.—They *elected* him for their representative.—We
 ind-3 *représentant*
shall elect the most worthy.—The sun *shines* for (everybody).—
digne tout le monde
 All that *glitters* is not gold.
ce qui

METTRE, TO PUT.

	<i>Part. Pres. mettant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. mis.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je mets, nous mettons,	tu mets, vous mettez,	il met ; ils mettent.
Imp.	Je mettais, nous mettions,	tu mettais, vous mettiez,	il mettait ; ils mettaient.
Pret.	Je mis, nous mîmes,	tu mis, vous mîtes,	il mit ; ils mirent.
Fut.	Je mettrai, nous mettrons,	tu mettras, vous mettrez,	il mettra ; ils mettront.
COND. Pres.	Je mettrais, nous mettrions,	tu mettrais, vous mettriez,	il mettrait ; ils mettraient.
IMPER.	mettons,	metts, mettez,	qu'il mette ; qu'ils mettent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{je} je mette, nous mettions,	tu mettes, vous mettiez,	il mette ; ils mettent.
Imp.	^{je} je misse, nous missions,	tu misses, vous missiez,	il mît ; ils missent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Admettre, <i>to admit.</i>	omettre, <i>to omit.</i>
commettre, <i>to commit.</i>	permettre, <i>to permit.</i>
compromettre, <i>to compromise.</i>	promettre, <i>to promise.</i>
sedémètre, { <i>to resign ; to put</i>	remettre, <i>to put again ; to</i>
{ <i>out of joint.</i>	soumettre, <i>to submit. [put off.</i>
s'entremettre, <i>to intermeddle.</i>	transmettre, <i>to transmit.</i>

EXERCISE XCVII.

Put on your hat. — You have *put* (the cart before the
 * *chapeau m. la charrue devant les*
 horse).—I do not *admit* that principle. — They *committed*
bœufs principe m. ind-3 de

great excesses.—I *shall* not *compromise* you.—Diocletian *resigned*
excès m. *Dioclétien ind-3*
the empire.—I *shall* omit nothing that depends
de — m. *de ce qui dépendre ind-7*
upon me to serve you. — The law of Mahomet does not
de pour —
allow wine.—Allow me to tell you.—He promises enough
permettre art. *de* *assez*
but he seldom keeps his word. — Do not defer till to-
rarement 1 *parole f.* *remettre à*
morrow what you can do to-day. — They submit to your
ce que *aujourd'hui* *se*
decision.—His actions will transmit his name to posterity.
art.

MOUDRE, TO GRIND (corn, coffee, etc.).

	<i>Part. Pres. moulant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. moulu.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mouds, nous moulons,	tu mouds, il moud ; vous moulez, ils moulent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je moulais, nous moulions,	tu moulais, il moulait ; vous mouliez, ils molaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je moulus, nous moulûmes,	tu moulus, il moulut ; vous moulûtes, ils moulurent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je moudrai, nous moudrons,	tu moudras, il moudra ; vous moudrez, ils moudront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je moudrais, nous moudrions,	tu moudrais, il moudrait ; vous moudriez, ils moudraient.
IMPER.	moulons, moulez,	qu'il moule ; qu'ils moulent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	<i>je</i> je moule, nous moulions,	tu moules, il moule ; vous mouliez, ils moulept.
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>je</i> je moulusse, nous moulussions,	tu moulusses, il moulût ; vous moulussiez, ils moulussent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Émoudre, to grind (knives, razors, etc.) | rémoudre, to grind again
remoudre, to grind again (corn, etc.) | (knives, razors, etc.)

NAÎTRE, TO BE BORN.

	<i>Part. Pres. naissant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. né.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je nais, nous naissons,	tu nais, il naît ; vous naissez, ils naissent.

IND. <i>Imp.</i> Je naissais,	tu naissais,	il naissait ;
nous naissions,	vous naissiez,	ils naissaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je naquis,	tu naquis,	il naquit ;
nous naquîmes,	vous naquîtes,	ils naquirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je naîtrai,	tu naîtras,	il naîtra ;
nous naîtrons,	vous naîtrez,	ils naîtront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i> Je naîtrais,	tu naîtrais,	il naîtrait ;
nous naîtrions,	vous naîtriez,	ils naîtraient.
IMPER.	nais,	qu'il naisse ;
naissions,	naissiez,	qu'ils naissent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je naisse,	tu naisses,	il naisse ;
$\frac{e}{e}$ nous naissions,	vous naissiez,	ils naissent.
<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je naquisse,	tu naquisses,	il naquît ;
$\frac{e}{e}$ nous naquissions,	vous naquissiez,	ils naquissent.

This verb takes the auxiliary *être* ; but *renaître*, to be born again, has no participle past, and, therefore, no compound tenses.

NUIRE, to hurt ; see page 141.

INSTRUIRE, to instruct, is conjugated like *conduire*.

EXERCISE XCVIII.

This mill does not grind fine enough. — Grind some
moulin m. ²*fin* ¹
 pepper. — Are my scissors ground ? — From labour
poivre m. *ciseaux m. pl.* *art. travail m.*
 springs health ; from health contentment, source of
naître art. *art.* *art.* —
 every joy. — Abraham was born about three hundred and
tout joie f. — *ind-3* *environ* *
 fifty years after the deluge. — Moses was born a hundred years
an m. *Moïse* *
 after the death of Jacob. — Napoleon Bonaparte was born at
 — *Napoléon* —
 Ajaccio, in Corsica, on the 15th of August, 1769. — They
 — *en Corse* *
 were born on the same day. — Many diseases spring from
Beaucoup de maladie f.
 intemperance. — (Everything) revives in spring.
Tout renaître à art.

PAÎTRE, TO GRAZE.

<i>Part. Pres. paissant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. pu, m. No feminine.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je pais, nous paissions,	tu pais, vous paissez,	il paît ; ils paissent.
Imp.	Je paissais, nous paissions,	tu paissais, vous paissiez,	il paissait ; ils paissaient.
<i>(No Preterite Definite.)</i>			
Fut.	Je paîtrai, nous paîtrons,	tu paîtras, vous paîtrez,	il paîtra ; ils paîtront.
COND. Pres.	Je paîtrais, nous paîtrions,	tu paîtrais, vous paîtriez,	il paîtrait ; ils paîtraient.
IMPER.	paissions, paissiez,	païs, païssez,	qu'il païsse ; qu'ils paissent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je païsse, que nous paissions,	que tu païsses, que vous païssiez,	qu'il païsse ; qu'ils paissent.
<i>(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)</i>			

Repâître, to feed, is conjugated in the same manner, and has, besides, a Preterite Definite, *je repus*, and an Imperfect of the Subjunctive, *que je repusse*.

PARAÎTRE, to appear, is conjugated like *connaître*.

PEINDRE, TO PAINT.

<i>Part. Pres. peignant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. peint, m., peinte, f.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je peins, nous peignons,	tu peins, vous peignez,	il peint ; ils peignent.
Imp.	Je peignais, nous peignions,	tu peignais, vous peigniez,	il peignait ; ils peignaient.
Pret.	Je peignis, nous peignîmes,	tu peignis, vous peignîtes,	il peignit ; ils peignirent.
Fut.	Je peindrai, nous peindrons,	tu peindras, vous peindrez,	il peindra ; ils peindront.
COND. Pres.	Je peindrais, nous peindrions,	tu peindrais, vous peindriez,	il peindrait ; ils peindraient.
IMPER.	peignons, peignez,	peins, peignez,	qu'il peigne ; qu'ils peignent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je peigne, nous peignons,	tu peignes, vous peigniez,	il peigne ; ils peignent.
Imp.	Je peignisse, nous peignissions,	tu peignisses, vous peignissiez,	il peignît ; ils peignissent.

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *eindre* ; as,

Astreindre, to bind, to subject. | éteindre, to extinguish, to put
atteindre, to attain, to reach. | feindre, to feign. [out.

EXERCISE XCIX.

The sheep quietly feed on the grass
mouton m. ¹tranquillement ¹paître * ²herbe h m.
under the care of the shepherd and the dogs. — The
sous garde f. berger m. pr.
flocks were grazing in the meadows. — He feeds himself
troupeau m. prairie f. se repaître
with vain hopes. — She paints from nature. — Joy
d' ² ¹espérance f. d'après — art. se
was painted in his eyes. — He has attained his fifteenth year. —
ind-2 année f.
We shall reach that village before night. — Put out that
— m. art.
candle. — The fire is out. — He feigns to be sick. — He
chandelle f. d' malade
pretended not to see him.
feindre ind-3 de ne pas *

PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

Part. Pres. plaisant.		Part. Past. plu.	
IND. Pres.	Je plais, nous plaisons,	tu plais, vous plaisez,	il plaît ; ils plaisent.
Imp.	Je plaisais, nous plaisions,	tu plaisais, vous plaisiez,	il plaisait ; ils plaisaient.
Pret.	Je plus, nous plûmes,	tu plus, vous plûtes,	il plut ; ils plurent.
Fut.	Je plairai, nous plairons,	tu plairas, vous plairez,	il plaira ; ils plairont.
COND. Pres.	Je plairais, nous plairions,	tu plairais, vous plairiez,	il plairait ; ils plairaient.
IMPER.	plaisons,	plais, plaisez,	qu'il plaise ; qu'ils plaisent
SUBJ. Pres.	Je plaise, Nous plaisons,	tu plaises, vous plaisiez,	il plaise ; ils plaisent.
Imp.	Je plusse, Nous plussions,	tu plusses, vous plussiez,	il plût ; ils plussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *déplaire*, to displease, and *complaître*, to humour.

PRENDRE, TO TAKE

<i>Part. Pres. prenant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. pris.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je prends, nous prenons,	tu prends, vous prenez,	il prend ; ils prennent.
Imp.	Je prenais, nous prenions,	tu prenais, vous preniez,	il prenait ; ils prenaient.
Pret.	Je pris, nous primes,	tu pris, vous prîtes,	il prit ; ils prirent.
Fut.	Je prendrai, nous prendrons,	tu prendras, vous prendrez,	il prendra ; ils prendront.
COND. Pres.	Je prendrais, nous prendrions,	tu prendrais, vous prendriez,	il prendrait ; ils prendraient.
IMPER.	prenons,	prends, prenez,	qu'il prenne ; qu'ils prennent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je prenne, nous prenions,	tu prennes, vous preniez,	il prenne ; ils prennent.
Imp.	Je prisse, nous prissions,	tu prisses, vous prissiez,	il prît ; ils prissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :

Apprendre, to learn.	se méprendre, to mistake.
comprendre, to understand, to comprehend.	reprendre, { to take back ; to reply ;
désapprendre, to unlearn, to forget.	to censure.
entreprendre, to undertake.	surprendre, to surprise.

The *n* of the above verbs is always doubled, as in *prendre*, when it comes before the *mute* terminations, *e*, *es*, *ent*.

EXERCISE C.

That painting *pleases* me more than the other.—*Let us not tableau m.*

(give offence) by *airs* of haughtiness.—He took *déplaire* pr. art. — m. *hauteur* pr. art. guides who conducted him.—I shall take a hackney-coach.—*fiacre m.*

Take the first street on the right.—The cat has caught a *rue f. à * droite* *prendre*

mouse. —The place was taken.—Let us learn our lesson.—
souris f. —f. ind-2

I do not understand these two words. — Philosophy
mot m. art.

comprehends logic, ethics, physics, and
art. logique f. art. morale f. s. art. physique f. s.

metaphysics. —They undertake (too many) things at
art. métaphysique f. s. trop de à

once.—I took up my gun again.—You surprise me
art. fois f. fusil m.

(very much) by telling me that.
beaucoup en

RÉSoudre, TO RESOLVE.

	Part. Pres. résolvant.	Part. Past. résolu, or résous.
IND. Pres.	Je résous, nous résolvons,	tu résous, il résout ; vous résolvez, ils résolvent.
Imp.	Je résolvais, nous résolvions,	tu résolvais, il résolvait ; vous résolviez, ils résolveraient.
Pret.	Je résolus, nous résolûmes,	tu résolus, il résolut ; vous résolûtes, ils résolurent.
Fut.	Je résoudrai, nous résoudrons,	tu résoudras, il résoudra ; vous résoudrez, ils résoudront.
COND. Pres.	Je résoudrais, nous résoudrions,	tu résoudrais, il résoudrait ; vous résoudriez, ils résoudraient.
IMPER.	résolvons, résolvez,	résous, qu'il résolve ; résolvez, qu'ils résolvent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je résolve, Nous résolvions,	tu résolves, il résolve ; vous résolviez, ils résolvent.
Imp.	Je résolusse, Nous résolussions,	tu résolusses, il résolût ; vous résolussiez, ils résolussent.

N.B.—When *résoudre* signifies to determine, to decide, the Part. past, *résolu*, m., *résolue*, f., is to be employed ; but if it mean to change, to reduce, or turn one thing into another, then the Participle *résous* (without feminine), is to be used :

Ce jeune homme a résolu de changer de conduite.	This young man has resolved to change his conduct.
Le soleil a résous le brouillard en pluie.	The sun has turned the fog into rain.

RIRE, TO LAUGH.

<i>Part. Pres. riant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. ri, m.</i>	<i>No feminine.</i>
IND. Pres. Je ris, nous rions,	tu ris, vous riez,	il rit ; ils rient.
Imp. Je riais, nous riions,	tu riaais, vous riiez,	il riait ; ils riaient.
Pret. Je ris, nous rimes,	tu ris, vous rites,	il rit ; ils rirent ;
Fut. Je rirai, nous rirons,	tu riras, vous rirez,	il rira ; ils riront.
COND. Pres. Je rirais, nous ririons,	tu rirais, vous ririez,	il rirait ; ils riraient.
IMPER. rions,	ris, riez,	qu'il rie ; qu'ils rient.
SUBJ. Pres. $\frac{2}{2}$ je rie, $\frac{2}{2}$ nous riions,	tu ries, vous riiez,	il rie ; ils rient.
Imp. $\frac{2}{2}$ je risse, $\frac{2}{2}$ nous rissions,	tu risses, vous rissiez,	il rit ; ils rissent.

Rire is also used with a double pronoun, in the sense of to laugh at, to ridicule ; as, *JE ME RIS de ses menaces*, I laugh at his threats.

Sourire, to smile, is conjugated in the same manner.

SUFFIRE, to suffice, to be sufficient ; see page 142.

EXERCISE CL

We resolved to set off immediately. — Have they resolved.
ind-3 de sur-le-champ A-t-on
on peace or war ? — (Everybody) is laughing at his
* art. art. Tout le monde
expense. — She was laughing most heartily. — They were
dépens m. pl. de tout son cœur
laughing (in their sleeves). — They laughed even to tears. —
sous cape * art. larme f.
You make me laugh. — Fortune smiles on him. — She smiled
art. — f. * lui ind-2
at my embarrassment. — He smiled to him, in sign of approbation.
de embarras m. ind-3 en —
He came up to me smiling.
ind-3 au-devant de moi en

SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

	<i>Part. Pres. suivant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. suivi.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je suis, nous suivons,	tu suis, vous suivez,	il suit ; ils suivent.
Imp.	Je suivais, nous suivions,	tu suivais, vous suiviez,	il suivait ; ils suivaient.
Pret.	Je suivis, nous suivîmes,	tu suivis, vous suivîtes,	il suivit ; ils suivirent.
Fut.	Je suivrai, nous suivrons,	tu suivras, vous suivrez,	il suivra ; ils suivront.
COND. Pres.	Je suivrais, nous suivrions.	tu suivrais, vous suivriez,	il suivrait ; ils suivraient.
IMPER.	suivons,	suis, suivez,	qu'il suive ; qu'ils suivent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je suive, nous suivions,	tu suives, vous suiviez,	il suive ; ils suivent.
Imp.	Je suivisse, nous suivissions,	tu suivisses, vous suivissiez,	il suivît ; ils suivissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *poursuivre*, to pursue, to prosecute.

S'ensuire, to ensue, to result, follows the same conjugation, but is used only in the third persons singular and plural of every tense ; as,

Un grand bien *s'ensuivit*.—(ACAD.) | *Much good* resulted from it.

SURVIVRE, to survive. is conjugated like *vivre*.

TAIRE, TO CONCEAL, TO KEEP SECRET.

	<i>Part. Pres. taisant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. tu, m., tue, f.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je tais, nous taisons,	tu tais, vous taisez,	il tait ; ils taisent.
Imp.	Je taisais, nous taisions,	tu taisais, vous taisiez,	il taisait ; ils taisaient.
Pret.	Je tus, nous tîmes,	tu tus, vous tîtes,	il tut ; ils turent.
Fut.	Je tairai, nous tairons,	tu tairas, vous tairez,	il taira ; ils tairont.
COND. Pres.	Je tairais, nous tairions,	tu tairais, vous tairiez,	il tairait ; ils tairaient.

IMPER.		taie,	qu'il taise ;
	taisons,	taisez,	qu'ils taisent.
SUBJ. Pres.	je taise,	tu taises,	il taise ;
	nous taisions,	vous taisiez,	ils taisent.
Imp.	je tusse,	tu tusses,	il tût ;
	nous tussions,	vous tussiez,	ils tussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *se taire*, to be silent, to hold one's tongue.

EXERCISE CII.

An ass-driver said : I am not what I follow, for if I were
ânier m. ce que car étais
 what I follow, I would not be what I am. — Trouble
art. embarras m.
attends riches. — Several princes of Germany
suivre art. richesses f. pl. — Allemagne
 follow the doctrine of Luther.—I shall follow you very
— f. — de fort
 closely.—Always follow the advice of your father.—
près 2 1 avis m. monsieur
Let us pursue our journey.—Well ! what (is the consequence ?)
chemin m. Eh bien que s'ensuivre
 I shall not conceal from you my way of thinking.—After
façon f. inf-1
 having said that, he held his tongue.—Let us be silent.
inf-1

TRAIRE, TO MILK.

	<i>Part. Pres. trayant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. trait, m., traite, f.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je trais,	tu trais, il trait ;
	nous trayons,	vous trayez, ils traient.
Imp.	Je trayais,	tu trayais, il trayait ;
	nous trayions,	vous trayiez, ils trayaient.
	(No Preterite Definite.)	
Fut.	Je trairai,	tu trairas, il traira ;
	nous trairons,	vous trairez, ils trairont.
COND. Pres.	Je trairais,	tu trairais, il trairait ;
	nous trairions,	vous trairiez, ils trairaient.
IMPER.		trais, qu'il traie ;
	trayons,	trayez, qu'ils traient.
SUBJ. Pres.	je traie,	tu traies, il traie ;
	nous trayions,	vous trayiez, ils traient.
	(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)	

Conjugate in the same manner :

Abstraire, to <i>abstract</i> .	rentraire, to <i>darn</i> .
distraire, to <i>distract</i> , to <i>divert</i> .	retraire, to <i>redeem</i> .
extraire, to <i>extract</i> .	soustraire, to <i>subtract</i> .

(See our remarks on *Abstraire* and *Attraire*, pages 137 and 138.)

VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> vainquant.		<i>Part. Past.</i> vaincu.
IND. <i>Pres.</i> Je vaincs,	tu vaincs,	il vaine ;
nous vainquons,	vous vainquez,	ils vainquent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je vainquais,	tu vainquais,	il vainquait ;
nous vainquions,	vous vainquiez,	ils vainquaient
<i>Pret.</i> Je vainquis,	tu vainquis,	il vainquit ;
nous vainquîmes,	vous vainquîtes,	ils vainquirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je vaincrai,	tu vaincras,	il vaincra ;
nous vaincrons,	vous vaincrez,	ils vaincront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i> Je vaincrais,	tu vaincrais,	il vaincrait ;
nous vaincristions,	vous vaincristiez,	ils vaincristaient.
IMPER.	(The 2d pers. s. is not in use.) qu'il vainque ;	
vainquons,	vainquez,	qu'ils vainquent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> Je vainque,	tu vainques,	il vainque ;
nous vainquions,	vous vainquiez,	ils vainquent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je vainquisse,	tu vainquisses,	il vainquît ;
nous vainquissions,	vous vainquissiez,	ils vainquissent.

The Present and Imperfect of the Indicative of this verb are seldom used.—(ACAD.)

Convaincre, to convince, to convict, is conjugated in the same manner.

EXERCISE CIII.

Is the cow *milked*? — The least thing *diverts* his
vache f. *moindre le*
 attention.—He has *extracted* that passage from a dialogue of
 — m. — m.

* Plato. — Arithmetic teaches to add, *subtract*,
Platon art. arithmétique f. *à additionner*, pr.

multiply, and divide.—Scipio *vanquished* Hannibal at
 pr. *multiplier*, pr. *diviser* *Scipion ind-3 Annibal*
 the battle of Zama in Africa.—The Greeks *vanquished* the
 — *en Afrique* *Grec ind-3*

Persians at Marathon, Salamis, Platea, and Mycale.
Perse à — pr. Salamine, pr. Platée pr. —
 How many people cannot be convinced but by
Combien de gens ne peuvent m. pl. que art.
 experience !

VIVRE, TO LIVE.

<i>Part. Pres. vivant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. vécu. (No feminine.)</i>	
IND. Pres. Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
nous vivons,	vous vivez,	ils vivent.
Imp. Je vivais,	tu vivais,	il vivait ;
nous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivaient.
Pret. Je vécus,	tu vécus,	il vécut ;
nous vécûmes,	vous vécûtes,	ils vécurent.
Fut. Je vivrai,	tu vivras,	il vivra ;
nous vivrons,	vous vivrez,	ils vivront.
COND. Pres. Je vivrais,	tu vivrais,	il vivrait ;
nous vivrions,	vous vivriez,	ils vivraient.
IMPER.	vis,	qu'il vive ;
vivons,	vivez,	qu'ils vivent.
SUBJ. Pres. $\frac{2}{2}$ je vive,	tu vives,	il vive ;
$\frac{2}{2}$ nous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivent.
Imp. $\frac{2}{2}$ je vécusse,	tu vécusses,	il vécût ;
$\frac{2}{2}$ nous vécussions,	vous vécussiez,	ils vécussent.

In the same manner are conjugated, *revivre*, to revive ; and *survivre*, to survive.

Ils ont vécu, in the sense of *ils sont morts* (they are dead), is an expression purely Latin ; the Romans avoided, from superstition, the use of words reckoned inauspicious. We say more generally, *ils sont morts* ; however, *ils ont vécu*, has become a French phrase, owing to its adoption by a great number of authors ; besides, it produces a finer effect than the expression for which it stands.—(*Caminade.*)

To live *on* or *upon*, is expressed by *vivre DE* ; as, *Il vit DE légumes* (ACAD.), he lives upon vegetables.

C'est une fille accoutumée à *vivre DE* salade, DE lait, DE fromage et DE viandes.—(*Molière.*)

VIVE le Roi! is an exclamation to express that we wish the king long life and prosperity. *Vive* is also a term made use of to mark that we highly esteem a person, or set a great value upon something.

Vive la liberté! *Vivent* nos libérateurs!—(*Acad.*)

Malgré tous les chagrins, *vive* la vie!—(*Gresset.*)

Vivent les gens d'esprit.—(*Palissot.*)

Vivent les gens qui ont de l'industrie!—(*Pluche.*)

Vive or *vivent* in the above and similar phrases is the third person of the present of the Subjunctive of the verb *vivre*.—(ACAD., *Féraud*, *Trévoux*, etc.)

EXERCISE CIV.

I *live* with economy.—He *lives* like a great lord. —She
lives upon her income. —We *live* in the country.—Those
rentes f. pl. *en* * *seigneur* à
animals *live* upon herbs and roots. —Saint Louis (Louis
herbe f. pr. *racine* f.
IX.) *lived* in the thirteenth century. —So good a prince *will*
ind-2 à siècle m. 2 3 1
live for ever in history.—It is dear *living* in this
éternellement dans art. *fait* inf-1 *dans*
town.—The people shouted, *Long live* the king!—
peuple m. *crier* ind-3 art.
Fathers *live* again in their children.—He *will* never *survive*
revivre dans
the loss of his reputation.—The husband has *survived*
à *perte* f.
his wife.
à

CHAPTER VI

OF THE ADVERB.

THE *Adverb* is an invariable sort of word, so called, because it is most frequently added to a verb, to express some quality, manner, or circumstance ; as, *il écrit BIEN*, he writes well ; *elle parle DISTINCTEMENT*, she speaks distinctly.

The adverb serves also to modify an adjective, and even another adverb ; as, *il est TRÈS éloquent*, he is very eloquent ; *elle chante FORT bien*, she sings very well.

Some adverbs consist of a single word, as *bien*, well ; *toujours*, always ; others are compound, and consist of two or more words, and are generally called, in French, *locutions adverbiales* ; such are, *pêle-mêle*, promiscuously ; *sur-le-champ*, immediately ; *tout à coup*, suddenly ; *tout à fait*, entirely.

SITUATION OF THE ADVERB.

Adverbs, in French, are generally placed after the verb, in *simple tenses*, and between the auxiliary and the participle, in *compound tenses* ; as,

<i>Il parle souvent de vous.</i>	<i>He often speaks of you.</i>
<i>Il a souvent parlé de vous.</i>	<i>He has often spoken of you.</i>

But compound adverbs are placed after the participle in compound tenses ; as,

<i>Vous avez jugé à la hâte.</i>	<i>You have judged hastily.</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------

CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be classified according to their different uses ; we shall give a list of those most in use.

I. *Adverbs of Affirmation.*

<i>Certes,</i>	<i>certainly.</i>	<i>soit,</i>	<i>be it so.</i>
<i>oui,</i>	<i>yes.</i>	<i>volontiers,</i>	<i>willingly.</i>
<i>sans doute,</i>	<i>undoubtedly.</i>	<i>d'accord,</i>	<i>done, agreed.</i>

168 EXERCISE ON ADVERBS OF COMPARISON.

live? — *Whence* do you come? — *Why* do you make *so much*
demeurer
noise? — *When* shall I have the pleasure of seeing you
de inf-1
again? — You have played *enough*. — She speaks *much* and
jouer
reflects *little*. — I am *very* glad to meet you. — Science is
de art. — f.
estimable, but virtue is much *more* so. — *Almost* all the
— art. l' bien *
philosophers think so. — He has *so many* friends! — He
ainsi *de*
drinks *too much*.

VI. *Adverbs of Comparison.*

Ainsi, <i>thus, so.</i>	de mieux en mieux, <i>better and</i>
aussi, <i>as, too, also.</i>	moins, <i>less. [better.</i>
autant, <i>as much, as many.</i>	pis, <i>worse.</i>
comme, <i>as, like.</i>	plus, <i>more.</i>
mieux, <i>better.</i>	si, <i>so.</i>

EXERCISE CVII.

The president spoke *thus*. — That book has merit; but
du
there are others *as good*. — If he has done that, I can do
en * *d'* *en*
as much. — There were *as many* ladies as gentlemen. —
ind-2 *de* *que de monsieur*
Don't read *like* him. — Women speak *better* than they
art. *qu'*
write. — She sings *better and better*. — Since the invention of
n' *Depuis* — f.
powder, battles are *less* bloody than they were. —
art. *poudre* f. art. *sanglant qu'* *ne l'* ind-2
His affairs are going from bad to *worse*. — You do not offer
mal en
enough, give something *more*. — I was *so far off*, that I
de ind-2 *loin* *
could hear nothing.

VII. *Adverbs of Order or Rank.*

Premièrement,	<i>first.</i>	après,	<i>after.</i>
secondement, etc.,	<i>secondly, etc.</i>	ensuite,	<i>afterwards.</i>
d'abord,	<i>at first, first.</i>	auparavant,	<i>before.</i>

VIII. *Adverbs of Place.*

Ailleurs,	<i>elsewhere.</i>	loin,	<i>far.</i>
ici,	<i>here.</i>	partout,	<i>everywhere.</i>
là,	<i>there.</i>	y,	<i>there.</i>

REMARK.—*Y* adverb comes from the Latin *ibi*, there ; it must not be confounded with the relative pronoun *Y* which has the sense of *to him, to her, to it, to them, etc.*—See page 44.

EXERCISE CVIII.

Do *first* what we have agreed upon.—Work *first*, you
ce dont être convenir * *d'abord*
 will amuse yourself *afterwards*.—You will go before, and he
devant lui
after.—The painter had brought together in the same picture
ind-2 rassembler un tableau m.
 several different objects : *there* a troop of bacchantes, *here* a
2 1 bacchante
 group of young people ; *there* a sacrifice, *here* a disputation of
gens — m. dispute f.
 philosophers.—Alexander gave to Porus a kingdom larger
Alexandre ind-3 — plus grand
 than the one he had *before*.—Don't go *far*.—I have
celui qu' ind-2
 looked for it *everywhere*. — Will you go *there* ?
chercher Vouloir y

IX. *Adverbs of Time.**Present.*

Aujourd'hui, <i>to-day.</i>		<i>maintenant, now.</i>
-----------------------------	--	-------------------------

Past.

Autrefois, <i>formerly.</i>		<i>hier, yesterday. [terday.</i>
dernièrement, <i>lately.</i>		<i>avant-hier, the day before yes-</i>

Future.

Demain, <i>to-morrow.</i>		<i>bientôt, soon, very soon.</i>
après-demain, <i>the day after</i>		<i>désormais, hereafter.</i>
<i>to-morrow.</i>		<i>dorénavant, henceforth.</i>

Indeterminate.

Alors, <i>then.</i>	rarement, <i>seldom.</i>
longtemps, <i>long.</i>	souvent, <i>often.</i>
quelquefois, <i>sometimes.</i>	toujours, <i>always.</i>

EXERCISE CIX.

We expect him *to-day* or *to-morrow*.—*Formerly*, the
attendre
 education of females was neglected, but *now* it is very much
art. femme ind-2 négligé *on * 3beaucoup*
 (attended to).—He set out *the day before yesterday*.—Let us
s'en 2occupe *est parti*
 be wiser *hereafter*.—Be more exact *henceforth*.—Where were
2 1 *ind-2*
 you *then*?—He goes *sometimes* on foot, *sometimes* in a coach.—
a *en * voiture*
 That *seldom* occurs.—People *often* deceive themselves by
arriver On se tromper en
 judging from appearances.—The moon *always* revolves
sur art. apparence f. tourner
 round the earth.
autour de

X. *Adverbs of Manner and Quality.*

Bien, <i>well.</i>	à la mode, <i>fashionably.</i>
mal, <i>badly, ill.</i>	à tort, <i>wrongfully.</i>
à la hâte, <i>hastily.</i>	expres, <i>on purpose.</i>

To this class must be added the adverbs formed from adjectives, by annexing *ment*. There are, in French, few adjectives, from which adverbs of this nature have not been formed. This termination in *ment* corresponds to the *ly* of the English, and comes from the Italian substantive *mente*, itself derived from the Latin substantive *mens*, *mentis*, which signifies *mind*, *intention*, *manner*; so that *tendrement*, *fortement*, have the same meaning as “in a tender manner,” “in a strong manner.”

These adverbs are formed from adjectives in the following manner :

RULE I. When the adjective ends with a vowel, in the masculine, the adverb is formed by simply adding *ment* to it; as,

poli,	<i>polite</i> ;	poliment,	<i>politely</i> .
sage,	<i>wise</i> ;	sagement,	<i>wisely</i> .
vrai,	<i>true</i> ;	vraiment,	<i>truly</i> .

Exception.—*Impuni*, unpunished, makes *impunément*, with impunity.

The six following adverbs take an *é* accented before the final *ment*, instead of the *e* mute of the adjectives :

Aveuglement,	<i>blindly</i> .	énormément,	<i>enormously</i> . [<i>ously</i> .
commodément,	<i>commodiously</i> .	incommodément,	<i>incommodi-</i>
conformément,	<i>conformably</i> .	opiniâtrément,	<i>obstinately</i> .

Bellement, softly ; *follement*, foolishly ; *mollement*, effeminately ; and *nouvellement*, newly, are formed from the adjectives, *bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, according to the following rule.

RULE II. When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, by adding *ment* to it ; as,

franc, <i>m.</i>	franche, <i>f.</i>	<i>frank</i> ;	franchement, <i>frankly</i> .
heureux, <i>m.</i>	heureuse, <i>f.</i>	<i>happy</i> ;	heureusement, <i>happily</i> .
naïf, <i>m.</i>	naïve, <i>f.</i>	<i>artless</i> ;	naïvement, <i>artlessly</i> .

Exception.—*Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily ; because in *gentil*, the letter *l* is not pronounced.

The six following adverbs take an *é* accented, instead of the *e* mute of the feminine of the adjectives from which they are formed :

Communément,	<i>commonly</i> .	obscurément,	<i>obscurely</i> .
confusément,	<i>confusedly</i> .	précisément,	<i>precisely</i> .
expressément,	<i>expressly</i> .	profondément,	<i>profoundly</i> .

RULE III. Adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*, in the masculine, form their adverbs by changing *ant* into *amment*, and *ent* into *emment* ; as,

constant,	<i>constant</i> .	constamment,	<i>constantly</i> .
éloquent,	<i>eloquent</i> .	éloquemment,	<i>eloquently</i> .

Lent, slow, and *présent*, present, are the only exceptions in this class ; they follow the second rule, making *lentement*, slowly, and *présentement*, presently.

N.B. Most adverbs of manner, and a few of the other classes, have the three degrees of comparison, which are formed as in the adjectives.

The following adverbs are irregular in French, as well as in English :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
bien, <i>well.</i>	mieux, <i>better.</i>	le mieux, <i>the best.</i>
mal, <i>badly.</i>	pis, <i>worse.</i>	le pis, <i>the worst.</i>
peu, <i>little.</i>	moins, <i>less.</i>	le moins, <i>the least.</i>

(See our previous remarks on these adverbs, page 24.)

EXERCISE CX.

(N.B. In this Exercise some adjectives are given, from which the student will form adverbs, according to the foregoing rules.)

All goes *well*.—I said it *on purpose*.—He has done that
ind-4

very *cleverly*.—He acts *conformably* to your orders.—Speak
fort habile agir

to me *frankly*.—He is *dangerously* wounded.—Corneille and
dangereux

Racine are the two best French tragic poets ; the pieces of
3 2tragique 1 pièce f.

the former are *strongly*, but *incorrectly* written ; those of the
premier 2fort 3 4incorrect 1

latter are more *regularly* beautiful, more *purely* expressed,
dernier régulier beau pur exprimé

and more *delicately* conceived.—You walk too *slowly*.
délicat pensé

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

THE *Preposition* is an invariable part of speech, so called, because, as its Latin derivation implies, it is generally *placed before* the word with which it is joined.

The preposition serves to express the relation which words have with each other, or to show the condition of things.

It is by means of *prepositions* that we supply the *cases* which are wanting in the French language ; for instance, the preposition *de* often corresponds to the genitive and ablative of the Latins. *Le livre DE Pierre.*—*Je viens DE Rome.*

“The more one studies our language,” says the *Abbé d’Olivet*, “the more one will admire the use which it makes of its prepositions. Among which, let us distinguish two, *à* and *de*, which almost support the whole edifice.”

Prepositions are either *simple* or *compound*. The simple consist of a single word ; as, *à*, to ; *de*, of ; *avec*, with. Compound prepositions consist of two or more words, and are often called, in French, *locutions prépositives* ; such are, *quant à*, as to ; *vis-à-vis*, opposite ; *à l’égard de*, with regard to.

The prepositions are divided into different classes, according to the manner in which they express relation or connexion.

I. To denote Place.

Auprès,	<i>near.</i>	près,	<i>near.</i>
autour,	<i>round, around.</i>	proche,	<i>near.</i>
chez,	<i>at.</i>	sous,	<i>under.</i>
dans,	<i>in.</i>	sur,	<i>on, upon, over.</i>
devant,	<i>before.</i>	vers,	<i>towards. (Vers is also</i>
derrière,	<i>behind.</i>		<i>a prep. of time.)</i>
entre,	<i>between.</i>	vis-à-vis,	<i>opposite.</i>
jusque,	<i>till, until.</i>	voici,	<i>behold, here is or are.</i>
parmi,	<i>among.</i>	voilà,	<i>behold, there is or are.</i>

EXERCISE CXI.

Chicanery roams incessantly *around* Themis, envy
 art. *chicane* f. *rôder sans cesse* *de Thémis* art.
around prosperity, calumny *around* virtue,
de art. art. *de art.* art.
 error *around* the mind of man, and injustice *around*
de esprit m. art. art. — f.
 his heart : what ravages do these monsters not commit,
de — m. *ne font-ils pas*
 when once they can gain access !—*In* prosperity it is
une fois *pénétrer* art. *il*
 agreeable to have a friend ; *in* misfortune it is a necessity.—
d' art. *malheur* m. *c'* *besoin* m.
 Write injuries *upon* sand, and benefits *upon*
 art. art. art. *bienfait* m. art.
 brass. —The loadstone points *towards* the north.—
airain m. *aimant* m. *se tourner*
 Paper was invented *towards* the end of the fourteenth
 art. ind-4 *fin* f.
 century ; and printing, *towards* the middle of the
siècle m. art. *imprimerie* f.
 fifteenth century.

II. To denote Order.

Avant, <i>before.</i>		depuis, <i>since.</i>
après, <i>after.</i>		dès, <i>from.</i>

III. To denote Union.

Avec, <i>with.</i>		outré, <i>besides.</i>
durant, <i>during.</i>		selon, <i>} according to.</i>
pendant, <i>whilst, during.</i>		suiwant, <i>}</i>

EXERCISE CXII.

Augustus began to reign forty-two years *before* Jesus Christ.—
Auguste ind-3 *Jésus* —
 I fear God, and *after* God, I fear principally those who do not
ceux
 fear him.— Man *from* his birth has the feeling of
 art. *sentiment* m. art.
 pleasure and of grief. —The soldier defends his country
 art. *douleur* f. * art. *patrie* f.

with his sword ; the man of letters enlightens it *with* his pen.
éclairer

—It is *during* youth that we must lay the foundations
pendant art. *il faut poser* *fondement* m.
 of an honourable and happy life.—The wise man acts
2 *3* *4* *1* *** *se conduire*
according to the dictates of reason. — Talents
maxime f. art. art. — m.
 (are productive) *according to* their cultivation.
produisent * art. *culture* f.

IV. To denote Separation or Privation.

Sans, *without*.
 excepté, *except*.

hors, *except, save*.
 hormis, *except, but*.

V. To denote Opposition.

Contre, *against*.
 malgré, *in spite of*.

nonobstant, *notwithstanding*.

EXERCISE CXIII.

No virtue *without* religion, no happiness *without* virtue.—
Point de

A child *without* innocence is a flower *without* perfume.—Where

(will you find) roses *without* thorns?—We must always be
trouver inf-1 *des* — *Il faut* *2* *1*

ready to serve our friends, *except against* our conscience.—All
ses *sa* — f.

is lost *save* honour.— Work is a better resource *against*
 art. art. *travail* m.

ennui than pleasure.— Truth, *notwithstanding*
 art. — m. art. art. art.

prejudice, error and falsehood, (clears its way) and
préjugé m. art. art. *mensonge* m. *se fait jour*

penetrates at last.
percer à la fin

VI. To denote the End.

Envers, *towards*.
 pour, *for*.

concernant, *concerning*.
 touchant, *about, respecting*.

VII. To denote Cause and Means.

Par, *by*.
 moyennant, *by means of*.

attendu, *on account of*.
 vu, *considering*.

EXERCISE CXIV.

Fulfil your duty *towards* God, *towards* your parents, and
Remplir _____

towards your country. — That letter is not *for* you. — It
 * art. *patrie* f. *Ce*

was at the entrance of Edward III. into Calais, in 1547,
 ind-3 *entrée* f. *Edouard* *dans* *l'an*

that (the drum was heard to beat) *for* the first time. — He has
l'on entendit battre le tambour *fois* f.

written to him *respecting* that business. — She charms everybody
tout le monde

by her kindness and her gentleness. — They will succeed by
bonté f. *douceur* f. *réussir*

means of your counsels. — The fleet cannot sail *on account*
avis m. *partir*

of contrary winds.
 art. 2 1

The preposition *à* is used to express several relations, the principal of which are :

1. *place* ; as, *aller à Paris*, to go to Paris ; *demeurer à Londres*, to live in London.
2. *time* ; as, *se lever à six heures*, to rise at six o'clock.
3. *matter* ; as, *bâtir à chaux*, to build with lime
4. *manner* ; as, *s'habiller à la française*, to dress after the French fashion.
5. *cause* ; as, *un moulin à vent*, a windmill ; *des armes à feu*, firearms.
6. *use, destination* ; as, *un moulin à papier*, a paper-mill ; *un sac à ouvrage*, a work-bag.
7. *means* ; as, *peindre à l'huile*, to paint in oil.
8. *possession* ; as, *ce livre est à Alfred*, this book belongs to Alfred.

EXERCISE CXV.

One can go in two hours from Paris to Versailles. — How far
On *en* _____ *Combien*
 is it from London to Edinburgh ? — The neglect of all religion
y a-t-il *Edimbourg* *oubli* m. _____ f.
 soon conducts to the neglect of all the duties of man. —
utôt *devoir* m. art.

Hypocrisy is an homage that vice pays to art. *hommage m. art.—m. rendre art.*
 virtue.—Come back at six o'clock.—We left him *Revenir heure quitter ind-4*
 at (twelve o'clock).—That is at the rate of five per cent.—
*midi C' * raison pour*
 The walls of this ancient castle are built with lime and
mur m. château m. bâtir prep.
 cement.—It is a steam-engine of (twenty-horse power).
ciment C' machine à vapeur f. la force de vingt chevaux

The principal use of the preposition *DE* is to express :

1. *place* ; as, *venir de Lyon*, to come from Lyons.
2. *time* ; as, *il est parti de jour*, he went away in the day-time.
3. *matter* ; as, *une table de marbre*, a marble table ; *une tabatière d'or*, a gold snuff-box.
4. *possession* ; as, *le livre de Berthe*, Bertha's book.
5. *subject* ; as, *parlons de cette affaire*, let us speak of that affair.
6. *cause, motive* ; as, *je suis charmé de sa fortune*, I am happy at his fortune.

EXERCISE CXVI.

I come from Dublin, where I have spent a week very
 ——— où *passer huit jours*
 agreeably.—I intend to go from France to Switzerland ;
se proposer d' en Suisse
 and from Switzerland to Italy.—The seven wonders of the
Italie merveille f.
 world were, the walls and gardens of Babylon ; the
ind-2 muraille f. art. Babylone
 pyramids of Egypt ; the pharos of Alexandria ; the
pyramide f. Egypte phare m.
 mausoleum which Artemisia erected for Mausolus, her husband ;
tombeau m. Artémise fit élever Mausole
 the temple of Diana at Ephesus ; the statue of Jupiter
 ——— m. *Ephèse ——— f. ———*
 Olympus, by Phidias ; and the colossus at Rhodes.
Olympien ——— colosse m. de ———

The preposition *EN* serves to mark the relations of *place, time, situation*, etc., and is variously expressed in English.

1. *place* ; as, *voyager en Allemagne*, to travel in Germany ; *aller en Italie*, to go to Italy.
2. *time* ; as, *en hiver*, in winter ; *en temps de paix*, in time of peace.
3. *situation, manner* ; as, *être en bonne santé*, to be in good health ; *agir en maître*, to act as a master.

REMARK.—The noun which follows *en* seldom admits of the article, whereas the noun which comes after *dans* is generally preceded by the article.

EXERCISE CXVII.

²(The same prejudices) ¹(are found) in Europe, in Asia, in Africa, and even in America.—I have travelled in England, *préjugé m. on trouve* — *jusqu' Amérique*

Scotland, and Ireland.—Queen Elizabeth was born *pr. Ecosse* pr. *Irlande* art. *Elisabeth naître* ind-3 in 1533, and died in 1603.—Narcissus was metamorphosed *ind-3 Narcisse* ind-3 *métamorphosé* into a flower.—He has acted, on this occasion, like a great *agir dans* — f. *

man. — Conscience warns us as a friend before punishing *man. — art. — f. avertir* * *de* inf-1 us as a judge.

*

CHAPTER VIII. OF THE CONJUNCTION.

The *Conjunction* is an invariable part of speech, which serves to connect words or sentences. When I say :

Travaillons, si nous voulons acquérir des talents, CAR le temps s'enfuit, ET persuadons-nous bien qu'il ne revient plus.

Let us work, if we wish to possess acquirements, for time flies, and let us never forget that it returns no more.

In this phrase the words *si*, if, *car*, for, *et*, and, *que*, that, are conjunctions, as they serve to unite the different parts of the sentence.

Some conjunctions are *simple*, that is, they consist of a single word ; as, *ou*, or ; *mais*, but ; others are *compound*, that is, composed of two or more words, and are generally called, in French, *locutions conjonctives* ; such are, *au reste*, besides ; *à moins que*, unless.

Dumarsais and other grammarians reckon as many sorts of conjunctions as there are ways in which the sentence is affected by them, but as these properties are common to both languages, we shall content ourselves with giving here a list of the conjunctions most in use in the French language.

TABLE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Afin de,	<i>to, in order to.</i>	ni,	<i>nor, neither.</i>
afin que,	<i>that, in order that.</i>	or,	<i>now, then.</i>
ainsi,	<i>so, thus.</i>	ou,	<i>or.</i>
car,	<i>for.</i>	ou bien,	<i>or else.</i>
cependant,	<i>however, yet.</i>	parce que,	<i>because.</i>
c'est-à-dire,	<i>that is to say.</i>	pendant que,	<i>while, whilst.</i>
comme,	<i>as.</i>	pourtant,	<i>however, yet.</i>
d'ailleurs,	<i>besides.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided that.</i>
de plus,	<i>moreover.</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
de sorte que,	<i>so that.</i>	quand,	<i>though, although.</i>
donc,	<i>then, therefore.</i>	que,	<i>that.</i>
et,	<i>and.</i>	quoique,	<i>though, although.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till, until.</i>	savoir,	<i>namely, to wit, viz.</i>
lorsque,	<i>when.</i>	si,	<i>if.</i>
mais,	<i>but.</i>	sinon,	<i>if not, or else.</i>
néanmoins,	<i>nevertheless.</i>	soit,	<i>whether.</i>

EXERCISE CXVIII.

I have brought this book *in order to* consult it.—To listen
Ecouter
 with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to cherish
 * *médisant* m. * *lui c' réchauffer*
 the serpent that stings, *in order that* he may sting more
 — m. *piquer*
 effectually.—David was a king *and* a prophet.—All the
sûrement — ind-2 *
 evils are (long ago) out of the box of Pandora, *but*
mal m. *depuis longtemps hors* *boîte* f.
 hope is yet within. — The compass was not
 art. *encore dedans* *boussole* f. n' ind-4 *point*
 invented by a mariner, *nor* the telescope by an astronomer,
trouvée *marin* m. *télescope* m.
nor the microscope by a (natural philosopher), *nor* printing
 — m. *physicien* m. art. *imprimerief.*
 by a literary character, *nor* gunpowder by a military man.
homme de lettres art. *poudre à canon* f. *

EXERCISE CXIX.

Which of the two was most intrepid, Caesar or Alex-
 ind-3 *le*
 ander?—The memory of Henry IV. is *and* always will be
Henri
 dear to the French, *because* he placed his glory *and*
 pl. *mettre* ind-2 pron.
 happiness in rendering his people happy.—*Provided* you
 à inf-1 *qu'on*
 know the ruling passion of one, you are sure to
sache ²*dominant* } — f. *quelqu'un on assuré de*
 please him. — The Gauls worshipped Apollo, Minerva,
lui *Gaulois adorer* ind-2 *Apollon*
 Jupiter, *and* Mars; they believed *that* Apollo kept off
 — ind-2 *chasser* ind-2
 diseases; *that* Minerva presided over works; *that*
 art. *maladie* f. ind-2 *à* art. *travail* m.
 Jupiter was the sovereign of heaven; *and* Mars the arbiter
 ind-2 art. pl.
 of war.
 art.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

THE *Interjection* is a word which serves to express some sudden emotion of the mind.

The interjections most commonly used in French, are :—

I. For Joy.

Ah ! ah !
bon ! well !

II. For Grief and Pain.

Ah ! ah !
aïe ! ay !
ahi ! oh dear !
hélas ! alas !

III. For Fear.

Ah ! Ah !
hé ! oh !

IV. For Aversion, Contempt, and Disgust.

Fi ! fy !
fi donc ! fy ! fy !

V. For Derision.

Oh ! oh !
hé ! hah !
zest ! pshaw !

VI. For Surprise.

Oh ! oh !
ha ! ha !

VII. For Admiration.

Oh ! oh !
ah ! ha !

VIII. For Silence.

Chut ! hush !
st ! hist !

IX. For Encouraging.

Çà ! }
oh ça ! } come on !

X. For Warning.

Gare ! take care !
holà ! hold !
hem ! hem !
oh ! oh !

XI. For Calling.

Holà ! holla !
hé ! soho !

XII. *Ô* (with a circumflex accent) is an interjection which serves to express various emotions of the mind ; it is seldom used but in conjunction with a substantive.

Although several of the preceding interjections are the same for different emotions, yet they vary much in the utterance.

We must also consider as interjections certain words and phrases that are not so in their nature, but which become such when expressed with emotion, and in an unconnected manner ; as, *paix !* peace ! *courage !* cheer up ! *tout beau !* softly ! Such are also many words used by the great dramatist *Molière* ; as, *morbleu ! parbleu ! corbleu !* and an infinity of other similar expressions.

EXERCISE CXX.

Ah ! how glad I am to see you !—*Ah !* the cowards,
que ²*qise* ¹ *de* *lâche*
 exclaimed Pompey. —*Ay !* you hurt me !—*Alas !* I have
s'écrier Pompée *blessé*
 lost (everything). —*Ha !* you (are there). —*Oh, oh !* I
tout *voilà*
 thought the contrary.—*Hush !* some one is coming.—
croire ind-2 *quelqu'un*
Holla ! who is there ?—*O* my son ! adore God.—*O* supreme
là ?
 pleasure to practise virtue !—Come, my friends, cheer up !
de pratiquer art. *Allons*

END OF PART I.

PART II.

OF SYNTAX.

THE word *Syntax* comes from a Greek word which means *arrangement, construction*. *Syntax* teaches the regular construction of the different parts of speech, conformably to the rules of grammar, and the genius of a language.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ARTICLE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLE.—The article is to be used, in French, before all substantives common, taken *in a determinate sense*, unless there be another word performing the same office; but it is not to be used before those that are taken *in an indeterminate sense*.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS TO BE USED.

RULE I. The article is used, in French, before all substantives taken in a general sense, or in the whole extent of their signification, although not used in English in such cases; as,

L' homme est mortel.		<i>Man is mortal.</i>
LA guerre est le fléau du genre humain.		<i>War is the scourge of mankind.</i>

Man is here taken in its widest sense for all mankind, and *War* is taken for war in general, and not for any particular war.

EXERCISE CXXI.

Man was born for *society*.—*Liberty* is the natural state of
 est né 1'état m.
man.—*Kings* are men (as well as) others.—*Heroes* have
 comme les autres héros
 their moments of fear, and *cowards* their brave moments.
 crainte lâche 2de bravoure 1
 —*Children* owe respect to their masters.—*Fear* and *ignorance*
 doivent maitre
 are the sources of *superstition*.—*Interest* is the (touchstone)
 — f. intérêt m. pierre de touche f.
 of *friendship*.—*Honour* is badly guarded, when *religion* is
 honneur h m. mal gardé lorsque
 not at the out-posts.
 avant-postes

EXERCISE CXXII.

Bread is the staff of *life*.—*Necessity* is the mother of
 soutien m. f.
invention.—*Custom* is the legislator of *languages*.—*Success*
 usage m. législateur m. langue f. succès m.
 repays us for all our troubles.—There is nothing that *man* gives
 paie de peine f. Il que
 so liberally as *counsel*.—*Inoculation* passed from
 aussi libéralement que conseil pl. — f. passer ind-3
 Constantinople to London in 1721, and to Paris in 1755.—
 à en
 The *Persians* who worshipped *fire*, and the *Egyptians* who
 Perse qui adorer ind-2 Egyptien
 worshipped *crocodiles*, were idolaters.
 — m. ind-2 idolâtre

RULE II. The article is used in both languages before substantives denoting a particular thing or object, one particular individual or class; as,

LA terre tourne autour du soleil, et	The earth turns round the sun, and
LA lune tourne autour de la terre.	
L'homme dont vous parlez, est un	
de mes amis.	the moon turns round the earth. The man of whom you speak is a friend of mine.

EXERCISE CXXIII.

The diseases of the mind are more difficult to cure than
maladie f. âme f. difficile guérir que
those of the body.—The empire of Alexander was divided
— m. ind-3 partagé
among his generals.—The Parthenon was in the citadel of
entre Parthénon m. ind-2 citadelle f.
Athens.—The city of Rome was founded 753 years before
Athènes ville f. a été fondé an m.
Jesus Christ.—Fabius was appointed dictator in the war
Jésus-Christ — ind-3 nommé dictateur
against Hannibal.—The Roman empire extended from the
Annibal s'étendait depuis
Western Ocean to the Euphrates.—(According to)
occidental¹ Océan m. jusqu'à Euphrate Selon
the poets, the car of Venus was drawn by doves.
poète m. char m. Vénus ind-2 attelé de colombe f.

EXERCISE CXXIV.

The birth of JESUS CHRIST is the era of the Christians,
naissance f. ère f.
and the flight of Mahomet is that of the Mahometans,
fuite f. mahométan
commonly called the hegira.—The first year of the
ordinairement¹ appelée hégire h m. année f.
hegira corresponds to the year 622 of JESUS CHRIST.—In the
répond De
time of Philip the Fair,† there were only the dukes, the
Philippe-le-Bel il n'y avait que duc
counts, and the barons whose ladies had the right to
comte — dont art. femme eussent droit m. de
(treat themselves) with four gowns a year.—The invention
*se donner * robe f. par an — f.*
of the barometer is due to Pascal.
baromètre m. —

† Ascended the throne in 1285 ; died in 1314.

RULE III. The article is used, in French, before the names of arts, sciences, virtues, vices, metals; and also before adjectives, infinitives, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, used substantively; as,

L'ivrognerie est un vice affreux.
Le vert plait aux yeux.
Le savoir a son prix.

*Drunkenness is a dreadful vice.
Green pleases the eye.
Knowledge has its value.*

N.B.—Adjectives, verbs, adverbs, etc., used substantively are masculine in French.

EXERCISE CXXV.

Before we study navigation and fortification, we must
Avant d' étudier — f — f. il faut
know mathematics.—Grammar teaches to speak correctly,
savoir mathématiques pl. apprendre à correctement
rhetoric to speak elegantly.—Chronology and geography
rhétorique f. élégamment chronologie f. géographie f.
are the eyes of history.—Faith, hope, and charity are
yeux art. foi f. espérance f. des
cardinal virtues.—Intemperance and idleness are the two
2théologale 1
most dangerous enemies of life.—The principal metals are .
plus ennemi m. art. f.
gold, silver, copper, tin, iron, and lead.—He
or m. argent m. cuivre m. étain m. fer m. plomb m.
knows Latin and French.—I (am fond of) blue.—Eating,
savoir aime bleu manger
drinking, and sleeping, are necessary to man.
boire dormir art.

RULE IV. The article is put before proper names of countries, provinces, islands, mountains, rivers, and winds; but countries having the same name as their capitals dispense with the article; as,

La France et L'Angleterre sont deux états puissants. *France and England are two powerful states.*
Naples est un pays délicieux. *Naples is a delightful country.*

EXERCISE CXXVI.

Europe contains the following states: on the north,
contenir ²*suiuant* ¹*état* m. à *nord* m.
Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Russia, and the *British*
Norvège f. *Suède* f. *Danemark* m. *Russief.* ²*Britanniques*
Islands; in the middle, *France, Belgium, Holland,*
¹*îles* à *milieu* m. — m. *Belgique* f. *Hollandef.*
Germany or the (German States), *Prussia, Poland,*
Allemañef. * *Confédération germanique, Prusse* f. *Pologne* f.
Hungary, Austria, and Switzerland; on the south,
Hongrie f. *h asp. Autriche* f. *Suisse* f. à *midim.*
Spain, Portugal, Italy, Greece, and Turkey in *Europe.*
Espagne f. — m. *Italie* f. *Grèce* f. *Turquief.* d'
 — *Lapland* is the country of the rein-deer. — *Burgundy*
Laponie f. *patrie.* *renne* m. *Bourgogne* f.
 produces excellent wine. — *Sicily* is the granary of *Italy.*
produire d' *Sicile* f. *grenier* m.

EXERCISE CXXVII.

France is separated from *Italy* by the *Alps,* and from
séparé *Alpes* f. pl.
Spain by the *Pyrenees.* — The principal rivers of *Europe*
Pyrénées f. pl. *fleuve* m.
 are: the *Volga, the Dnieper* or *Boristhenes, the Don* or
 — m. *Dniéper* m. *Boristhène* — m.
Tanaïs, in *Russia;* the *Danube, the Rhine,* and the *Elbe,*
 — en — m. *Rhin* m. — m.
 in *Germany;* the *Vistula,* in *Poland;* the *Loire, the Seine,*
Vistule f. — f. — f.
 the *Rhone,* and the *Garonne,* in *France;* the *Ebro, the*
Rhône m. — f. *Ebre* m.
Tagus, and the *Douro,* in *Spain;* the *Po,* and the *Tiber,*
Tage m. — m. *Pô* m. *Tibre* m.
 in *Italy;* the *Thames,* and the *Severn,* in *England;* and the
Tamise f. *Saverne* f.
Shannon, in *Ireland.* — The first pheasants came from the
 — m. *Irlande* *faisan* m. *sont venus*
 banks of the *Phasis,* a river of *Colchis.*
bord m. *Phase* m. * *fleuve* m. *Colchide*

EXCEPTIONS AND REMARKS.

1. The article is not used before the names of countries when they are preceded by the preposition *en*; as, *Demeurer en Angleterre*, to live in England; *Aller en Allemagne*, to go to Germany.

With the names of towns, the preposition *à*, and not *en*, is used; as, *Demeurer à Londres*, to live in London; *Être à Paris*, to be in Paris.

2. When the names of countries are governed by some preceding noun, and have the meaning of an adjective, they are used without the article; as, *roi d'Espagne*, king of Spain; *vins de France*, French wines; *laine d'Angleterre*, English wool.

3. The article is not used when we speak of countries as of places one comes or sets out from; as, *Il vient d'Italie*, he comes from Italy; *j'arrive de France*, I am just arrived from France. In this case, however, we use the article before the names of the five great divisions of the world; as, *je viens de l'Asie*, *il arrive de l'Amérique*.

4. The greater number of the names of countries out of Europe, always keep the article; therefore, instead of the prepositions *en* and *de*, used alone, as in the preceding cases, we employ the prepositions *à* and *de*, with the article; thus we say, *je vais au Japon* (and not *en Japon*), I am going to Japan; *j'arrive du Canada* (and not *de Canada*), I am just arrived from Canada.

EXERCISE CXXVIII.

In Norway they cover the houses with the bark of the
En on couvrir avec écorce f.
 birch-tree.—We intend going to Switzerland and
bouleau m. se proposer d' inf-1 en
Italy.—Three English miles are a little more than
2 d'Angleterre 1 mille m. font plus d'
 one French league.—My brother will soon return from
2 de France 1 lieue f. revenir
Russia.—I (set sail) from Holland, to go to the
partir ind-3 pour me rendre

Cape of Good Hope. — We had set off *from Africa*
Cap m. *Espérance f.* ind-2 *partir*
 when he arrived there. — He is gone *to China*. — Chocolate
 ind-3 *yt* *aller Chine f.* *chocolat m.*
 was brought *from Mexico* *into Europe* by the Spaniards.
 ind-3 *apporter Mexique m. en* *Espagno!*

RULE V. Substantives taken in a *partitive* sense, that is to say denoting only a *part* of a species, which is marked in English by the words *some* or *any*, sometimes expressed and oftener understood, must be preceded in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive.

EXAMPLES.

Donnez-moi <i>du</i> pain, <i>de la</i> viande, et <i>des</i> habits.	Give me some bread, meat, and clothes.
A-t-il <i>de l'</i> argent et <i>des</i> amis ?	Has he money and friends ?

Exception.—When a substantive taken in a *partitive* sense is preceded by an adjective, instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, the preposition *de* only is used ; as,

Donnez-moi <i>de</i> bon pain, <i>de</i> bonne viande, et <i>de</i> bons habits.	Give me some good bread, good meat, and good clothes.
---	--

(For farther explanation, see Rule 3, page 10, and the Remark, page 57.)

In these expressions : *des petits-pois*, *des petites raves*, *des petits-pâtés*, *des petits-mâtres*, *des jeunes gens*, etc., the substantives are so united with the adjectives, as to form but one and the same word, and take the article according to Rule V.

We must likewise say : *l'opinion DES anciens philosophes* ; *la suite DES grandes passions* ; *le propre DES belles actions*, etc., because, in expressions of this kind, the substantives are not taken in a *partitive* but in a *general* sense.

EXERCISE CXXIX.

I have bought *some* books.—Have you *any* change ? —
monnaie f.

† See *N.B.*, page 44.

Provence and Languedoc produce *oranges, olives, almonds,*
 — f. — m. *produire* — f. — f. *amande* f.
chestnuts, figs, peaches, apricots, and grapes.—I ask for
châtaigne f. *figue* f. *pêche* f. *abricot* m. *raisin* m.
 red *wine*, and you give me white. —To write well, one
 2 1 *du vin* *Pour* 2 1 *il*
 must have *good paper, good ink, and good pens.*—A great
faut *
 heart, said a king of Persia, receives *little presents* with one
cœur m. ind-2 *Perse* *d'*
 hand, and makes *large ones* with the other.—(He is always
en faire grand * *de* *On le voit tou-*
seen) with *wits* or *great lords.*
jours beaux-esprits grands-seigneurs.

RULE VI. The English make use of the indefinite article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number; but the French use the article *le, la*; as,

Un schelling L'aune.
 Six sous LA livre.
 Cinq schellings LE cent.

A shilling a yard.
 Sixpence a pound.
 Five shillings a hundred.

But, in speaking of time, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by *par*; as, so much *a-week, tant PAR semaine.*

A-head, is rendered by *par tête*;—so much each, *tant par personne*;—so much a lesson, *tant par leçon.*

EXERCISE CXXX.

Corn sells at seven shillings *a* bushel. —The best
 art. *blé* m. *se vend* * *boisseau* m.

French wines sell for ten shillings *a* bottle. —I
 2 *de France* 1 *se vendent* * *bouteille* f.

sell sugar at four guineas *a* (hundredweight), coffee
vends art. * *quintal* m. art.

at two shillings *a* pound, and tobacco at three pence
 * art. *tabac* m. * *sou* m.

an ounce.—How much *a* dozen? —(Here are) beautiful
once f. *douzaine* f. *Voici*

oysters at one shilling *a* hundred.—He gives him a hundred
huitre f. *

pounds *a* year; it is more than eight pounds *a* month.
livre sterling *c'* *de*

RULE VII. When the article is used before the first of a series of substantives, it must be repeated before each ; as,

Je vis hier *le* roi, *la* reine, et *les* | *I saw the king, queen, and princes,*
princes. | *yesterday.*

So you will not say: *les officiers et soldats ; le père et mère ; les frères et sœurs* ; but you will say: *les officiers et les soldats ; le père et la mère ; les frères et les sœurs.*

Notes.—This rule applies to the prepositions *à* and *de*, and to all the words which hold the place of the article. We must therefore say: *J'ai parlé à la reine et à la princesse*, I have spoken to the queen and the princess. *Son père et sa mère*, his father and mother.

EXERCISE CXXXI.

The gentleman and lady are gone.— Gold, silver,
monsieur *dame* *partis* art.
health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a man happy,
santé f. *ne peuvent rendre l'*
without virtue.— Self-love and pride are
art. art. *amour-propre* m. *orgueil* m.
always the offspring of a weak mind. — Innocence of
partage m. *faible* *esprit* m. art. — f.
manners, sincerity, and abhorrence of vice
art. *mœurs* pl. *horreur* h m. art. — m.
inhabit this happy region. — Poetry, painting, and
habiter *région* f. art. *poésie* f. *peinture* f.
music are (sister arts).—The love for one's father and
musique f. *sœurs* *amour* m. *son*
mother is the basis of every virtue.
base f. *tout* art. pl.

RULE VIII. When two adjectives are united by the conjunction *et* (and), and one of them is intended to qualify a substantive expressed and the other a substantive understood, the article must be repeated, in French, before each adjective ; as,

L'histoire ancienne et LA moderne. | *Ancient and modern history.*
Le premier et LE second étage. | *The first and the second floor.*
Les philosophes anciens et LES mo- | *Ancient and modern philosophers.*
dernes.

There are *two histories, two floors, philosophers* both ancient and modern ; the one expressed, the other understood ; therefore the article must be repeated

Observe that the substantive is not put in the plural: *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne, le premier et le second étage*, because these phrases are elliptical, and stand for *l'histoire ancienne et l'histoire moderne, le premier étage et le second étage*.

But, when the adjectives united by *et* (and), qualify one and the same substantive, in such a manner that no other can be understood, the article is not to be repeated ; so we say with the modern grammarians : *Le sage et pieux Fénelon*, the wise and pious Fénelon ; and with Boileau :

Le doux et tendre ouvrage—(The sweet and tender work)—

because it is the same person that is wise and pious, and the same work which is sweet and tender.

Note.—This rule upon the repetition, or non-repetition of the Article, applies also to *mon, ton, son, leur, ce, cet, un, une*, etc.

EXERCISE CXXXII.

The first *and* the second volume.—The first *and* the fourth — m.

class.—The fifteenth *and* the sixteenth century were marked
- *classe* f. *siècle* m. ind-4 *marqué*

by great discoveries.—The faults of Peter the Great
† *découverte* f. *défaut* m. *Pierre*

tarnished his great *and* admirable qualities.—Can anyone
ternir ind-4 *qualité* f. *Peut-on*

contemplate the heavens, without being convinced that
contempler *ciel* m. sing. inf-1 *convaincre*

the universe is governed by a supreme *and* divine Intelligence?
gouverner — f.

—Homer has described men such as they were with *their*
: *Homère* *peindre* *tel* *qu'* ind-2

good *and* bad qualities.
qualité f.

† See *Exception* to Rule V., page 189.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED.

RULE I. The article is omitted before substantives, when in using them, nothing is said as to the extent of their signification.

EXAMPLES.

Un tyran n'a ni parents ni amis.	<i>A tyrant has neither relations nor friends.</i>
Les chemins sont bordés de lauriers, de grenadiers, de jasmins, et d'autres arbres toujours verts et toujours fleuris. — (Fénelon.)	<i>The highways are bordered with laurels, pomegranates, jessamines, and other trees which are always green, and always in bloom.</i>

It follows from this rule that the article is not used before substantives :—

1. When they are in the form of a title or an address ; as,	
OBSERVATIONS SUR l'état de l'Europe.	<i>Observations on the situation of Europe.</i>
Il demeure RUE Piccadilly, QUARTIER Saint-James.	<i>He lives in Piccadilly, St. James's.</i>

2. When they are governed by the preposition *en* ; as,

Être <i>en ville</i> .	<i>To be in town.</i>
Vivre <i>en prince</i> .	<i>To live like a prince.</i>

3. When they are used as an apostrophe or interjection ; as,

Courage, soldats, tenez ferme ! | *Courage, soldiers, stand firm !*

We say, however, to a person whom we do not know, and with whom we are on no ceremony : *Ecoutez, l'homme !* Hark ye, my man !—*La fille, arrêtez !* Stop, girl ! etc.—(*Dict. de l'Elocution Française.*)

No article is used, but simply the preposition *de*, after the words *sorte*, *genre*, *espèce*, *mélange*, and such like ; as, *une sorte DE fruit*, a kind of fruit.

EXERCISE CXXXIII.

(We see there) neither *marble*, nor *columns*, nor *pictures* nor
On n'y voit *marbre* *colonne* *tableau*
statues.—The fleets of Solomon, under the conduct of the
flotte f. *Salomon* *conduite f.*
 Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and
Phénicien ind-2 — m. *terre f.* —
 Tharsis, in Ethiopia, whence they returned at the end
de — en *d'où* *revenir* ind-2 *bout m*

of three years, laden with *gold, silver, ivory, precious*
*chargé deivoire m.*²
*stones, and other kinds*¹ of merchandise. —I will pay you *in*
espèce f. marchandises *en*
 gold.—He lived and died *like a philosopher*. — Come,
vivre ind-3 ind-3 Allons
children, work.—That *kind* of work does not please
genre m. ouvrage plaire
 (everybody).
à tout le monde

RULE II. No article is used before proper names of deities, persons, animals, towns, and particular places.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Dieu est tout-puissant.</i>	<i>God is all-powerful.</i>
<i>Jupiter et Vénus étaient des divinités païennes.</i>	<i>Jupiter and Venus were heathen divinities.</i>
<i>Edimbourg est une belle ville.</i>	<i>Edinburgh is a fine city.</i>

Some proper names of towns and particular places always keep the article as an inseparable part of the name ; as, *La Rochelle, La Flèche, la Haye, le Caire, la Mecque*, etc.

Proper names, however, take the article, when used in a particular sense, or to denote an individual distinction ; as,

<i>Le Dieu des Chrétiens.</i>	<i>The God of the Christians.</i>
<i>Le Jupiter d'Homère.</i>	<i>Homer's Jupiter.</i>
<i>La Vénus de Médicis.</i>	<i>The Venus de' Medici.</i>

Observation.—In imitation of the Italians, the French use the article before the names of several celebrated Italian poets and painters, the word *poète* or *peintre* being then understood ; as, *le Dante, le Tasse, l'Arioste, le Titien, le Guide*. However, we say *Pétrarque, Boccace, Michel-Ange, Raphaël*, etc. ; it is usage that decides here, as in a thousand other cases.

EXERCISE CXXXIV.

God said : let there be light, and there was light.—*The*
ind-3 que la lumière soit, * *ind-3*¹
God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, was the only true God.
ind-2 seul vrai
 —*Plato, Aristotle, Homer, Demosthenes, Cicero, Virgil, and*
Platon, Aristote, Démosthène, Cicéron, Virgile,

Livy, are classical authors.—*Achilles* is the hero
Tite-Live, des "classique" ¹ *Achille héros* h asp.
 of the *Iliad*; *Aeneas* is the hero of the *Eneid*.—*Helen* was
Iliade f. Enée *Enéide f. Hélène* ind-4
 the ruin of *Troy*.—*Bucephalus* (would carry none but) *Alexan-*
Troie Bucéphale ne voulait porter qu'
der.—*Carthage* was the rival of *Rome*.—*Dante, Tasso, and*
ind-2 rivale f.
Ariosto, hold the first rank among the Italian poets.
tenir rang m. parmi ² ¹

RULE III. The article is not used, in French, before the ordinal numbers *first, second, third, fourth*, etc., when they come after the name of a sovereign, or after the words *book, chapter*, or such like; as,

Edouard premier.
 Richard trois.
 Livre premier.
 Chapitre second.

Edward the first.
 Richard the third.
 Book the first.
 Chapter the second.

Observe that in French, we make use of the *cardinal* numbers instead of the *ordinal*, in speaking of sovereigns, with the exception of the *first* of the series. With the *second*, it is optional to use *deux* or *second*, for we say indifferently *Henri deux* or *Henri second*.—(*Acad., Girault-Duvivier*, etc.)

(For further remarks, see pages 28-29.)

The cardinal or ordinal numbers are indifferently used, the *first* excepted, after the words *livre, chapitre, page*, or such like. We say *livre premier, section première*, and not *livre un, section une*. But we say either *livre huit* or *huitième*; *chapitre dix* or *dixième*; *page trois* or *troisième*: *tome second* or *tome deux*, etc.—(*Acad.*)

EXERCISE CXXXV.

Pope Leo the tenth and Luther were cotermporaries. —
 art. *pape Léon* — *contemporain*

William the third, king of England, married the princess
Guillaume épouser ind-3

Mary, daughter of James the second, and granddaughter of
Marie Jacques petite-fille

Charles *the first*.—Louis *the eleventh* had a Scotch guard.—
ind-2 ^{écossais} ^{garde} f.

Louis *the fifteenth* was great grandson of Louis *the fourteenth*.
ind-2 ^{arrière-petit-fils}

—Book *the sixth*, chapter *the fifth*. — Section *the seventh*,
— f.

rule *the fourth*, page *the ninth*.
règle f.

RULE IV. No article is used before substantives preceded by any of the possessive, demonstrative, or indefinite adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain, plusieurs, tel*, nor before those which are preceded by a cardinal number; as,

<i>Mon frère et ma sœur apprennent la géographie.</i>	<i>My brother and sister are learning geography.</i>
<i>Cette montre est bonne; donnez-la à votre sœur.</i>	<i>This watch is good; give it to your sister.</i>
<i>Tout homme peut mentir, mais tout homme ne ment pas.</i>	<i>Every man can lie, but every man does not lie.</i>
<i>J'ai trois chevaux.</i>	<i>I have three horses.</i>

(See Observations, page 36, and Rule, page 38.)

EXERCISE CXXXVI.

It is *my* turn to speak.—Give me the number of *his*
C' à tour m. à *numéro* m.

house.—The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, and *its*
f. — f. *en*

mouth at Havre-de Grâce.—All the husbands were at
embouchure f. *au* *mari* ind-2

the ball with *their* wives.—*These* ladies (are waiting for)
bal m. *femme* *dame* *attendent*

their carriages.—Those *two* boys have lost *their* hats.—The
voiture f.

Saracens occupied Spain during *several* centuries.—The
Sarrasins ont occupé *pendant* *siècle* m.

city of Troy sustained a siege of *ten* years.—The pound
ville f. *Troie soutint* *an* m.

sterling (is worth) about *twenty-five* francs.
vaut environ

RULE V. The indefinite article, *a* or *an*, used in English, before nouns expressing *title, profession, trade, country*, or any attribute of the noun preceding, is omitted in French ; as,

Le duc d'York, prince du sang.

The Duke of York, a prince of the blood.

Je suis médecin.

I am a physician.

Il est libraire.

He is a bookseller.

Êtes-vous Français?

Are you a Frenchman?

Je viens de Caen, ville de Normandie.

I come from Caen, a town of Normandy.

But, when an adjective is joined to the noun, or when it is specified by some circumstance, then *a* or *an* must be expressed in French ; as,

Je suis UN prince infortuné.

I am an unfortunate prince.

Je suis un Polonais d'une illustre maison.

I am a Pole of an illustrious family.

A or *an* is also expressed in French after *c'est*; as,

C'est UN évêque.

He is a bishop.

RULE VI. The English indefinite article *a* or *an*, is omitted in French, after *quel, quelle*, what, used as an exclamation; as,

Quel malheur !

What a misfortune!

Quelle beauté !

What a beauty!

Quelle belle maison !

What a beautiful house!

Quelle folie d'agir ainsi !

What a folly to act thus!

EXERCISE CXXXVII.

Napoleon was (at once) *an* emperor, *a* warrior, and *a*
ind-2 *à la fois* *guerrier*
statesman. — Socrates was *a* philosopher; Apelles, *a*
homme d'état *Socrate* ind-2 *Apelle*
painter; Phidias, *a* sculptor; Cicero, *an* orator; Livy, *an*
peintre — *Tite-Live*
historian; and Virgil, *a* poet. — His father was *a* barrister. —
historien *poète* ind-2 *avocat*
I am *an* Englishman, and *a* merchant. — The best coffee
négociant *café m.*
comes from Mocha, *a* town of Arabia Felix. — I am *an*
Moka *heureuse*

unhappy Spaniard, who seek an asylum, where I may
malheureux Espagnol cherche asile m. où puisse
 end my days in peace.—He is an officer.—What a noise
finir en C' officier bruit m.
 you make !—What a beautiful morning !
matinée f.

RULE VII. No article is used, but only the preposition *de*, after the following adverbs :

assez, enough.	moins, less, fewer.
autant, as much, as many.	pas or point, no.
beaucoup, much, very much,	peu, little, few.
many.	plus, more.
combien, } how much, how	rien, nothing.
que, } many.	tant, so much, so many.
jamais, never.	trop, too much, too many.

EXAMPLES.

Beaucoup DE nations.	Many nations.
Plus d'effets et moins DE paroles.	More deeds and fewer words.
Trop DE peine.	Too much trouble.

Bien, in the sense of *beaucoup*, is the only adverb of quantity which, besides the preposition *de*, requires the article ; as,

Elle a bien DE L'esprit.	She has a great deal of wit.
Il a bien DES amis.	He has many friends.

But, should the substantive that comes after the adverb be particularized by what follows, it requires the article ; as,

J'ai encore beaucoup DE L'argent que j'ai apporté de France.	I have still a good deal of the money which I brought from France.
---	--

EXERCISE CXXXVIII.

Enough money. — *Enough* friends. — The elephant has
éléphant
much intelligence.—For one Plato in opulence, *how many*
 — f. *dans* — f.
 Homers and Æsops in indigence ! — The honest man
Homères h m. Esopes dans — f. honnête

is esteemed, even by those who have *no* probity.—There is
estimé de pas Il n'y a
no church (that can be) compared to St. Peter's of Rome.
*point église qu'on puisse inf-l **
 — He has *few* friends. — Mothers have often *too much*
 †
 indulgence for their children. — Study presents *so many*
 — f. †étude f. offrir
 advantages that one cannot (give one's self up to it) with
avantage m. on ne saurait s'y livrer
too much ardour.

RULE VIII. No article is used before nouns joined to verbs with which they express but one idea, and form idiomatical expressions ; as,

Ajouter foi, <i>to give credit.</i>	Faire plaisir, <i>to do a favour.</i>
Avoir besoin, <i>to want, to be in need of.</i>	— semblant, <i>to pretend, to feign.</i>
— carte blanche, <i>to have full power.</i>	— tort, <i>to wrong.</i>
— chaud, <i>to be warm.</i>	— voile, <i>to set sail.</i>
— froid, <i>to be cold.</i>	Mettre fin, <i>to put an end.</i>
— compassion, <i>to commiserate.</i>	Parler allemand, <i>to speak German.</i>
— dessein, <i>to intend.</i>	— anglais, <i>to speak English.</i>
— envie, <i>to wish.</i>	— français, <i>to speak French.</i>
— faim, <i>to be hungry.</i>	Porter bonheur, <i>to bring good luck.</i>
— soif, <i>to be thirsty.</i>	— malheur, <i>to bring bad luck.</i>
— honte, <i>to be ashamed.</i>	— envie, <i>to bear envy.</i>
— patience, <i>to have patience.</i>	Prendre courage, <i>to take courage, to cheer up.</i>
— peur, <i>to be afraid.</i>	— garde, <i>to take care.</i>
— pitié, <i>to pity.</i>	— jour, <i>to appoint a day.</i>
— raison, <i>to be in the right.</i>	— patience, <i>to take patience, to bear or wait patiently.</i>
— tort, <i>to be in the wrong.</i>	— plaisir, <i>to delight.</i>
— soin, <i>to have care.</i>	— racine, <i>to take root.</i>
Donner carte blanche, <i>to give full power.</i>	Rendre visite, <i>to pay a visit.</i>
Faire attention, <i>to attend, to mind.</i>	Tenir tête, <i>to cope with one, to oppose.</i>
— peur, <i>to frighten.</i>	

† See Rule I., page 183.

REMARK.—The article is sometimes omitted before substantives, in order to render the language more striking and expressive. When we say, *Pauvreté n'est pas vice; Contentement passe richesse*, we express ourselves with more life than if we were to say, *La pauvreté n'est pas un vice; Le contentement passe la richesse*. See also this phrase of FLECHIER: *Citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, peuples, rois, empereurs, le plaignent et le révèrent*. It has much more liveliness, energy, and grace, than it would have by re-establishing the articles: *Les citoyens, les étrangers, etc., le plaignent et le révèrent*.

EXERCISE CXXXIX.

I want a hat.—We intend to travel.—We must always
d' de Il faut
 pity the unfortunate.—I (do not know) who is in the wrong.
de malheureux pl. ne sais qui
 —The king has given full power to that general.—That man
général
 pretends to sleep.—The night put an end to the battle.—
de ind-3 combat m.
 Take care of yourself.—He will come in a moment, have
à vous ind-7 dans prendre
 patience.—Towers, spires, trees, flocks, huts, houses,
Tour f. clocher m. troupeau m. cabane f.
 palaces, (everything) was (swallowed up) by the waves of
tout ind-3 englouti flot m.
 the sea.
mer f. .

CHAPTER II.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

§ I. FUNCTIONS OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

THE Substantive is either the subject of the verb, or is governed by the verb, in which case it is called the regimen.

In this phrase: *la mère aime ses enfants*, the mother loves her children; *la mère* is the subject, or nominative case; and *enfants* is the regimen, object, or accusative case. *Ses enfants* is also called the *regimen direct*, because there is no preposition intervening between it and the verb *aime*.

In *les enfants obéissent à la mère*, the children obey the mother; *les enfants* is the subject, and *à la mère* is the regimen; and this regimen is called *indirect* because it has a preposition (*à*) before it.

§ II. OF THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

We have already said (page 5) that the French language has but two genders, the masculine and the feminine.

The masculine gender expresses the male kind, and the feminine gender denotes the female kind.

The French language has no neuter; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine.

Generally speaking, French substantives have but one gender; a few of them, however, are masculine in one signification, and feminine in another. The following are those most in use:

AIGLE (eagle) is feminine in the sense of a standard, an ensign in war; *l'aigle ROMAINE*, *l'aigle IMPÉRIALE*.

In every other sense it is masculine : *Aigle NOIR* ; *aigle ROYAL* ; *l'aire D'UN aigle*. *C'est UN aigle*, in speaking of a man of genius, of superior talent.

COUPLE is feminine when it means a brace, two of a sort ; as, *UNE couple de perdrix* ; *UNE couple d'œufs*. It is masculine when speaking of a man and wife ; as, *Ce fut UN HEUREUX couple*.

ENFANT is masculine, when speaking of a boy : *c'est UN bon enfant* ; and feminine, when it is said of a girl : *voilà UNE belle enfant*.

GENS (people), requires all words preceding it and relating to it to be in the feminine, and all words following it to be in the masculine : *les VIEILLES gens sont SOUPÇONNEUX* ; *TOUTES les MÉCHANTES gens*. However, instead of *toutes*, *tous* is employed, 1st, When that adjective is the only one that precedes the substantive *gens* : *TOUS les gens qui raisonnent* ; *TOUS les gens pieux*. 2dly, When *gens* is preceded by an adjective which has only one and the same termination for both genders, such as *aimable*, *brave*, *honnête*, etc. ; *TOUS les honnêtes gens* ; *TOUS les habiles gens*.—(*Acad.*)

LIVRE, *masc.* a book ; *fem.* a pound.

MANCHE, *masc.* the handle of a tool ; *fem.* a sleeve, the English Channel.

MÉMOIRE, *masc.* a memoir, a bill ; *fem.* the memory.

MOUSSE, *masc.* a young apprentice sailor ; *fem.* moss, froth.

PAGE, *masc.* a page, an attendant ; *fem.* the page of a book.

PERSONNE (nobody, a person), see pages 46 and 47.

PIQUE, *masc.* spade at cards ; *fem.* a pike, or long lance.

QUELQUE CHOSE is masculine, when it signifies something : *Quelque chose m'a été DIT* ; *quelque chose de MERVEILLEUX*. It is feminine, when it means whatever thing : *Quelque chose qu'il ait DITE*, etc.—(*Acad.*)

Observe that when *Quelque chose* (something), is immediately followed by an adjective, it takes the preposition *de* before that adjective ; as, *Quelque chose DE curieux*, something curious.—(*Acad.*)

§ III. OF NUMBER IN SUBSTANTIVES.

Although there be plurality in the idea, certain French substantives do not take the mark of the plural; these are :

1. Proper names; as, *l'Espagne s'honore d'avoir eu naître les deux SÉNÈQUE. Les deux CORNEILLE sont nés à Rouen.* Except when they are used as *common nouns*, that is to say, to designate individuals similar to those whose name is employed; as, *la France a eu ses CÉSARS et ses POMPÉES*; that is, generals such as Cæsar and Pompey. *Les Corneilles et les Miltons sont rares*; that is, poets such as CORNEILLE and MILTON.

REMARK.—It sometimes happens that poets and orators place the article *les* before proper names which designate but one individual. This is an irregularity, or at least a license, which can only be tolerated when productive of a fine effect, as in the following phrase of *Voltaire* :

Il manque à CAMPISTRON ces expressions heureuses qui font l'âme de la poésie et le mérite des HOMÈRE, des VIRGILE, des TASSE, des MILTON, des POPE, des CORNEILLE, des RACINE, des BOILEAU.

You discover that there is unity in the idea when the sense permits to suppress the article *les* : here we might say : *le mérite d'Homère, de Virgile, etc.*

The English do not hesitate to add an *s* to proper names when used in the plural. We read in HUMPHREY : "Some of the most considerable among the Scotch, as well as almost all the English barons, were of French origin. It is difficult to account for the settlement of so many French families in Scotland, the *Bruces, Baliols, St. Clairs, Montgomeries, Somervilles, Gordons, Frasers, Cummins, Colvilles, Moubrays, Hays, Maules.*" And, in BOURN's Chronological Exercises : "the first *threes Edwards*; the first *three Georges.*"

To contrast the usage of the two languages on this point, we shall conclude by giving the French rule of the justly celebrated grammarian M. GIRAULT-DUVIVIER : "With the exception of the case in which we employ a proper name in place of a common noun, a proper name cannot

take the mark of the plural, even if it should designate several persons bearing the same name ; consequently, we must write : les *Montmorenci*, les *deux Tarquin*, les *deux Caton*, les *trois Guillaume*, etc., without the sign of the plural."

This opinion is conformable to that of *Beauzée*, *Wailly*, *M. Jacquemard*, *M. Boniface*, and several other Grammarians ; also to that of *Voltaire*, *J. J. Rousseau*, *Marmontel*, *M. Raynouard*, etc.

2. Words taken from the Latin, or from any foreign language, and which have not yet been naturalised by frequent use ; as,

des <i>alibi</i> .	des <i>post-scriptum</i> .
des <i>alinéa</i> .	des <i>quiproquo</i> .
des <i>auto-da-fé</i> .†	des <i>solo</i> .
des <i>duo</i> .	des <i>te-Deum</i> .
des <i>impromptu</i> .	des <i>vade-mecum</i> .

The French Academy write des *factums*, des *bravos*, des *opéras*, because these words are frequently used.

3. Words naturally invariable, and which are only accidentally employed as substantives ; such as, les *pourquoi*, les *car*, les *oui*, les *non*, les *on dit*, etc.

Les *si*, les *car*, les *pourquoi* sont la porte
Par où la noise entra dans l'univers.—(*La Fontaine*.)

EXERCISE CXLII.

Spain (is proud) of having produced Lucan, Martial, the
s'honore inf-1 Lucain, —
two Senecas, etc.—The Viscontis, dukes of Milan, had
Sénèque Visconti duc porter ind-2
a snake in their coat of arms.— Ciceros and Virgils
givre f. dans * * armes f. pl. art. art.
will always be scarce.—The mistakes of apothecaries
rare quiproquo m. apothicaire sing.
are very dangerous.—After the victory, they sung *Te Deums* in
très on ind-3
all the churches.—It was Cardinal Mazarin who introduced in
église f. C'est art. ind-3
France the taste for operas.
goût m. de art.

† *Auto-da-fé* ; three Spanish words, which signify, Act of Faith.

§ IV. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

Compound substantives which have not yet passed to the state of words, that is to say, whose distinct parts are connected by a hyphen, are written in the singular or in the plural, according as the nature and particular sense of the words of which they are composed require the one or the other number.† Such is the general principle, whose application will be facilitated by the following rules.

RULE I. When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural ; as,

<i>un petit-maitre,</i>	<i>a dandy,</i>	<i>pl. des petits-maitres.</i>
<i>une chauve-souris,</i>	<i>a bat,</i>	<i>... des chauves-souris.</i>
<i>une basse-cour,</i>	<i>a poultry-yard,</i>	<i>... des basses-cours.</i>

To this rule there are a few exceptions ; as, *UNE grand'mère*, plural *DES grand'mères*.

GRAND, without apostrophe, always agrees in gender and number with its substantive, but *GRAND'* is always invariable.

RULE II. When a compound word is formed of two substantives placed immediately one after the other, both take the mark of the plural ; as,

<i>un chef-lieu,</i>	<i>a county town,</i>	<i>pl. des chefs-lieux.</i>
<i>un chou-fleur,</i>	<i>a cauliflower,</i>	<i>... des choux-fleurs.</i>
<i>une dame-jeanne,</i>	<i>a large bottle,</i>	<i>... des dames-jeannes.</i>

The exceptions to this rule are but few, among which is *UN Hôtel-Dieu* (*un hôtel de Dieu*), a name given to the principal hospital of several towns in France, plural *DES Hôtels-Dieu*.

RULE III. When a compound word is formed of two substantives joined by a preposition, the first only takes the mark of the plural ; as,

<i>un arc-en-ciel,</i>	<i>a rainbow,</i>	<i>pl. des arcs-en-ciel.</i>
<i>un chef-d'œuvre,</i>	<i>a master-piece,</i>	<i>... des chefs-d'œuvre.</i>

† In compound nouns, the only words susceptible, by their nature, of taking the mark of the plural, are the *substantive* and the *adjective*.

Exceptions.—UN *tête-à-tête*, a conversation or interview between two persons; plural DES *tête-à-tête*. UN *coq-à-l'âne*, an unconnected, nonsensical speech, passing from one thing to another quite opposite, as from a *cock* to an *ass*, plural DES *coq-à-l'âne*.

EXERCISE CXLIII.

These two men are *brothers-in-law*.—I know his two
beau-frère
grandfathers.—There are in France eighty-six *capitals* of
grand-père *Y avoir* *chef-lieu* m.
departments.—*Rainbows* are formed by the reflection of the
sing. *art.* *réflexion* f.
 (rays of the sun) in the clouds. — In warm countries
rayons solaires dans nuage m. *Dans art.* ² *1pays* m.
²*silk-worms* ¹(are reared) upon (mulberry trees).—The
art. ver-à-soie m. *on élève sur de art. mûrier* m.
great nightshade (originally came) from Mexico. —He is
belle de nuit pl. *sont originaires Mexique* m. *
 always making *cock and bull stories*.
fait de art. coq-à-l'âne

RULE IV. When a compound word is formed of a substantive joined to a verb, a preposition, or an adverb, the substantive only takes the sign of the plural, if there be plurality in the idea. So we write with an *s* in the plural :

<i>un avant-coureur,</i>	<i>a forerunner,</i>	pl. <i>des avant-coueurs.</i>
<i>un contre-coup,</i>	<i>a counter-blow,</i>	... <i>des contre-coups.</i>
<i>une contre-danse,†</i>	<i>a country-dance,</i>	... <i>des contre-danses.</i>

But we write without an *s* in the plural, because the expressions are elliptical, and there is unity in the idea :

<i>Des réveille-matin</i> (clocks which <i>awake in the morning</i>),	} <i>alarm-clocks.</i>
<i>Des contre-poison</i> (remedies <i>against poison</i>),	
	} <i>counter-poisons.</i>

† On croit que ce mot est une altération de l'anglais, *country-dance* (danse de la contrée, de la campagne).

Finally, we write with an *s*, in the singular as well as in the plural, because there is always plurality in the idea :

un essuie-mains (that which } *a towel*, pl. *des essuie-mains*.
wipes the hands)
un porte-mouchettes (what } *A snuffers stand...des porte-mou-*
carries the snuffers), } *chettes*.

RULE V. When a compound substantive contains only such parts of speech as the *verb*, *preposition* or *adverb*, none of its components take the mark of the plural ; as,

un passe-passe, a sleight of hand, pl. *des passe-passe*.
un passe-partout, a master-key, a pass-key, ... *des passe-partout*.

EXERCISE CXLIV.

The Cossacks are generally the scouts of the
Cosaque ordinairement avant-coureur
Russian armies.—Rear-admirals are below vice-ad-
²*russe* ¹ *contre-amiral au-dessous de art. vice-ami-*
mirals.—Snow-drops bear flowers in the midst of
ral perce-neige f. porter de art. à milieu m.
the rigours of winter. —In time of war, the savages of
rigueur f. art. En sauvage m.

America are armed with tomahawks.—Gold is the surest
art. de casse-tête
of all *pass-keys*.—These (are mere) hearsays.
art. Ce ne sont que de art. oui-dire

§ V. THE KING'S PALACE ; THE QUEEN'S CROWN, ETC.

This form of the possessive or genitive case, is rendered in French in an inverted manner, the last word coming first, as if it were *the palace OF THE king*, *le palais DU roi* ; *the crown OF THE queen*, *la couronne DE LA reine*.

EXERCISE CXLV.

(Here are) Joséphine's gloves.—Where is Alfred's hat?—
Voici
My father's house.—The mayor's authority.—The king of
maison f. maire autorité

England's palaces. — The queen's presence of mind. —
esprit

Helen's beauty (was the cause of) Troy's destruction. —
Hélène h m. causa Troie

Have you read Milton's Paradise Lost? — Will you lend
Paradis m. Vouloir prêter
 me La Fontaine's Fables? — Are you going to Mrs. Bell's
 — f.

party?
soirée f.

§ VI. EAR-RINGS; DINING-ROOM; ETC.

These are a kind of compound words, the order of which is likewise inverted in French. *Boucles d'oreilles. Salle à manger.*

Here also, two different prepositions are used, *à* and *de*, the choice of which depends upon the nature of the expression.

De is used when *of, of the, made of, composed of, coming from*, can be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>The house-door, i.e. the door of the house.</i>	}	<i>La porte de la maison.</i>
<i>Chambermaid, i.e. maid of the chamber.</i>		
<i>Silk - stockings, i.e. stockings made of silk.</i>	}	<i>Bas de soie.</i>
<i>Madeira wine, i.e. wine coming from Madeira.</i>		
		<i>Vin de Madère.</i>

EXERCISE CXLVI.

The golden age is one of the (most agreeable) fictions
âge m. les plus agréables ¹ — f.
 of mythology. — He has bought a country-house. — He is a
art. campagne
 wine-merchant. — The garden-seat is broken. — My uncle has
marchand banc m.
 given me a gold watch, and a silver chain. — Do you like
chaîne f.

Newfoundland cod? — The English import a great quantity
Terre-Neuve morue f. *importer*

of *Malta oranges* and *Turkey figs.*
Malta *figue f.*

A is used in compound words, when *for*, *for the purpose of*, *by means of*, *with*, may be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Paper-mill</i> , i.e. mill <i>for the</i>	}	<i>Moulin à papier.</i>
<i>purpose of making paper.</i>		
<i>Steamboat</i> , i.e. boat moved <i>by</i>	}	<i>Bateau à vapeur.</i>
<i>means of steam.</i>		
<i>Three-thread stockings</i> , i.e.	}	<i>Bas à trois fils.</i>
<i>stockings with three threads.</i>		

Note.—Some compound words take the article besides the preposition *à*; as, *un pot au lait*, a milk-pot. In the following Exercise, when the article is required it has been pointed out.

EXERCISE CXLVII.

The inventor of *gunpowder* was a German monk, named
canon poudre f. ind-2 ² ¹*moine*
 Schwartz.—I have always *firearms* in my *bedroom*. — Give
coucher chambre f.
 me a *wine glass*, and a *soup spoon*. — The *haymarket*
verre m. *cuiller f.* *au foin marché m.*
 is on your left, and the *horsefair* is before you.—There
à gauche *aux pl. foire f.* *devant*
 are (a great many) *windmills* in France.—Honour to the in-
beaucoup de *Honneur*
 ventor of the *steam-engine*! — I like *rice soup*.
machine f. *au riz*

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ I. CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

GENERAL RULE.—The Adjective, in French, must be of the same gender and number as the noun or pronoun to which it relates, for which purpose it often changes its termination. In English, on the contrary, the adjective is never varied on account of gender or number.

EXAMPLES.

Le BON père.
La BONNE mère.
De BEAUX jardins.
De BELLES fleurs.

The GOOD father.
The GOOD mother.
FINE gardens.
FINE flowers.

Bon is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular.

Beaux is masculine plural, because *jardins* is masculine and plural; *belles* is feminine plural, because *fleurs* is feminine and plural.

(For the formation of the feminine and plural of adjectives, see pp. 14-19.)

EXERCISE CXLVIII.

The *formidable* empire which Alexander conquered, *avait conquis*
(did not last) longer than his life, which was very short.
ne dura pas plus longtemps f. ind-3 court
—The victory which Cæsar obtained on the plains
f. *remporter* ind-3 dans *plaine* f.
of Pharsalia was baneful to his country, pernicious to the
Pharsale ind-3 *funeste* pays m. *pernicieux*
14—2

Romans, and disastrous to mankind. — (It is believed)
Romain désastreux pour art. genre humain m. On croit
 that the first bayonets were made at Bayonne.—That
baïonnette f. ind-3 fabriquer
 custom is very ancient among us.—It is a mere evasion, for
coutume f. parmi C^o franc défaite f. car
 the thing is public.

1st REMARK.—When the adjectives *demi*, half, *nu*, bare, are placed *before* a substantive, and when the adjective *feu*, late, comes *before* the article or a pronominal adjective, they always remain invariable; as, *une DEMI-livre*, half-a-pound; *il va NU-pieds*, he goes bare-foot; *FEU la reine*, the late queen. But the agreement takes place, if *demi* and *nu* be placed *after* the substantive, and *feu* after the article or pronominal adjective; as, *une livre et demie*, one pound and a half; *il a les pieds nus*, his feet are bare; *la feuë reine*, the late queen; *ma feuë nièce*, my late niece.

Observation.—The adjective *demi*, placed after the substantive, never takes the mark of the plural; because it does not agree with the substantive which precedes, but with a substantive following, which is understood, and which is always of the singular number. This phrase: *Il a étudié quatre ans et demi*, he has studied four years and a half, is equivalent to this: *Il a étudié quatre ans et un demi an*, he has studied four years and one half year.

2d REMARK.—Adjectives used adverbially are invariable, that is to say, remain always in the masculine singular; as, *Ces dames parlant BAS*, those ladies speak low; *ces fleurs sentent BON*, these flowers smell well.

EXERCISE CXLIX.

An Irishman said to a Scotchman: Lend me three guineas.—
Irlandais ind-2 Ecosseis prêter guinée f.
 That is impossible, for I (only possess) half a guinea.—Well,
Cela car ne possède qu' *
 lend it me, and you will owe me two guineas and a
toujours devoir
 half.—They go bare-foot and bare-headed.—I have heard
tête f. ouï dire

your late sister say that her daughter and I were born the
 à ² ¹ * moi *naquimes*
 same year. —The late princess was universally regretted.—
année f. ind-3
 She sings (out of tune).—They spoke loud.
faux fem. ind-3 *haut*

BESIDES the general rule upon the agreement of the Adjective with the substantive which it qualifies, there are particular rules which it is indispensable to know, because they serve to explain the general rule.

I. An adjective referring to two or more substantives singular, of the same gender, must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender ; as,

Le riche et le pauvre sont <i>égaux</i> devant Dieu.	The rich and the poor are equal before God.
La rose et la tulipe sont <i>belles</i> .	The rose and the tulip are beautiful.

If the substantives are of *different* genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural ; as,

Ma sœur et mon frère sont <i>attentifs</i> .	My sister and brother are at- tentive.
Il a montré une prudence et un courage <i>étonnants</i> .	He has shown astonishing pru- dence and courage.

REMARK. — When the substantives are of *different* genders, and the adjective qualifying them has not the same termination for the masculine and feminine, the ear requires that the masculine substantive should be placed the last in French, that is to say, immediately before the adjective ; so it is better to say : *la bouche et les yeux OUVERTS*, than, *les yeux et la bouche OUVERTS*.

EXERCISE CL.

Pilpay and Confucius are very celebrated among the nations
célèbre parmi peuple m.
 of Asia.—Uprightness and piety are (very much) esteemed,
art. †droiture f. †piété f. très
 even by the wicked. — Ignorance and self-love are
même de méchant pl. †— f. †amour-propre m.

equally *presumptuous*.—The inhabitants of (Davis' Strait)
présomptueux *habitant* art. *détroit de Davis* m.
 eat their flesh and their fish *raw*.—The room and
 viande f. *poisson* m. *cru* *chambre* f.
 the closet are *open*, but the window and the drawer are
 cabinet m. *ouvert* *fenêtre* f. *tiroir* m.
shut,
fermé.

II. The Adjective placed after two or more substantives which are synonymous or nearly so, agrees with the last substantive only ; as,

Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation CONTINUELLE. (<i>Massillon</i> .)		<i>His whole life has been nothing but continual labour and occupation.</i>
--	--	---

In this case, there is really but one word to qualify, because there is only one and the same idea expressed, and it is with the last substantive that the agreement takes place, as striking the mind most.

III. When substantives are united by the conjunction *ou* (or), the adjective agrees with the last ; as,

Un courage ou une prudence ÉTONNANTE.		<i>An astonishing courage or prudence.</i>
---------------------------------------	--	--

That conjunction gives the exclusion to one of the substantives, and it is upon the last, as fixing the attention most, that the qualification falls.

REMARK.—When an adjective relates to two or more substantives, and is one of those that must absolutely be placed before the substantive, it is repeated, in French, before each substantive, and agrees with it ; as,

De GRANDS événements, et de GRANDES révolutions suivirent la mort de César.		<i>GREAT events and revolutions followed the death of Caesar.</i>
---	--	---

EXERCISE CII.

Our Queen honours literature with that attachment and
*les lettres de m. attachement * de*

patronage capable of ¹making ¹it flourish.—Birds
cette protection f. inf-1 †*les fleurir oiseau m.*
 build their nests with ³admirable ¹art and ²address.
*construire nid m. avec un art, * une adresse f.*
 —The demi-gods of the ancients were only men who
ancien m. ind-2 ne que des
 (had distinguished themselves) by ⁴extraordinary ¹valour ²or
s'étaient distingués une
³virtue.
une

† *Note.*—It is only when *les* is an *article*, that the contraction of *de les* into *des* takes place. The same rule applies to *de le*, and to *d le*, *d les*.

§ II. PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

Some Adjectives are placed before the noun, and some after it; others are either put before or after, according as taste or ear may require. However, it may be laid down as a rule that the French more generally place the Adjective after the noun.

ADJECTIVES WHICH ARE PLACED BEFORE THE NOUN.

1. *Adjectives* of one syllable, as *beau, bon, grand, gros*, etc., generally precede their substantive. We say, *un BEAU jardin, un BON ouvrage, un GRAND chapeau, un SAINT personnage*, etc.

2. *Plural Adjectives* generally unite harmoniously with substantives beginning with a vowel; as, *BRILLANTS atours*. It is the same with the *Adjectives* which, although singular, terminate with an *x* which is pronounced like an *s*; as, *HEUREUX artifice*, etc.

(See Remark 5th, page 218.)

EXERCISE CLII.

Have you seen the *beautiful lake* of Geneva?—The Loire
lac m. Genève
 is a *fine river*.—You arrive at a *good moment*.—The Turks
rivière f. le — m. Turc
 make *great use* of opium.—The *big fishes* eat th
un usage m. — gros poisson m.

little ones.—What a *holy* man father Bernard is !—
saint que art.
 He is an *old* soldier.—My *dear* friend, you are mistaken.—
C' vieux cher se méprendre
 He is in continual alarms.
Il dans de alarme f.

ADJECTIVES WHICH ARE PLACED AFTER THE NOUN.

The *Adjectives* which are placed after the substantive are :—

1st, *Adjectives* which express names of nations ; as, *Le gouvernement ANGLAIS*, the English government ; *La révolution FRANÇAISE*, the French revolution.

REMARK.—When the name of a nation is an *adjective*, it does not require a capital letter in French, but it takes one if it be a *substantive*. So we write : *La nation française, anglaise, espagnole, italienne, allemande*. And, with a capital, *un Anglais* (an Englishman), *un Espagnol* (a Spaniard), etc.—(ACAD.)

EXERCISE CLIII.

English bravery ; *Spanish* gravity ; *Italian* policy ; *Roman*
bravoure f. f. † politique f.
beauty ; German music ; *Dutch* manners ; *Prussian*
f. † hollandais mœurs f. pl. prussien
troops ; Swedish soldiers ; *Chinese* ceremonies.—The *French*
troupe f. suédois soldat chinois f.
monarchy began under Pharamond, in the year 420.—That
monarchie f. ind-3, en l' an
young German requests you to inscribe your name in his
prier † d' inscrire sur
album.
 — m.

2dly, *Adjectives* denoting colour are placed after the noun ; as, *un habit NOIR*, a black coat ; *une robe BLANCHE*, a white dress ; *un ruban BLEU*, a blue ribbon.

In poetry and in a figurative sense, *Noir* may be placed before the substantive ; as, *un NOIR attentat*, a black crime.

† See pages 80 and 81.

‡ See Part. Observ. page 82.

Some compound words ; as, *rouge-gorge*, a Robin-redbreast ; *du blanc-manger*, blancmange, can scarcely be considered as exceptions to this rule.

Note.—The student should impress himself well with the two foregoing rules, which are perhaps the most important on the position of the adjective, being directly the reverse of the English construction, and any deviation from either of these two rules would appear ludicrous, and at once stamp the speaker or writer as an unskilled French scholar.

EXERCISE CLIV.

She has *blue* eyes.—The Spanish soldiers wear a *red*
art. *porter*
cockade.—(Here is) a beautiful statue of *white* marble.—
cocarde f. *Voici* — *f.* *blanc marbre m.*
The marigold is a *yellow* flower.—Saddle my *black* horse.—I
souci m. *jaune* *Seller*
shall put on my *brown* coat, and my *American* boots.—
*mettre ** *brun* *américain botte f.*
Almost all the trees of Florida, particularly the
arbre m. *art.* *Floride f.* *en particulier*
cedar and the *green* oak, are covered with a *white* moss.
cèdre m. *vert chêne m.* *d'* *mousse f.*

3rdly, *Adjectives* formed from the present participle of verbs, are, *generally*, placed after the substantive ; as,

**Un ouvrage divertissant.
La mode régnante.**

*An entertaining work.
The reigning fashion,*

But, *Adjectives* formed from the past participle are *always* placed after the substantive ; as,

Un homme *instruit*.
Une figure *arrondie*.

A well-informed man.
A round figure.

EXERCISE CLV.

(That is) an amusing book. — The smiling images of
Voilà *riant* — f.
 Theocritus, Virgil, and Gessner, excite in the soul a gentle
Théocrite † † — *porter* *doux*
 feeling.—There are striking examples of English generosity.
*sensibilité*f. *des frappant* † f.

† See *Note* to Rule VII., page 191.

† See Observations, pages 30 and 31.

Grateful people (are like) those fruitful lands
 art. *reconnaissant* *personne* f. *ressemblent* à ²*fertile* ¹f.
 which give more than they receive. — He has made
^{rendre} ^{ne} ^{des}
astonishing progress. — An *affected* simplicity is a refined
étonnant *progrès* m. pl. *affecté* † f. ²*délicat*
imposture.
¹— f.

4thly, *Adjectives* are placed after the substantive, when expressing some physical or natural quality, such as *chaud*, hot; *froid*, cold; *humide*, damp; and when expressing form, as *une table carrée*, a square table.

5thly, *Adjectives* of several syllables seldom go well before substantives of one syllable; so, instead of saying *les champêtres* *airs*, rural *airs*; *les imaginaires* *lois*, imaginary laws, say *les airs champêtres*, *les lois imaginaires*.

6thly, When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they are almost always placed after that noun. So, instead of adopting the English construction, *ces deux rivales et guerrières nations*, those two rival and warlike nations, say: *ces deux nations guerrières et rivales*.

EXERCISE CLVI.

Will you give me some *warm* water?—Bring me some *cold*
^{chaud}
 milk. — Put it on the *round* table. — Never sleep in a *damp*
^{lait} m. ^{rond} ^{coucher}
 room. — ²Arts ¹(are divided) into *liberal* Arts and *mechanical*
 art. ^{on} ^{divise} ^{en} ^{m.} ^{mécanique}
 Arts. — The king of Spain is styled the *Catholic* king. — She
^{appeler} ^{catholique} ^{Elle}
 has an *harmonious* voice. — She is a *good* and *charitable* woman.
^{voix} f. ^C
 — He is an *amiable* and *virtuous* man.
^C ^{vertueux}

† See Observations, pages 30 and 31.

FINALLY, the placing of a great many Adjectives, before or after the substantive, holds so much to the genius of the French language, that from their being placed before or after, often depends the meaning of the substantive ; and usage dictates so imperiously the law, that by infringing it we would not be understood.

LIST OF ADJECTIVES

which impart a different meaning to the noun, according as they are placed before, or after it.

Un bon homme, most frequently means <i>a simple man</i> .	Un homme bon, <i>a good man</i> .
Un brave homme, <i>an honest man</i> .	Un homme brave, <i>a brave man</i> .
Une commune voix, <i>a unanimous voice</i> .	Une voix commune, <i>a common voice</i> .
Une fausse clef, <i>a false key</i> .	Une clef fausse, <i>a wrong key</i> .
Une fausse porte, <i>a private door</i> .	Une porte fausse, <i>a false door</i> .
Un furieux menteur, <i>a terrible liar</i> .	Un fou furieux, <i>a furious madman</i> .
Un grand homme, <i>a great man</i> .	Un homme grand, <i>a tall man</i> .
Le grand air, <i>noble manners</i> .	L'air grand, <i>a noble look</i> .
Une grosse femme, <i>a big stout woman</i> .	Une femme grosse, <i>same as une femme enceinte</i> .
Le haut ton, <i>an arrogant manner</i> .	Le ton haut, <i>a loud tone of voice</i> .
Un honnête homme, <i>an honest man</i> .	Un homme honnête, <i>a polite man</i> .
Des honnêtes gens, <i>respectable people</i> .	Des gens honnêtes, <i>polite people</i> .
Mauvais air, <i>a vulgar appearance</i> .	L'air mauvais, <i>an ill-natured look</i> .
Une méchante épigramme, <i>a bad epigram</i> .	Une épigramme méchante, <i>a wicked epigram</i> .
Du mort bois, <i>wood of little value</i> .	Du bois mort, <i>dead trees</i> .
Morte eau, <i>ebb tides</i> .	Eau morte, <i>still water</i> .
Le nouveau vin, <i>the wine newly come</i> .	Le vin nouveau, <i>the wine newly made</i> .
De nouveaux livres, <i>other books</i> .	Des livres nouveaux, <i>new books</i> .

Un nouvel habit, <i>another coat.</i>	{ Un habit nouveau, <i>a new-fashioned coat.</i>
Un pauvre homme, <i>a man without genius.</i>	{ Un habit neuf, <i>a new coat.</i>
Un plaisant homme, <i>a whimsical ridiculous man.</i>	Une homme pauvre, <i>a poor man.</i>
Un plaisant personnage, <i>a contemptible person.</i>	Un homme plaisant, <i>a pleasant facetious man.</i>
Un plaisant conte, <i>an unlikely story.</i>	Un personnage plaisant, <i>an amusing person.</i>
Un petit homme, <i>a little man.</i>	Un conte plaisant, <i>an amusing story.</i>
Les propres termes, <i>the exact words.</i>	Un homme petit, <i>a mean man.</i>
Une sage-femme, <i>a midwife.</i>	Les termes propres, <i>correct expressions.</i>
Un seul homme, <i>a single man.</i>	{ Une femme sage, <i>a prudent woman.</i>
Unique tableau, <i>a single picture.</i>	Un homme seul, <i>a man alone.</i>
Un vilain homme, <i>a disagreeable man.</i>	{ Tableau unique, <i>a picture, the only one of its kind, incomparable.</i>
	{ Un homme vilain, <i>a mean man.</i>

EXERCISE CLVII.

He opened the presses with *false keys*.—As an actor
ind-3 armoire f. de
was walking on tiptoe to represent the great
marcher ind-2 le bout des pieds pour
Agamemnon, they cried out to him that he was making him a
on ind-3 †
tall man, and not a great man.—Bonaparte had a loud
non pas ind-2
tone of voice.—He has (got on) a new-fashioned coat.—A lady,
mis
seeing Chapelain and Patru, said that the first was an author
ind-3 ind-2 auteur
without genius, and the second a poor author.
pauvre

† See 4th Example, page 34.

§ III. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

One of the difficulties of the French language is to know what preposition must be used after an adjective, as the French prepositions are not always in this instance correlative to the English prepositions.

Adjectives which govern the preposition À.

Adonné à,	addicted to.	pareil à,	like.
ardent à,	ardent in.	prêt à,	ready to.
bon à,	good for.	prompt à,	prompt in, quick at.
cher à,	dear to.	propre à,	fit for.
conforme à,	conformable to.	semblable à,	similar to.
égal à,	equal to.	sensible à,	sensible of.
enclin à,	inclined to.	sourd à,	deaf to.
lent à,	slow to, and in.	sujet à,	subject to.
nuisible à,	hurtful to.	utile à,	useful to.

And in general all adjectives denoting *inclination, habit, aptness, fitness*. And, when followed by a verb, it is most commonly put in the present of the infinitive.

EXERCISE CLVIII.

Your intentions are *conformable* to my wishes. — He is *slow*
désir m.
to punish, and *prompt* in rewarding. — Are you *ready* to go out?
récompenser *sortir*
— He is *fit* for (anything). — He is *deaf* to remonstrances. —
tout *art. remontrance f.*
Sicily is *subject* to great earthquakes. — That man is *useful*
Sicile f. *† m. tremblement de terre*
and *dear* to his family. — That is *easy* to say. — It is *ridiculous*
famille f. Cela facile *Il ridicule*
to put oneself in a passion against objects which are *insensible*
*de se† en * colère* *‡ objet m.* —
of our anger.
colère

† Place of *Se*, page 34.

‡ Rule V., page 189.

Adjectives which govern the preposition DE.

Agréable <i>de</i> , agreeable to.	ennuyé <i>de</i> , weary of.	
aise <i>de</i> , glad to.	exempt <i>de</i> , exempt from.	
avide <i>de</i> , greedy of.	fatigué <i>de</i> , fatigued with.	
capable <i>de</i> , able to.	heureux <i>de</i> , happy to.	
chargé <i>de</i> , loaded with.	inconsolable <i>de</i> , inconsolable at.	
charmé <i>de</i> , charmed with.	inquiet <i>de</i> , uneasy about.	
chéri <i>de</i> , beloved by.	libre <i>de</i> , free from.	
content <i>de</i> , pleased with.	mécontent <i>de</i> , dissatisfied with.	
coupable <i>de</i> , guilty of.	plein <i>de</i> , full of.	
curieux <i>de</i> , curious to.	reconnaissant <i>de</i> , grateful for.	
digne <i>de</i> , worthy of.	satisfait <i>de</i> , satisfied with.	
enchanté <i>de</i> , delighted with.	sûr <i>de</i> , sure of.	

As likewise adjectives expressing *plenty* and *scarcity*, and in general all those which are followed in English by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, or *by*.

EXERCISE CLIX.

I am very *glad* to see you in good health.—Voltaire was
bien *santé* f. *ind-3*
 always *greedy of* praise.—The vine is *loaded with* grapes.—
louange pl. *vigne* f. *raisin*
 I am *pleased with* your answer. — Virtuous men are always
réponse f. art. *vertueux* ¹
worthy of esteem.—I am *tired with* running after him.—A
estime *fatigué* *inf-1*
 heart *free from* cares enjoys the greatest felicity possible.—
soin m. *jouir de* f.
 He is very *grateful for* the services you have rendered him.
fort — *que* ² *rendus* ¹
 —Here is a purse *full of* louis † and napoleons ‡.—I am
bourse f. —m. *napoléon* m.
satisfied with my lot.
sort m.

SOME Adjectives are often followed in French by the preposition *envers*, and in English by the preposition *to*;

† A gold coin of France, worth about twenty shillings; so called, since Louis XIII., from the name of the kings who coined it.

‡ A gold piece of twenty or forty francs, with the effigy of Napoleon. It is more commonly said of pieces of twenty francs.

such are *affable, bon, complaisant, cruel, généreux, indulgent*, or any other expressing kindness or unkindness of feeling towards individuals ; as,

Il faut être *poli* ENVERS tout le monde. | *We must be civil to everybody.*

Adjectives expressing gladness or regret at a thing, such as *aise, charmé, enchanté, fâché, contrarié*, etc., require the infinitive with *DE*, or the subjunctive mood ; as,

Je suis bien *aise* d'être de retour à temps. | *I am very glad that I have returned in time.*
Je suis bien *aise* que vous soyez de retour. | *I am very glad that you have returned.*

In the first example, there is only one subject, *Je*, and the second verb is in the infinitive.

In the second example, there are two subjects, *Je* and *vous* ; the verb, therefore, is put in the subjunctive mood.

IL EST, impersonal, joined to an adjective, requires *de* before an infinitive. C'EST requires *à* ; as,

Il est horrible DE penser, DE voir. | *It is horrid to think, to see.*
C'est horrible À penser, À voir. | *It is horrid to think of, to be seen.*

EXERCISE CLX.

We must be charitable to the poor.—I do not like people
Il faut pauvre pl. aimer ceux
who are cruel to animals.—Scipio Africanus was respectful
Scipion l'Africain ind-2 respectueux
to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his servants, just
domestique juste
and affable to everybody.—He will be delighted to see you.
enchanté

I am very sorry you cannot come.—It is agreeable to
bien fâché pouvoir subj-1 Il
live with one's friends.—It is noble to die for one's country.
vivre ses Il beau sa patrie
—This is painful to see and to hear.
C' pénible entendre

§ IV. ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

(The numbers are given at full length, page 25.)

1. Of all the *cardinal* numbers, *un* is the only one that takes an *e* for the feminine : UN *homme*, UNE *femme*.

2. *Unième*, first, is never used but after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, *quatre-vingt*, *cent*, and *mille*. *C'est la vingt et UNIÈME fois*, it is the twenty-first time.

3. We say *second*, or *deuxième*, but we cannot say *vingt-second*, *trente-second*, we must say *vingt-deuxième*, *trente-deuxième*, *quarante-deuxième*, etc.

There is this difference between *le second*, and *le deuxième*, that this last makes you think on the *third*, it awakens the idea of a series, whereas *le second* awakens the idea of order without that of series. We say, therefore, of a work which has only two volumes : *Voici le SECOND tome*, and not *le deuxième* ; and, of a work which has more than two volumes : *Voici le DEUXIÈME tome*, or also *voici le SECOND tome*.—(*Chapsal*, *Boniface*, etc.)

4. The French say, *le onze*, *le onzième*, *du onze*, *du onzième*, *au onze*, *au onzième*, *vers les onze heures*, *vers les une heure*, or *sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze*, *onzième*, and *une*, as if they were written with an *h* aspirated.

NOTE.—*Dumarsais* thinks that if we write and pronounce *le onze*, it is in order not to confound *l'onze* with *l'once*.

Vers les une heure is an elliptical phrase, for, *vers les moments qui précèdent ou qui suivent une heure*. The article is allowed to remain in the plural, although the substantive is not expressed.

5. When a cardinal number is preceded by the pronoun *en*, the *adjective* or *participle* which follows that number must be preceded by the preposition *de* ; as,

Sur mille habitants, il n'y EN a		Of one thousand inhabitants,
pas un DE riche.		there is not a rich one.

6. *Cent* and *mille* are sometimes used for an indefinite, but very large number ; as,

Il nous fit cent caresses.		He showed us a hundred
		marks of kindness.

Heureux, heureux mille fois,

L'enfant que le Seigneur rend docile à ses lois !—(*Racine*.)

(For several important remarks on Nouns and Adjectives of Number, see pages 27, 28, 29.)

EXERCISE CLXI.

One of the nine Muses is called Terpsichore.—It was in
 — f. *s'appeler* — Ce ind-3
 the *thirty-first* year after the peace, that war (broke out again).
année f. paix f. se rallumer ind-3
 — William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and
Guillaume, surnommé Conquérant
 duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the
 ind-3
eleventh century.—Of ten thousand combatants, there were
siècle m. Sur combattant il y EN eut
 one thousand *killed*, and five hundred *wounded*.—The admiral
blessé
 *
 showed me a *thousand* civilities.
*faire * caresse*

§ V. ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

Adjectives of dimension, such as *haut*, high; *long*, long; *large*, wide or broad; *épais*, thick; *profond*, deep, which come after the word of measure in English, come before it in French, and are followed by the preposition *de*; as,

Un mur *haut* DE sept pieds.
 Une chambre *longue* DE vingt
 pieds.

A wall seven feet high.
 A room twenty feet long.

Another construction, frequently used, is to let the words remain in French as in English, and to put *de* both before the number and before the word of measure or dimension. In this case, the substantive of dimension is often used instead of the adjective; as,

Un mur DE sept pieds DE haut,
 or DE hauteur.
 Une chambre DE vingt pieds
 DE long, or DE longueur.

A wall seven feet high.
 A room twenty feet long.

The English manner of expressing *dimension* is to use the verb *to be*; but the French, in general, make use of the verb *avoir*. In this case, *de* is left out before the number, and the phrase is rendered thus:—

Ce mur A sept pieds de haut,
 or de hauteur.

That wall is seven feet high.

EXERCISE CLXII.

The walls of Babylon *were* two hundred feet *high* and fifty
Babylone avaient †
broad.—The great wall, on the north of China, is about
largeur *muraille f. à* *Chine f. à environ*
 twelve hundred miles *long*.—The highest of the pyramids of
 † *pyramide f.*
 Egypt *is*, at least, five hundred feet *high*.—The Monument of
a au moins † — m.
 London is a round pillar two hundred feet *high*.—The Tiber
 † *ronde pilier m.* †
is three hundred feet *wide* at Rome.—The famous mine of
a † *largeur* — f.
 Potosi, in Peru, *is* more than fifteen hundred feet *deep*.
dans Pérou m. a *de* † *profondeur*

§ VI. ADJECTIVES IN THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

1. BY, after a comparative, is expressed by DE ; as,

Il est plus grand DE deux pouces. | *He is taller BY two inches.*

2. In English, when the adverbs *more* and *less* are repeated to express a comparison, they are preceded by the article ; as, THE MORE *difficult a thing is*, THE MORE *glorious it is to do it well*. But, in French, the article is suppressed ; as, PLUS *une chose est difficile*. PLUS *il est glorieux de la bien faire*.

§ VII. ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

1. An adjective in the superlative degree governs the preposition DE ; as,

Le plus grand empire DU monde.

| *The greatest empire in the world.*

† See Rem. on *Cent*, page 28.

‡ See Rule IV., page 218.

2. When the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the article before them ; but the substantive takes no article, if the superlative goes first ; as,

Les *gens* les plus habiles.
Les plus habiles *gens*.

The ablest men.

3. The article placed before *plus* and *moins* preceding an adjective, is always invariable, when there is no comparison ; as, *La lune ne nous éclaire pas autant que le soleil, même quand elle est LE PLUS brillante*, The moon does not light us so much as the sun, even when it shines brightest. But the article takes gender and number, when there is a comparison ; as, *La lune est LA PLUS brillante de toutes les planètes*, The moon is the most brilliant of all the planets.

EXERCISE CLXIII.

She is taller than her sister *by the whole head*.—The more
² ¹*tout tête f.*

one reads La Fontaine, the more one admires him.—Seneca
on *Sénèque*

was the richest man in the empire.—The highest mountains
ind-2 ² ¹ *montagne f.*

are the reservoirs (from which) issue the largest rivers. —
réservoir m. d'où sortir grand fleuve m.

Those whom I have always seen most struck with the writings
Ceux que vus frapper de écrit m.

of Homer, Virgil, Horace, Cicero, are minds of the first
[†] [†] [†] *des esprit m.*

order.—Although the Chinese boast of being the most ancient
Quoique Chinois se vanter inf-1 ²

nation, they are far from being the most enlightened.
—f. *loin inf-1 éclairé.*

† See Note to Rule VII., page 191.

CHAPTER IV.

OF PRONOUNS.

§ I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Place of Personal Pronouns.

THE Personal Pronouns, whether *subjects* or *objects*, are placed before the verb in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses ; except, 1st, When the pronouns take a preposition before them in French ; 2^{dly}, In interrogative sentences ; 3^{dly}, When the verb is in the imperative *affirmative* (the third persons excepted). Such is the general principle of the position of personal pronouns, which will be fully developed in this chapter.

(See what has already been stated on this subject, page 32.)

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS.

I. The *personal* pronouns, *I, thou, he* or *it, she* or *it, we, you, they*, are expressed in French by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* m., *elles* f., when they are the subjects or nominatives of the verb ; as,

<i>Je</i> parle, I <i> speak</i> ; <i>il</i> chante, he <i> sings</i> .		<i>Elle</i> danse, she <i> dances</i> ; <i>nous</i> jouons, we <i> play</i> .
--	--	--

II. *I, thou, he, they* m. are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, eux* :—

1st, When used in answer to a question ; as,

<i>Qui a fait cela ?—Moi.</i>		<i>Who has done that ?—I.</i>
-------------------------------	--	-------------------------------

2^d, When joined to a noun or pronoun by a conjunction, or when a verb has two or more pronouns as subjects ; as,

<i>Mon frère et moi.</i> <i>Lui et moi.</i> <i>Vous, lui, et moi, nous irons.</i>		<i>My brother and I.</i> <i>He and I.</i> <i>You, he, and I will go.</i>
---	--	--

3d, When they come after a comparative ; as,

Il est plus riche que lui, qu'eux et moi. | *He is richer than he, they and I.*

4th, When followed by the relatives *qui*, *que*, the adjective *seul*, or a present participle ; as,

Moi QUI suis son fils.

Eux QUE j'aimais tant.

Lui SEUL respecte la vertu.

Eux, VOYANT qu'ils avaient tort.

I who am his son.

They whom I loved so much.

He alone respects virtue.

They, seeing that they were in the wrong.

5th, When they mark opposition or distinction, or point out the part taken in an action by different persons ; as,

Eux l'ont relevé, et LUI l'a pansé.

They raised him up, and he dressed his wounds.

6th, When coming after these expressions, *It is*, *it was*, *it will be*, *it would be*, or similar ones, whether in the affirmative, negative, or interrogative ; as,

It is I, C'est moi.

It is he, C'est lui.

It is thou, C'est toi.

It is they, Ce sont eux, m., elles, f.

EXERCISE CLXIV.

I come from Dover. — You like the town, and I the Douvres

country. — Who read last ? — He. — I am not so tall campagne f. ind-4 le dernier fem. si grand

as your sister, but she is older than I. — They alone have que âgé seul

fought the enemy ; they alone deserve to be rewarded. — combattre mériter d' récompensé

He, perceiving their intentions, gave up his project. — s'apercevoir de † abandonner projet m.

Your uncles and your brother take charge of the enterprise ; se charger

they find the money, and he will manage the work. — fournir fonds pl. conduire ind-7 travail m.

Was it he that was singing ? — No, it was I.

ind-2 ce qui ind-2 c' ind-2

† Most words ending in *ion* are alike in both languages. See *Observations*, page 30 ; also *Remarks on Genders*, page 5.

III. Personal pronouns used as *subjects*, are placed after the verb, although no interrogation is meant :—

1st, When the verb is in the subjunctive mood without any conjunction being expressed. In such a case, the final *e* of the first person is marked with an acute accent, for the sake of euphony ; as,

Puissé-je de mes yeux, etc. (CORN.) | *May I with my eyes, etc.*
Dussé-je, après dix ans, etc. (RAC.) | *Should I, after ten years, etc.*

2d, When the verb is preceded by any of these words, *aussi, peut-être, encore, en vain, du moins, au moins, à peine* ; as,

Peut-être avez-vous raison. | *Perhaps* you are right.
En vain prétendons-nous. | *It is in vain* that we pretend.

We might also say : *Peut-être* vous avez raison ;—*en vain* nous prétendons, but then the expression possesses neither the same grace, nor the same energy.

3d. In narrations, as in English :—

Où allez-vous ? lui dis-je. | *Where are you going ?* said I to him.
Je le veux bien, lui répondit-il. | *I am very willing,* replied he to him.

Note.—Observe that in the foregoing examples a *hyphen* is put after the verb when followed by the pronoun its subject.

EXERCISE CLXV.

(Oh that I may) see him !—(Though you were) more

Puissé-je

Fussiez-vous

numerous, you will meet with resistance. — This
nombreux éprouver ind-7 pr. art.

lace is beautiful, (*but then*) it is dear.—The rose is
dentelle f. aussi coûter † ‡ —f.

the queen of flowers ; *therefore* it is the emblem of
art. aussi emblème m. art.

beauty.—*Perhaps* I shall go.—You were *hardly* gone when
Peut-être ind-2 à peine partir que

your brother arrived.—What would you have ? *said he* to me.
*ind-3 ind-1 **

Life, replied I.
art. répondre

† See the 3d. Rem., page 82.

‡ See the 2d. Rem., page 212.

IV. Personal pronouns, when subjects or nominatives must be repeated :—

1st, When we pass from negation to affirmation ; as, *JE ne plie pas et JE romps* (I do not bend and I break). But we can say : *JE plie et JE ne romps pas*, or *je plie et ne romps pas*, the first verb being in the affirmative.

2d, When the verbs are connected by any conjunction, except *et* (and), *ou* (or), *ni* (nor), *mais* (but).

Except in those two cases, the personal pronouns subjects are either repeated or not, according as the harmony, energy, and especially the perspicuity of the phrase may require.

EXERCISE CLXVI.

You gain nothing, and you spend (a great deal.) — I
gagner dépenser beaucoup
 (am not ignorant) that one cannot be happy without virtue,
n'ignore pas on ne saurait art.
 and I (am firmly resolved) always to practise it.— *We detest*
me propose bien de ² ¹
 the wicked, because we fear them.— *He is learned although*
méchant parce que craindre quoique
he is very young.—I wish to see you happy, because I
*subj-1 bien désirer **
 am attached to you.— *You will be truly esteemed, if you are*
*attaché * vraiment*
 wise and modest.
modeste

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

A personal pronoun, when the regimen† or object of the verb, is either *direct* or *indirect*. A pronoun is the direct object of the verb, when it is governed by the verb without any preposition, either expressed or understood ; as, *Je la vois*, I see her. But, when a pronoun is the indirect object, it is always preceded by *à* (to), or

† REGIMEN. The word or member of a sentence governed by a verb ; as *Evil communication corrupts good manners*, where *good manners* may be said to be the regimen, or part of the sentence governed by the verb *corrupts*.—(*Walker's Dict.*)

de (of), either expressed or understood ; as, *Je lui parle*, I speak to him ; *J'en parle*, I speak of him.

I. When personal pronouns are in the accusative, or in other words, the *direct objects* of the verb, they are expressed in French thus :—

<i>me,</i>	by me		<i>us,</i>	by nous
<i>thee,</i>	" <i>te</i>		<i>you,</i>	" <i>vous</i>
<i>him,</i>	" <i>le</i>		<i>them,</i>	" <i>les, m. and f.</i>
<i>her,</i>	" <i>la</i>			

and are placed before the verb in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative ; as,

<i>Il me flatte.</i>		<i>He flatters me.</i>
<i>Vous ne la surprendrez pas.</i>		<i>You will not surprise her.</i>
<i>Ils nous ont trompés.</i>		<i>They have deceived us.</i>
<i>Ne les connaissez-vous pas ?</i>		<i>Do you not know them ?</i>

REMARK. When *me, te, se, le, la*, come before a vowel, or *h* mute, the elision of the *e* takes place, as explained in the chapter of the apostrophe, page 3.

N.B. The pronouns *le, la, les*, are also called *relative pronouns*, because they relate to a substantive already expressed.

EXERCISE CLXVII.

You suspect *me* (without reason.)—He has rewarded *me*
soupçonner mal à propos récompenser
 generously. —God is a father to those who love *him*, and a
généreusement le de ceux le
 protector to those who fear *him*.—(As soon as) my sister
 † *de craindre Dès que*
 (shall have) arrived, I will go and see *her*.— Vice often
*sera ind-7 * art.*
 deceives *us* under the mask of virtue.—We shall go and
masque m. art.
 see *you* after dinner.—Do you not see *them* ?
après dîner

II. When personal pronouns are the *indirect objects* of the verb, and governed by the preposition *à* (to), understood,

† Most English words ending in *or* become French by changing *or* into *eur*. See *Observations*, page 50.

they are expressed by *me, te, lui*, m. and f.; *nous, vous, leur*, m. and f., and placed before the verb, in the same manner as when they are the direct objects; as,

Elle *me* parle.
Il *lui* donne.
Je *leur* écrirai.

She speaks to me.
He gives him (i.e. to him).
I will write to them.

III. When the preposition *à* is to be expressed before the pronouns, they are then rendered by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*, and placed after the verb. This happens only in the following cases:—

1st, With the verbs *aller*, to go; *courir* and *accourir*, to run to; *marcher*, to walk; *penser* and *songer*, to think; *venir*, to come; *viser*, to aim at; *être* (in the sense of to belong); *avoir*, to have, used with the words *affaire, égard, rapport, recours*; as,

Votre frère vint *à nous*.
Ce livre est *à moi*.
J'aurai recours *à eux*.

Your brother came to us.
This book belongs to me.
I will have recourse to them.

2d, When a verb has two or more indirect regimens, and likewise with all reflected verbs; as,

Je parle *à lui et à elle*.
Il s'adressa *à moi*.

I speak to him and to her.
He applied to me.

EXERCISE CLXVIII.

Do you not speak *to her*, when you meet her?—Few
quand rencontrer Peu
people are wise enough to prefer the blame that is useful
de gens pour
to them, to the praise which betrays them.—They came to us
louange f. trahir
when we (were not thinking) of them.—That horse was
ne pensions pas à ind-2
formerly mine, but I sold it to your cousin.—If you don't
autrefois à moi ind-4 l'
behave better, you will have to do *with me*.—He speaks
se conduire affaire à
to you and to him.—We trust to them.
se fier

IV. When a personal pronoun, used as a direct or in-

direct object, accompanies a verb in the imperative mood, in the first person plural, or in the second person singular or plural, it is put in French, as in English, immediately after the verb, and *moi, toi*, are used instead of *me, te*. But, if a negation attends the imperative, the pronoun follows the general rule, and is placed before the verb, and again *me, te*, are used.

EXAMPLES.

Affirmatively.		Negatively.		[them.
Aimons-les,	Let us love them.	Ne les aimons pas,	Let us not love	
Sauvez-moi,	Save me.	Ne me sauvez pas,	Don't save me.	
Dites-lui,	Tell him.	Ne lui dites pas,	Don't tell him.	

REMARKS.—1. When there are two imperatives joined by the conjunction *et* or *ou*, and without a negative, it is considered more elegant to place the second pronoun before the verb; as,

Polissez-le sans cesse, et le repolissez.—(Boileau).	Polish and repolish it continually.
--	-------------------------------------

2. When an imperative has two pronouns for regimens, one direct and the other indirect, the direct regimen is expressed first; as,

Donnez-le-moi.	Give it me.
Prêtez-le-lui.	Lend it to him.

Negatively, we would say, *Ne me le donnez pas; ne le lui prêtez pas.*

3. When *moi, toi*, are placed after the imperative, and followed by the pronoun *en*, they are changed into *m', t'*; as,

Donnez-m'en, Give me some.	Retourne-t'en, Go back.
----------------------------	-------------------------

Note.—Observe again how a hyphen is introduced in the foregoing examples. The rule is thus laid down by *Beauzée* and *Féraud*. When the first and second persons of the imperative have for complement (or regimen) one of these words: *moi, toi, nous, vous, le, la, lui, les, leur, en, y*, they are joined together by a hyphen, and a second hyphen is introduced when there are two of those words as complement of the imperative. Examples:—*Donnez-moi, dépêchons-nous, accordez-la-leur, rendons-la-lui.*

But we write: *faites-moi lui parler*, and not *faites-moi-lui parler*, because *lui* is the regimen of *parler*, and not of *faites*; *venez me parler*, because *me* is not governed by *venez*, but by the infinitive *parler*.

EXERCISE CLXIX.

Listen to me; do not condemn me without a hearing. —
Ecouter * *condamner* *m'entendre*
 Tell me the truth. — Don't speak to me. — Repeat to them
vérité f. *Répéter*
 continually, that, without honesty, one can never succeed in
sans cesse *on* *réussir*
 the world. — Don't repeat to them the same things. — Take
Prendre
 them, or leave them, it is (all one) to me. — My innocence
laisser cela égal — *f.*
 is the only good that remains to me : leave it to me.
seul bien m. qui

V. Personal pronouns, whether direct or indirect objects, are repeated, in French, before every verb ; as,

Il vous estime et vous honore. | He esteems and honours you.

Son visage odieux m'afflige et me poursuit. (RACINE).

Il détourne les yeux, le plaint, et le révère. (VOLTAIRE).

EXERCISE CLXX.

He beseeches and entreats me. — I say and declare to you. —
prier conjurer
 The idea that they believe him guilty, pursues, tor-
pensée f. *on croire coupable poursuivre tour-*
 ments and overwhelms him. — He wearies and torments us
menter accabler ennuyer obséder
 incessantly. — A well-educated son never rebels against his
sans cesse bien élevé se révolter
 father ; he loves, honours, and respects him.
respecter

VI. The pronouns *it*, *they*, *them*, which the English use with reference to animals and inanimate things, are expressed in French by *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, when they are the subject or nominative of the verb, and by *le*, *la*, *les*, when they are in the accusative or direct object of the verb.

Be careful to make these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer. It is almost

unnecessary to repeat that the French language has no neuter gender, consequently inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine ; so in speaking of the *rose*, which is feminine, we say *ELLE est belle*, it is beautiful ; and of a book, *livre*, which is masculine, *vous a-t-IL amusé ?* has it amused you ?

REMARK.—When these pronouns come after a preposition, they are usually left out in French ; then the preposition becomes an adverb, and conveys the idea sufficiently ; as,

Approchez-vous du feu. — Je | *Come near the fire.* — *I am*
suis tout auprès. | *quite near it.*

EXERCISE CLXXI.

Look at that magnificent building ; *it* unites grace
Regarder * *magnifique bâtiment m.* réunir art. *grâce f.*
with beauty, and elegance with simplicity.—Where
à art. art. *à art.*
is my pen ? *It* is upon the table.—Never judge from
plume f. *sur* *juger sur*
appearances, for *they* are often deceitful.—(There is) a
art. *apparence f.* *car* *trompeur* *Voilà*
good book, read *it*.—My house is new ; I will not sell *it* ;
maison f. *neuf* *ind-7*
but I will let *it*.—His cot was solitary ; near *it*
louer ind-7 *cabane f.* *ind-2* *isolé*
flowed a spring of ²pure ¹water.
couler ind-2 *source f.* *vif*

VII. When *to it*, *to them*, relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *y* ; as,

Ce tableau est très bon ; | *That picture is very good ;*
mettez-y un cadre. | *put a frame to it.*

But, when the pronouns *it*, *them*, are in the dative case, that is, used for *to it*, *to them*, and have reference to animals, plants, and ideal substances, in which we suppose an active principle, such as some virtues and vices, or are preceded by the verb *to owe*, or *to be indebted*, they

are translated by *lui* for the singular, and *leur* for the plural ; as,

Ce chien a faim, donnez-LUI du pain.		<i>That dog is hungry, give IT some bread.</i>
Ces orangers vont périr, si vous ne LEUR donnez point d'eau.		<i>These orange-trees will die, if you do not give THEM water.</i>

(For the proper place of *y*, see N.B., page 44.)

EXERCISE CLXXII.

I study botany, and apply myself seriously to
 art. *botanique* f. pron. *s'appliquer sérieusement*
it.—History and geography are his delight, he (gives himself up)
 See R. 3d. page 186 *délices* pl. *se livre*
to them entirely. —I leave you the care of that goldfinch ;
entièrement laisser soin m. *chardonneret* m.
 do not forget to give it water. —When virtue appears in all
oublier de paraître dans
 its beauty, we cannot refuse it our homage and respect. —
ne pouvons refuser — m.
 This book cost me (a great deal), but I (*am indebted*) to it for
coûte cher dois *
 my knowledge.
instruction f.

VIII. The pronoun *le*, which makes *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural of both genders, may supply the place of a substantive, or an adjective, or even of a member of a sentence.

When it supplies the place of a substantive or an adjective used substantively, the pronoun takes the gender and number of that substantive or adjective used substantively. In such a case, the English equivalent is almost always understood.

EXAMPLES.

Êtes-vous madame de Genlis ?—		<i>Are you madame de Genlis ?—I</i>
Je ne <i>la</i> suis pas.		<i>am not.</i>
Êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant ?—		<i>Are you the mother of that child ?</i>
Oui, je <i>la</i> suis.		<i>—Yes, I am.</i>
Êtes-vous la malade ?—Je <i>la</i> suis.		<i>Are you the patient ?—I am.</i>
Mesdames, êtes-vous les parentes de		<i>Ladies, are you the relations of this</i>
monsieur ?—Oui, nous <i>les</i> sommes.		<i>gentleman ?—Yes, we are.</i>

EXERCISE CLXXIII.

Are you the sister of Colonel Abercromby?—Yes, I am.—

Are you the daughter of General Rapp? No, I am not.—Are
filie

you Lady Melville? Yes, I am.—Are you the mistress of this
Lady† *maitresse*

house? I am.—Are you the ministers of the king? We are.—
ministre

Madam, are you the bride? Yes, I am.—Are those your
maride *-ce là*

servants? Yes, they are.
domestique *ce*

IX. The pronoun *le* remains invariable, when it has reference to a verb, an adjective, or a substantive used adjectively. The English equivalent, which is generally *so* or *it*, is almost always understood.

EXAMPLES.

Madame, êtes-vous malade?—Je *le* suis. | Madam, are you ill?—I am.

Êtes-vous mère?—Je *le* suis. | Are you a mother?—I am.

Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous prêtes?— | Young ladies, are you ready?—

Où, nous *le* sommes. | Yes, we are.

EXERCISE CLXXIV.

Madam, are you pleased with that speech? Yes, I am.—
 See page 222 *discours m.*

Madam, are you married? Yes, I am.—Are you mistress of
maride *maitresse*

your actions? I am not.—Ladies, are you glad to have seen
bien aise

the new piece? Yes, we are.—Have we ever been so
nouveau piece f. *jamais*

quiet as we are?
tranquille que

† Mot emprunté de l'anglais. On prononce *Lédi*.—(Acad.)

OF THE PRONOUNS *se*, *soi*.

(For the various meanings, see page 35.)

The pronoun *se* (*s'* before a vowel) is of both numbers and genders; it is always placed before the verb of which it is the regimen; as, *il se connaît*, he knows himself; *elle s'imagine*, she fancies.

Les yeux de l'amitié se trompent rarement.—VOLTAIRE.

The pronoun *soi* is of both genders, and is always preceded by a preposition, except in the phrase *être soi*. When applied to persons, it is employed only in a vague and indeterminate sense; as, *Il faut prendre garde à soi*, it is necessary to take care of one's self.

Heureux qui vit chez soi.—LA FONTAINE.

EXERCISE CLXXV.

They lost *themselves* in the wood.—This flower is fading.
s'égarer ind-3 *fleur* f. *se flétrir*
 These trees are dying.—A good deed carries its reward
se mourir *bienfait* m. *porter* *récompense* f.
 with *itself*.—Frankness is good of *itself*, but it has its excesses.
avec *franchise* f. *de* *excès* m.
 When a man loves nobody but *himself*, he is not fit for
Quand * *on* n' * *que* *on* *propre*
 society.—To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves* is a
 See page 222 *soi*
 weakness; *
faiblesse f. * See page 222
 folly.
sottise f.

RESPECTIVE PLACES OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

When a verb (the imperative *affirmative* excepted) governs two or more pronouns without a preposition, they are always placed before it, and before its auxiliary in compound tenses, in the following order:—

<i>me, te, se, nous, vous</i>	before all others.
<i>le, la, les,</i>	before <i>lui, leur, y, en</i> .
<i>lui, leur,</i>	before <i>y, en</i> .
<i>y,</i>	before <i>en</i> .

When the sentence is not interrogative, the pronoun which is the subject of the verb is always placed at the head.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Vous ne me le conseillez pas.</i>	<i>You do not advise me so.</i>
<i>Je ne le lui dirais pas.</i>	<i>I would not tell it him.</i>
<i>Nous les en avertirons.</i>	<i>We shall warn them of it.</i>
<i>Nous lui en parlerons.</i>	<i>We will speak to him about it.</i>
<i>Ils ne s'y soumettront pas.</i>	<i>They will not submit to it.</i>

In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les*, are always placed first; as, *donnez-le-moi*, give it me. *Moi* is placed after *y*; as, *menez-y-moi*, take me thither; but *nous* must precede *y*; as, *menez-nous-y*, take us thither.

EXERCISE CLXXVI.

Do not say to a friend who asks something of you : Go
See page 202 *
 and come again to-morrow, and I will give *it you*; when you
*revenir demain ** *lorsque*
 can give *it him* immediately.—It is certain that old
pouvoir lui sur-le-champ art.
 G ronte has refused his daughter to Val re; but because he
parce qu'
 does not give *her to him*, (it does not follow) that he will give
il ne s'ensuit pas
her to you.—I will give *you some* ²next ¹week.—I have a
en art. prochain
 letter for you. Your brother has sent *it me* to bring *it*
lettre f. pour envoy e pour
you. Give it me.

§ II. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Under this head, we shall place the POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES, as we have already done, page 35.

1. *Possessive adjectives* agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined.
2. They are repeated before every noun of the same

3. They are repeated also before the adjectives that do not qualify the same noun; as, *MON grand et MON petit appartement*, which is equivalent to *mon grand AP-PARTEMENT et mon petit appartement*. But I would say: *MON grand et bel appartement*, without repeating *mon*, were I speaking of an apartment both large and beautiful.

EXERCISE CLXXVII.

4. The French make use of the article, and not of the possessive adjective, when the sense clearly points out who is the possessor ; as,

Peter has received a shot in HIS right arm.

The reason of this custom is that there can be no

† *Mes père et mère, ses père et mère*, instead of *mon père et ma mère, son père et sa mère*, are phrases extremely incorrect, and though used by many people, are most certainly contrary to the principles of the French language, and are condemned by *Vaugelas, Wailly*, by the modern *Grammarians*, and finally by the *French Academy*.

† See *Obs.* 3d., page 86.

² See Rule I., page 183.

doubt as to whose head is aching, and whose arm has received the shot, consequently the article is deemed sufficient.

But, to avoid ambiguity, I must say,

Je vois que **mon** bras enfle.
Pierre a perdu **son** argent.

I see my arm is swelling.
Peter has lost his money.

Because, were I to say, *Je vois que LE bras enfle ; Pierre a perdu L'argent*, one would not know whether it is my arm or that of another that I see swelling ; or, whether it is his own money or John's that Peter has lost.

5. The possessive adjective is also used in speaking of an habitual complaint known to the person spoken to ; as,

Ma migraine m'a repris.
Sa goutte le tourmente.

My headache is returned.
His gout torments him.

6. Reflected verbs generally remove all ambiguity ; as,

Je me suis blessé à LA main.
Je me lave LES mains.

I have hurt my hand.
I wash my hands.

The use of the possessive adjective would here be an error ; custom, however, authorises a few familiar expressions in which the possessive seems to be redundant ; as, *Je me suis tenu toute la journée SUR MES JAMBES ; —il se tient ferme SUR SES PIEDS.*

7. The French use the article, not the possessive adjective, before a noun forming the regimen, when a personal pronoun, which is the indirect regimen, sufficiently supplies the place of the possessive ; as,

Vous LUI avez cassé LE bras.
Vous ME blessez LA main.

You have broken his arm.
You hurt my hand.

EXERCISE CLXXVIII.

Of all ²living ¹creatures, man is the only one who (has not)
art. *vivant* f. *seul* * *n'aît pas*
his face turned towards the earth ; he walks with *his eyes*
— f. *tourné vers* *marcher* * m.
directed towards heaven, as if to indicate the superiority
dirigé art. *ciel* m. *comme pour indiquer*
of his origin.—*My* gout does not allow me a moment's repose
son *laisser* *repos*

—You will cut *your* finger.—A (cannon ball)
se couper *doigt m.* *boulet de canon m.* *lui*
 carried off *his* arm.—Our carriage passed over *his*
emporter ind-3 *voiture f.* *lui ind-3* *sur*
 body, and bruised *his* right shoulder.
corps m. *lui meurtrir ind-3* *2droit* *1épaule f.*

8. When *its* and *their* relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, or leurs* :

1st, When the possessor, substantive or pronoun, is expressed, as the subject, in the same member of a sentence ; as,

Londres a ses beautés. | London has its beauties.

2d, When preceded by any preposition whatever ; as,
 J'admire la largeur DE ses rues. | I admire the width OF its streets.

3d, When joined to a noun qualified by an adjective, unless the noun form the regimen ; as,

Ses bâtiments réguliers plaisent au | Its regular buildings please at first
 premier coup d'œil. | sight.

4th, When joined to the subject of the verb, the latter is, or may be, followed in French by the preposition *de* ; as,

Son commerce produit d'im- | Its trade produces immense re-
 menses ressources. | sources.

On all other occasions, *its* and *their* are expressed by *en*, before the verb, and by the article before the noun. So, still speaking of London, I would say :

La situation en est très com- | Its situation is very convenient for
 mode pour le commerce. | trade.

EXERCISE CLXXXIX.

A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt : (for which
coutume f. ind-2 *prodige m. en* *aussi†*
 reason) there never was a people that preserved so long
y avoir ind-3 de *conserver subj-3*
its usages, its laws, and even its ceremonies.—The pyramids
 — m. *pyramide f.*

† See Rule III., page 230

of Egypt astonish, both by the enormity of *their* bulk,
également et *masse*
 and by the justness of *their* proportions.—The Thames is a
justesse f.

magnificent river: *its* channel is so wide and so deep below
superbe *lit m.* *large* *au-dessous de*
 London-bridge, that several thousand vessels lie at their ease
millier de *être* †

(in it).

y ‡

REMARKS.—1. *A friend of mine ; a book of yours*, are turned in this manner in French, *un de mes amis ; un de vos livres*. As if it were, one of my friends, one of your books ; and so on with all other phrases of the same kind.

2. In speaking to a person of his relations, we generally put *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive adjectives ; as,

J'ai rencontré *monsieur* votre
 père.

Comment se porte *madame*
 votre mère ?

I met your father.

How does your mother do ?

But this is a mere form of politeness, and has nothing to do with the rules of grammar.

§ III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Ce before *être*, requires this verb to be in the singular, except when it is followed by the third person plural. So we say, *C'EST moi, C'EST lui, C'EST nous, C'EST vous*. But we must say, *Ce SONT, c'étaient, ce furent, ce seront eux, elles, les parents, qui*, etc.—(*Gram. des Gram. ; Gram. de Le Tellier*, etc.)

Such is the rule of the best grammarians ; with the third person plural, however, some respectable authors use the verb *être*, sometimes in the plural, and sometimes in the singular.

† See Rule IV., page 241.

‡ See N.B., page 44.

Ce is often used instead of *il, elle, ils, elles*, in reference to a person or thing mentioned before. *Ce* is preferred when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive, accompanied by the article, or the adjective *un* ; as,

Lisez Homère et Virgile ; CE SONT LES plus grands POÈTES de l'an- tiquité. C'est UN César. C'est UN Cicéron.	Read Homer and Virgil ; they are the best poets of antiquity. He is a Caesar. He is a Cicero.
---	---

But, when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective without a noun, or by a noun taken adjectively, *il, elle, ils, elles*, must be used ; as,

Lisez Démosthène et Cicéron ; ILS SONT très éloquents. J'ai vu le Louvre ; IL EST magnifique, et digne d'une grande nation.	Read Demosthenes and Cicero ; they are very eloquent. I have seen the Louvre ; it is beauti- ful, and worthy of a great nation.
--	--

EXERCISE CLXXX.

It is we who have restored tranquillity.—It is you, brave
rétablir
soldiers, who fought gloriously.—*It was the Egyptians*
soldat combattre ind-4 ind-3 Egyptiens
that first observed the course of the stars, regulated
les premiers ind-3 cours m. astre m. régler
the year, and invented arithmetic.—Read attentively Plato
année f. Lire
and Cicero ; *they are the two philosophers of antiquity, who*
philosophe
have given us ²(the most sound and luminous) ¹ideas upon
art. sain lumineux idée f.
morality.—I have seen the city of Edinburgh ; *it is beautiful.*
morale f. ville f.

Ce qui, as the subject, and *ce que*, as the object, are much used in the sense of *what, that which, that thing which*.

When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* must be repeated in the second part of the sentence, if it begins with the verb *être* ; as,

Ce qui m'attache à la vie, C'EST VOUS.	What keeps me attached to life, is you.
Ce que je désire le plus, C'EST d'aller vous voir.	What I wish most, is to come and see you.

The repetition of *ce* is not indispensable when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive singular. Thus, we may say,

Ce qui mérite le plus notre admiration, c'est or est la vertu.		<i>That which deserves our admiration most, is virtue.</i>
--	--	--

Even in this case, however, it is better, in general, to repeat *ce*, which gives more energy to the expression.

But when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective or a past participle without a noun, the demonstrative *ce* is not repeated ; as,

Ce que vous dites est vrai.		<i>What you say is true.</i>
-----------------------------	--	------------------------------

EXERCISE CLXXXI.

What I fear, is to displease you.—What pleases in the
Ce qu'on craint de déplaire *Ce qui dans*
 ancients, is that they have painted nature with a noble sim-
ancien *peindre*
 plicity.—*What we* 2justly *'admire in Racine, are those*
Ce qu'on avec justice *dans*
 characters always natural and always well sustained.—
caractère m. *dans la nature* * *soutenu*
That which sustains man in the midst of the greatest reverses,
Ce qui soutenir à milieu m.
 is hope. — *What I say is true.*
espérance f.

Celui, celle, ceux, celles, are frequently used with the relatives *qui, que, dont, auquel, à laquelle*, in the sense of *he who, she who, they who, whoever, whichever*, etc. ; as,

Heureux celui qui craint le Seigneur !		<i>Happy is he who fears the Lord !</i>
Celle qui aime la vertu est heureuse.		<i>She who loves virtue is happy.</i>

EXERCISE CLXXXII.

Happy is *he who* lives contented with his lot !—*He who* has
 * *vivre content* See p. 222 sort m.
 never been acquainted with adversity, says Seneca, has seen
 * *éprouvé* * art. *n'a vu*
 the world but on one side. —*She who* did it was punished.
que d' côté m. ind-4 ind-4

—*He who* thinks (of nobody but himself), excuses others
 ne *qu'à lui-même* *dispenser les autres*
 from thinking of him.—*He who* renders a service should
 inf-1 *rendre* *doit*
 forget it, *he who* receives it, remember it.
oublier *s'en souvenir*

In the very familiar style, *cela* is sometimes contracted into *ça*; as, *Donnez-moi ça.*—(*Acad.*)

§ IV. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The relative pronouns *who*, *which*, and *that*, are expressed by *qui*, when they are the subject or *nominative* of a verb; as,

L'homme *qui* parle.
 La dame *qui* chante.
 La chaise *qui* vient.

The man *who* speaks.
 The lady *who* sings.
 The chaise *which* comes.

2. *Whom*, *which*, and *that*, are expressed by *que* when they are in the *accusative*, or in other words, the regimen or direct object of a verb; as,

L'homme *que* je vois.
 Les chevaux *que* je vois.
 La maison *que* j'ai.

The man *whom* I see.
 The horses *which* I see.
 The house *that* or *which* I have.

3. *Whom* is expressed by *qui*, when it has no antecedent, and means *what person*; as,

Qui appelez-vous ?
 Je sais *qui* vous voulez dire.

Whom *do* you call ?
 I know *whom* you mean.

Remember that the *e* of *que* is cut off before a vowel; *qui* is never changed.

Observation.—Should *qui* or *que* be divided from its antecedent by a noun, and any uncertainty arise as to which of the two nouns it may relate, use *lequel*, *laquelle*, instead of *qui*; as,

C'est un effet de la Providence, | *It is an effect of Providence which*
 LEQUEL attire l'admiration. | *draws forth admiration.*

Here *lequel* is preferable to *qui*, as a doubt might arise whether it was *effect* or *Providence* to which it related.

EXERCISE CLXXXIII.

Pythagoras was the first among the Greeks *who* took the
Pythagore est d'entre ait pris
 name of philosopher.—²Synonymous ¹terms are words *which*
art. synonyme terme des mot
 signify the same thing.—(You must have) a man *that* loves
signifier Il vous faut n'
 (nothing but) truth and you, and *that* (will speak) the truth
que vous dise
 (in spite of) you.—Here is a lady *whom* you know. —Where
malgré Voici connaître
 is the horse *that* he has bought?—*Whom* shall we invite?
acheter

RULE. The relative pronoun *qui*, is always of the gender, number, and person of its antecedent ; as,

Moi *qui* suis estimé.

Elle *qui* est estimée.

Nous *qui* sommes estimés.

Vous *qui* riez.

I *who am* esteemed.

She *who is* esteemed.

We *who are* esteemed.

You *who laugh*.

So Molière ought not to have said :

Ce n'est pas moi *qui se ferait* prier.

The antecedent of *qui* is *moi* ; *qui* is therefore of the first person, and consequently requires the verb of which it is the subject to adopt that person ; we must say : *qui ME FERAIS prier*, as we say : JE *me ferais* prier.

From the same principle we would say : *Vous parlez comme un homme QUI ENTEND la matière* (you speak like a man who understands the subject), and not *QUI ENTENDEZ la matière*—because the relative *qui* does not represent the pronoun *vous*, but represents the substantive *homme* which immediately precedes *qui*.

REMARK.—An adjective cannot serve as an antecedent to a relative pronoun ; so, instead of saying : *Nous étions DEUX qui étaient du même avis* (we were two who were of the same opinion), we must say : *Nous étions deux qui ÉTIONS du même avis*, thus making *nous*, the subject of the preceding verb, the antecedent of the relative pronoun.

Observe that we would say: *Nous étions DEUX juges qui ÉTAIENT du même avis* (we were two judges who were of the same opinion), and not *qui ÉTIIONS du même avis*—because the substantive *juges* is the antecedent of the relative *qui*.

RULE. The relative pronoun ought always to be placed near its antecedent; any other place occasions ambiguity. So *Boileau* is not to be imitated when he says :

La déesse, en entrant, qui voit la nappe mise.

He ought to have said : *la DÉESSE QUI, en entrant, voit la nappe mise*, in order to bring the relative *qui* near its antecedent *déesse*.

EXERCISE CLXXXIV.

You *who* are esteemed.—We *who* study.—I *who* believe the
étudier *croire*
soul immortal.—The greatest men *who* were the ornament
ind-4 *ornement m.*
and glory of Greece, Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, even Lycurgus
même Lycurgue
and Solon, went to learn wisdom in Egypt.—The ²mo-
— *ind-3* * *apprendre sagesse f. en*
dern ¹writers *who* attack the ancients, are children *who* beat
écrivain attaquer ancien des battre
their nurse. —I see only us *two who* are reasonable.—It is
nourrice ne que *subj-1 raisonnable C'*
I alone *who* am guilty.
seul coupable

RULE. The relative pronouns, *whom*, *that*, *which*, and also the conjunction *that*, are frequently understood in English, but *que* is always expressed in French; as,

L'homme *que* nous avons vu.
Le vin *que* nous avons bu.
Je crois *que* vous parlez français.

The man (whom or that) we saw.
The wine (that or which) we drank.
I think (that) you speak French.

Note.—The student will already have observed, that the English make much greater use of the ellipsis (or omission of some words) than the French, and that, in general, the words which are understood in English, are expressed in French. For previous instances of the ellipsis occurring in English, and not in French, see pages 9, 10, 21, 22, 36, 38, 57.

EXERCISE CLXXXV.

The lady you have married is my cousin. tea we
 femme *épousée* *thé m.*
 drink is very good.—I will never forget the favour you have
prendre *oublier* *grâce f.*
 done me.—Have you received the letter I wrote to you?—
faite *ai écrite*
 I think he will come.—Titus spent eighty millions in the
 croire *dépensa* — *dans*
 'public 'games he 'once 'gave to the Roman people.
 jeu m. *une fois* *peuple m.*

WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH, are generally expressed in French by *dont*, both in speaking of persons and things; as,

Le ciel, <i>dont</i> le secours est nécessaire.		Heaven, whose assistance is necessary.
L'homme <i>dont</i> il se plaint.		The man of whom he complains.
La maison <i>dont</i> vous parlez.		The house of which you speak.

But, when the relative requires to be separated from its antecedent, instead of *dont*, we use *duquel* and *de laquelle* in speaking of *things* or *animals*; as,

La Tamise, *dans* le lit *de laquelle*, etc. | *The Thames, in the bed of which*, etc.

In speaking of *persons*, it is generally a matter of indifference whether we use *de qui*, or *duquel*, *de laquelle*; as,

Le prince à la protection <i>de qui</i>		The prince to whose patronage I
ou <i>duquel</i> je dois ma fortune.		owe my fortune.

FROM WHOM is rendered by *de qui*, and not by *dont*.

N.B. DONT can only be used when the antecedent is expressed; for, in the beginning of an interrogative phrase, *of whom* would be rendered by *de qui*, and *of which* by *duquel*, *de laquelle*; as,

<i>De qui</i> parlez-vous?		Of whom do you speak?
<i>Duquel</i> vous plaignez-vous?		Of which do you complain?

Notes.—We have said, page 41, that *dont* is never used to ask a question, that is—you never begin a question with *dont*; but, in the body of an interrogative phrase, the word is perfectly correct; as, *Où est la femme dont vous parlez?* Where is the woman *of whom* you speak?

WHOSE, used without reference to a noun expressed before, implies the word *person* understood.

If it can be changed into *of whom*, it is expressed by *de qui*; as,

De qui êtes-vous fils?

| Whose son are you? i.e. of whom are you the son?

If WHOSE can be changed into *to whom*, it is expressed by *à qui*; as,

À qui est ce chapeau?

| Whose hat is this? i.e., to whom does this hat belong?

EXERCISE CLXXXVI.

There is the gentleman whose horse has won the race. —
Voilà † gagner prix de la course
 He is a man of whom I have a good opinion. — The lady of whom
C' dame
 you are speaking is gone. — Here is the book of which you
ind-1 partir Voici
 made me a present. — The daughter of Minos gave a thread to
*ind-4 * présent — ind-3 fil m.*
 Theseus, (by means) of which he got out of the labyrinth. —
Thésée au moyen sortir ind-3 labyrinthe m.
 The people from whom you expect so many services deceive
gens attendre tant de — tromper
 you. — Whose daughter is she? — Whose house is that?

When WHOM and WHICH come after any preposition (except *of*), *whom* is expressed by *qui*, and *which* by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*; as,

Le monsieur à QUI j'écris est très riche.	The gentleman to whom I write is very rich.
Il y a un Dieu, par QUI tout est gouverné.	There is a God, by whom all things are governed.
Le cheval sur LEQUEL il est.	The horse on which he is.
La chaise dans LAQUELLE il est.	The chaise in which he is.
Le bonheur après LEQUEL j'aspire.	The happiness after which I aspire.

It follows from the foregoing rule, that *qui*, preceded by a preposition, is never said of things, but only of persons. So, we can say: *La personne à qui j'ai donné ma confiance*; but we cannot say: *Les sciences à qui je m'applique*. We must say: *Les sciences auxquelles je m'applique*.

† *Monsieur*, not *gentilhomme*, which, in the French language, means *nobleman*.

EXERCISE CLXXXVII.

The man, *for whom* you speak, is gone to Paris.—He is a
aller C^r
 friend *in whom* I put my confidence.—There are two things
en mettre confiance f. y avoir
 to *which* we must (accustom ourselves) under pain of finding
falloir s'accoutumer peine inf-1
 life insupportable: the injuries of time and the injustices of
injure f.
 men.—Regulus, in his expedition against Carthage, had to
Régulus — ind-3
 combat a prodigious serpent, *against which* it was necessary to
*combattre — m. falloir ind-3 **
 employ ²the whole Roman army.

§ V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—See page 44.

1. Though the pronoun *ON* is generally followed by a masculine singular; as,

ON n'est pas toujours HEUREUX. | People are not always fortunate.

Yet, when it is quite evident that a female is spoken of, *on* should be followed by a feminine singular; as,

ON n'est pas toujours JEUNE et | A woman cannot be always young
JOLIE.—(Acad.) and pretty.

On may likewise be followed by an adjective or substantive plural, when the sense clearly indicates that this pronoun relates to several persons: the verb however remains singular; as,

ON se battit en désespérés. | They fought like desperate men.
Ici ON est égaux. (Inscription sur la porte d'un cimetière.)

2. *On* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the subject or nominative; as,

ON le loue, ON le menace, ON le | They praise, threaten, and caress
caresse; mais, quoi que l'on | him; but whatever they do, they
fasse, ON ne peuvent venir à bout. | cannot master him.

N.B. When *they* is used with reference to a plural noun expressed before, it is rendered in French by *il* or *elles*, and not by *on*.

Observe also, that although *ON* frequently represents *WE, THEY, PEOPLE*, which are all of the plural number, yet *ON* is always followed by a verb in the third person singular.

3. The English have an indefinite manner of expressing themselves, by means of the *indefinite* pronoun *IT*, which the French express by *ON*, at the same time changing the verb from the passive into the active sense ; as,

ON dit. *ON* pense. *ON* rapporte. | *It is said. It is thought. It is reported.*

4. *On* is much used in French as the subject of an active verb, when the passive voice is used in English. So, instead of saying as the English : *I am deceived* ;—*I have been told* ; the French say : *On me trompe* ;—*On m'a dit* ; as if it were, *They deceive me* ; *They have told me*.

CHACUN, *each, everyone*. This pronoun is always singular, but when preceded by a plural, it is sometimes followed by *son, sa, ses*, and sometimes by *leur, leurs*.

Chacun takes *son, sa, ses*, when it is placed after the direct regimen, or when the verb has no regimen of that nature ; as,

Ils ont apporté leurs offrandes, <i>chacun selon ses moyens.</i>	<i>They have brought their offerings, everyone according to his means.</i>
Les deux rois se sont retirés, <i>chacun</i> dans sa tente.	<i>The two kings have retired, each to his tent.</i>
Ils ont opiné, <i>chacun à son tour.</i>	<i>They voted, each in his turn.</i>

Chacun takes *leur, leurs*, when it is placed before the direct regimen ; as,

Ils ont apporté, <i>chacun, leurs</i> of- frandes.	<i>Each of them has brought his offer- ing.</i>
Ils ont donné, <i>chacun, leur</i> avis.	<i>Each of them gave his opinion.</i>

EXERCISE CLXXXVIII.

When a woman is handsome, she (is not ignorant of it).—
*Quand * on ne l'ignore pas*
We are not slaves, to endure such ill treatment.—In
On des pour endurer de si mauvais pl.
that house, they laugh, play, dance, and sing.—*It is believed*
*rire danser **
that peace (will be made) this year. — *We have been much*
se fera année f. bien
deceived.—*He is said to have succeeded.*—Return those medals,
trompés réussi Remettre médailles.
each to its place.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

§ I. AGREEMENT of the VERB with its SUBJECT or NOMINATIVE.

GENERAL RULE.—A verb must agree with its subject in number and person ; as,

Nous lisons ; vous lisez. | We read ; you read. [asleep.
La haine veille, et l'amitié s'endort. | Hatred is awake, and friendship is

Observation.—When a verb has more than one subject, it is put in the plural ; as,

Mon frère et lui parlent français. | My brother and he speak French.

And, should the subjects be of different persons, the verb must agree with the first person in preference to the other two, and with the second rather than with the third. In this case, the pronoun *nous* (not expressed in English) is *generally*[†] placed before the verb, if one of the subjects is in the *first* person ; and the pronoun *vous*,[†] if the *second* person is used with the *third*. without a *first* person ; as,

Vous et moi, nous avons fait notre | You and I have done our duty.
devoir. (Acad.)
J'ai appris que vous et votre frère | I have heard that you and your
vous partiez bientôt. (Ibid.) | brother were soon to set out.

EXERCISE CLXXXIX.

²Riches ¹often attract friends, and poverty keeps them
richesses pl. attirer art. éloigner
away.—Religion watches over ²secret ¹crimes ; the laws watch
* — f. veiller — m.

[†] Observe, I say, *generally*, and not *always*, as most grammarians do ; for *nous* or *vous* may sometimes be understood, as in this sentence of Fénelon : *Narbal et moi admirions la bonté des dieux*. Narbal and I were admiring the goodness of the gods.

over²public¹crimes.—Virgil, Horace, and Tibullus *were* friends.

Tibulle ind-2

—He and she *will go* to the country with my father.—You, *campagne f.*

your cousin, and I, *have* each a ²different ¹opinion.—You and *f.*

he *shall accompany* me to the botanical garden.
accompagner

EXCEPTION.

When two subjects singular are joined by the conjunction *ou* (or, either), the verb is put in the singular ; as,

Jean *ou* Jacques *le fera.* | *John or James will do it.*

When, however, the words joined by *ou* are of different persons, usage requires the verb to be in the plural, and that it should agree with the person that has priority, that is, with the first person rather than with the other two, and with the second rather than with the third ; as,

Vous *ou* moi *PARLERONS.* | *You or I shall speak.*

Vous *ou* votre frère *VIENDREZ.* | *You or your brother will come.*

REMARKS.

1. As *l'un et l'autre* (both), expresses plurality, the verb should be put in the plural ; as,

L'un et l'autre *SONT* venus. | *Both are come.*

L'un et l'autre *ont* promis.—(Racine.)

L'un et l'autre *ont* le cerveau troublé.—(Boileau.)

2. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* (neither, neither the one nor the other), and all subjects joined together by *ni* repeated, require also the verb in the plural ; as,

J'ai lu vos deux discours : *ni l'un ni l'autre ne SONT* bons. | *I have read your two speeches ; neither the one nor the other is good.*

Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous *rendent* heureux.—(La Fontaine.)

Exception.—When one of the words united by *ni* can alone perform the action expressed by the verb, the verb is then put in the singular ; as,

Ni l'un ni l'autre *n'OBTIENDRA* le prix. | *Neither the one nor the other will obtain the prize.*

Ni M. le duc, ni M. le comte ne *sera* nommé ambassadeur à Saint-Petersbourg. | *Neither the Duke nor the Count will be appointed ambassador to St. Petersburg.*

Observe that *Ni l'un ni l'autre* takes *NE* before the verb.

EXERCISE CXG.

It was either Pitt or Fox who *said* that.—*Either* mildness,
C' ind-1 * ind-4 *douceur* f.
 or force *will do* it.—*Either* the one or the other *will write* to
 ind-7
 you.—It was either he or I that *did* that.—I send you my
 ind-1 * ind-4
 two servants, *both are* honest.—*Neither* has done his duty.—
domestique *honnête* *devoir* m.
Neither of them *shall marry* my daughter.
 * * *épouser*

3. We have already seen (page 11) that there are two sorts of collective nouns: the *collective general*, and the *collective partitive*.—The *collective general* are those which express the totality of the persons or things of which we speak; as, *l'armée*, the army, *la foule*, the crowd; or a determinate number of those same persons or things; as, *la moitié*, the half.—The *collective partitive* are those which express only a partial number; as, *une quantité*, a quantity, *une foule*, a crowd.

La troupe de voleurs s'est introduite, the gang of thieves got in:—*Une troupe de voleurs se sont introduits*, a gang of thieves got in. In the first sentence *troupe* is a *collective general*; in the second it is a *collective partitive*.

RULE I. When a *collective general* is followed by the preposition *de* (of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun, participle, and verb, *agree with the collective general*; as,

<i>L'armée</i> des infidèles FUT entière- ment détruite. Il a fourni LE NOMBRE d'exem- plaires CONVENU.—(Acad.)	The army of the infidels was en- tirely destroyed. He has furnished the number of copies agreed upon.
--	--

RULE II. When a *collective partitive* is followed by the preposition *de* (of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun, participle, and verb, *agree with the last noun*, because it

expresses the principal idea, and more particularly fixes the attention ; as,

LA PLUPART du monde le CROIT.	<i>Most people believe it.</i>
LA PLUPART des hommes le PENS- SENT.	<i>Most men think so.</i>
UN grand NOMBRE d'ennemis PA- RURENT.	<i>A great many enemies appeared.</i>
Il trouva UNE PARTIE des abricots mangés, UNE PARTIE des liqueurs BUES.	<i>He found a part of the apricots eaten, a part of the liquors drunk.</i>

Observations.—1. Adverbs of quantity, as *peu*, few ; *beaucoup*, many ; *assez*, enough ; *plus*, more ; *trop*, too many, etc., are considered as collectives partitive. Consequently we write :—

Peu de gens négligent leurs intérêts.	<i>Few people neglect their interests.</i>
Beaucoup de monde était à la promenade.	<i>Many people were walking.</i>

2. *Peu*, *beaucoup*, and *la plupart*, used by themselves, require the verb in the plural ; as,

Le sénat fut partagé, LA PLUPART VOULAIENT que...	<i>The senate was divided, the major- ity wished...</i>
--	---

The noun which here regulates the agreement of the verb is understood : *La plupart des SÉNATEURS voulaient que*, etc. ; the majority of the SENATORS wished...

EXERCISE CXCI.

It was with James the first, that began that series of
C' ind-1 à † que ind-1 chains f.
misfortunes which gave to the house of Stuart the title of
malheur ind-4 titrem.
unfortunate.—A troop of nymphs, crowned with flowers,
infortuné troupe f. nymphe f. de
swam behind her car.—Few men reason, and all wish to
ind-2 derrière char m. raisonner vouloir *
decide.—Most of them were of that opinion.
* * ind-3 avis m.

† See Rule III., page 195.

Additional Remarks upon the General Rule.

1. When the words forming the subject are synonymous, the verb agrees, in French, with the last noun ; as,

Son courage, son intrépidité *donne* les plus braves.—(*Domergue.*)

Synonymous nouns must never be joined, in French, by the conjunction *et*.

2. The verb agrees also with the last noun only, although the nouns be not synonymous, if we dwell more on the last than upon the others, either because it explains the preceding nouns—is more energetic, or is of such moment that the others are forgotten ; as,

Le fer, le bandeau, la flamme *est* toute prête.—(*Racine.*)

Le Pérou, le Potose, l'Alzire *est* sa conquête.—(*Voltaire.*)

3. The verb is put in the singular, although preceded by plurals, when there is an expression which sums up all the nouns into one, such as *tout, rien, personne, nul, chacun* ; or when the conjunction *mais* is placed before the last noun, and this noun is in the singular ; as,

Paroles et regards, *tout est* charme dans vous.—(*La Fontaine.*)

Crainte, périls, *rien ne m'a* retenu.—(*Racine.*)

Non-seulement toutes ses richesses, *mais* toute sa vertu *s'évanouit*.—(*Vaugelas.*)

Words and looks, every thing is a charm in you.

Neither fear nor dangers, nothing could restrain me.

Not only all his riches, but all his virtue vanished.

4. When two subjects are joined by the following and similar conjunctions, *comme, de même que, ainsi que, aussi bien que*, the verb agrees with the first subject, the second being the subject of a verb understood ; as,

Cette bataille, *comme* tant d'autres, *ne décida* de rien.—(*Voltaire.*)

Aristophane, *aussi bien que* Ménandre, *charma*it les Grecs.—(*J. B. Rousseau.*)

That battle, like so many others, decided nothing.

Aristophanes, as well as Menander, delighted the Greeks.

It is as if it were :

Cette bataille ne décida de rien, *comme* tant d'autres batailles ne décidèrent de rien.

Aristophane charma^t les Grecs, *aussi bien que* Ménandre charma^t les Grecs.

EXERCISE CXCII.

Vanity, says Pascal, is so rooted in the ²human ¹heart, that
ancré de l'homme
 a scullion, a porter even *boasts*, and *wishes* to have his
*marmiton crocheteur * se vanter vouloir **
 admirers.—Games, conversations, shows, *nothing* diverts
admirateur † jeu spectacle ne distraire
 her.—The strength of the mind, *like* that of the body, is the
force f. âme f.
 fruit of temperance.—Alcibiades, *as well as* Plato, was
art. Alcibiade
 among the disciples of Socrates.
au nombre de

§ II. PLACE OF THE SUBJECT OF THE VERB.

RULE. The subject or nominative is generally placed *before* the verb, in French, as in English ; as,

<i>Le maître enseigne, et l'écuyer apprend.</i>	<i>The master teaches, and the scholar learns.</i>
<i>Nous irons vous voir.</i>	<i>We shall come and see you.</i>

There are a few cases in which the subject is placed *after* the verb ; they are the following :—

1st. When, in any interrogative sentence, the subject is a *pronoun* ; as,

Quand viendra-t-elle ? | When will she come ?

But if, in asking a question, the subject of the verb is a *noun*, the noun is placed *before* the verb, and to show that a question is asked, one of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, is placed immediately *after* the verb ; as,

Votre frère parle-t-il français? | **Does your brother speak French?**
Vos sœurs sont-elles arrivées? | **Have your sisters arrived?**

Remark.—When an interrogative sentence begins with *que, à quoi, où*, we generally place the noun subject *after* the verb, without adding a pronoun to it; as,

Que fait votre frère ? **What is your brother doing ?**
À quoi s'occupe votre sœur ? **What is your sister busy with ?**
Où demeure votre oncle ? **Where does your uncle live ?**

(See the *Preliminary Remarks* on Interrogation, page 82.)

† See Remark, page 200.

2d. When, as in English, we quote the words of another person ; as,

Que ferai-je ? dit *Télémaque*. | *What shall I do ?* said *Telemachus*.

3d. When the subjunctive mood is used without any conjunction being expressed ; as,

Fasse LE CIEL que vous soyez | *Heaven grant you may be happy !*
heureux !

Dussé-je y périr, j'irai. | *Should I perish there, I will go.*

This turn of expression has more vivacity than if we had said : *Je souhaite QUE le ciel fasse que vous soyez heureux. QUOIQUE je dusse y périr, j'irai.*

4th. When the sentence begins with a unipersonal (or impersonal) verb, or with one of these words, AINSI, *thus*, so ; TEL, *such* ; as,

Il est arrivé d'heureux changements. | *Happy changes have taken place.*

Ainsi finit cette tragédie. | *Thus ended that tragedy.*

Tel fut le résultat de sa folie | *Such was the result of his folly.*

(See Rule III., page 230.)

5th. When the subject is followed by several words which are dependent upon it ; as in this phrase of *Fénelon* :—

Il coulent mille RUISSEAUX qui dis- | *There flow a thousand rivulets that*
tribuent partout une eau claire. | *carry everywhere a clear water.*

This transposition of the subject is sometimes indispensable, and sometimes only the effect of taste.

EXERCISE CXCIIL.

The violet is the emblem of modesty.—Are they gone ?—
violettes f. emblème m. partir

Does your cousin often come to see you ?—What will posterity
venir

think ?—You are wrong, said her father to her.—May you
ind-7 avoir tort Pouvoir

succeed in your projects !—²(Great misfortunes) ¹(have hap-
réussir malheur m.

pened.)—So goes the world.—Such was his advice.—On one
monde m. avis m. D'

side was seen a river (from which) sprung islands lined with
on ind-2 où se former bordé de

lime trees in bloom.
tilleul fleuri

§ III. GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

The *regimen*, *object*, or *complement* of a verb, is a word which completes the idea begun by the verb.

There are two sorts of regimens, the one called *direct*, the other *indirect*.

The *direct regimen* denotes the immediate object of the action of the verb, without the help of any preposition, and answers to the question *qui ?* (whom ?) for persons, and *quoi ?* (what ?) for things ; as, *J'aime mon père*, I love my father. *J'aime, QUI ? mon père.*—*Il aime l'étude*, he likes study. *Il aime, QUOI ? l'étude.* *Mon père* and *l'étude* then are the direct regimens of the verb *aimer*, since they complete, without the help of any preposition, the idea begun by the verb.

The *indirect regimen* completes in an *indirect* manner the idea begun by the verb ; that is, it completes it only by means of a preposition expressed or understood ; it answers to the question *à qui ? de qui ? pour qui ? par qui ?* etc., for persons ; and *à quoi ? pour quoi ? de quoi ?* etc., for things ; as, *Il parle à son frère*, he speaks to his brother. *Il parle, à QUI ? à son frère.* *À son frère* is then the indirect regimen of *parler*, and completes the action expressed by that verb, by means of the preposition *à*.

The *direct regimen* corresponds to the *accusative* ; the *indirect regimen* to the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative* of the Latin.

RULE I. When a verb has two regimens, the one direct and the other indirect, the shorter must be placed first ; as,

Les hypocrites parent le vice des dehors de la vertu.

Les hypocrites parent des dehors de la vertu les vices les plus honteux et les plus décriés.

Hypocrites deck vice with the exterior of virtue.

Hypocrites deck with the exterior of virtue the most shameful and odious vices.

EXERCISE CXC.V.

Your brother is honoured and respected *by* all who know
honorer *ceux*
 him.—(Covetous men) are tormented *with* the desire of
avare
 increasing what they have.—Bombs were invented *by*
augmenter inf-1 *ce qu'* *bombe* f. ind-3
 Gallen, a bishop of Munster, about the middle of the 16th
vers
 century.—The city of Troy was taken, plundered, and
ville f. ind-3 *saccager*
 destroyed *by* the Greeks, 1184 years B.C. This event
détruire *avant* J.-C. *événement* m.
 has been celebrated *by* the two greatest poets of Greece and
 art.
 Italy.

The preposition TO, before a second verb in the infinitive, is expressed in French by A, DE, or POUR, but not indiscriminately. Sometimes also there is no preposition at all in French.

EXAMPLES.

J'aime à lire.	<i>I like to read.</i>
Je crains de tomber.	<i>I fear to fall.</i>
Je le fais pour vous obliger.	<i>I do it to oblige you.</i>
Ou laissez-moi périr, ou laissez-moi régner.—(Corneille.)	<i>Either allow me to perish, or allow me to reign.</i>

It is important to observe, that when in French a preposition is required before an infinitive, it is the foregoing verb, noun, or adjective that determines which is to be used, according as that verb, noun, or adjective governs one or another preposition. This government must therefore be ascertained. This is one of the principal difficulties of the French language, and, in order to remove it, we give two Lists of Verbs, with the prepositions that they respectively govern, and a third List of those Verbs that require no preposition.

N.B. The present infinitive is used after prepositions* in French, and not the present participle; as,

Amusez-vous *à* lire.
Il m'empêche *de* le faire.

Amuse yourself with reading.
He hinders me from doing it.

The only exception is *EN*; as,

Nous causerons *en* marchant.
Il donna cet ordre *en* partant.

We shall talk as we walk.
He gave that order in going away.

LIST I. *Verbs which require the preposition À before the infinitive which follows them.*

s'Abaisser <i>à</i> ,	to stoop to.	Demander <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , ‡	to ask to.
aboutir <i>à</i> ,	to end in, tend to.	destiner <i>à</i> ,	to destine to.
s'accorder <i>à</i> ,	to agree in.	se déterminer <i>à</i> ,	to resolve upon.
accoutumer <i>à</i> ,	to accustom to.	disposer <i>à</i> ,	to dispose to.
aider <i>à</i> ,	to help to, assist in.	donner <i>à</i> ,	to give to.
aimer <i>à</i> ,	to like to. [with.	s'Efforcer <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , ‡	(physical) to
s'amuser <i>à</i> ,	to amuse oneself		endeavour to.
animer <i>à</i> ,	to animate to.	employer <i>à</i> ,	to employ to, use to.
s'appliquer <i>à</i> ,	to apply to.	s'empresser <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , ‡	to be eager to.
apprendre <i>à</i> ,	to learn to.	encourager <i>à</i> ,	to encourage to.
s'apprêter <i>à</i> ,	to get ready to.	engager <i>à</i> ,	to induce to.
aspirer <i>à</i> ,	to aspire to.	enhardir <i>à</i> ,	to embolden to.
s'attendre <i>à</i> ,	to expect to.	enseigner <i>à</i> ,	to teach to.
autoriser <i>à</i> ,	to authorise to.	s'étudier <i>à</i> ,	to study to.
avoir <i>à</i> ,	to have to.	exceller <i>à</i> ,	to excel in.
Balancer <i>à</i> ,	to hesitate to.	exciter <i>à</i> ,	to excite to.
Chercher <i>à</i> ,	to seek to.	exercer <i>à</i> ,	to exercise in.
commencer <i>à</i> , †	to begin to.	exhorter <i>à</i> ,	to exhort to.
condamner <i>à</i> ,	to condemn to.	exposer <i>à</i> ,	to expose to.
condescendre <i>à</i> ,	to condescend to.	se Fatiguer <i>à</i> ,	to get tired with.
consentir <i>à</i> ,	to consent to.	forcer <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> ,	to force to, compel
consister <i>à</i> ,	to consist in.	Gagner <i>à</i> ,	to gain by. [to.
continuer <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , ‡	to continue to.	Habituer <i>à</i> ,	to accustom to.
contraindre <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> ,	to compel to.	haïr <i>à</i> ,	to hate to.
contribuer <i>à</i> ,	to contribute to.	se hasarder <i>à</i> ,	to venture to.

* To ascertain which preposition to use, consult the Lists.

† Some writers occasionally use *de*, and establish a shade of difference between *commencer à* and *commencer de*; but, according to the latest decisions of the *French Academy*, *à* may be properly used in all cases.

‡ As it sounds best, i.e., *de* to avoid several *à*, and *à* to avoid several *de*.

|| *À* or *de*, as it sounds best in the active sense, but always *de* in the passive.

hésiter à, to hesitate to.	persister à, to persist in.
Inviter à, to invite to.	se plaisir à, to delight in.
se Mettre à, to set about to, be-	préparer à, to prepare to.
montrer à, to show to. [gin to.	provoquer à, to incite to. [to.
Obliger à, de, † to oblige to.	Recommencer à, to begin again
s'obstiner à, to persist in.	renoncer à, to renounce to.
s'offrir à, to offer to.	se résoudre à, to resolve to.
oublier à, to forget how.	réussir à, to succeed to, in.
Parvenir à, to succeed in.	Servir à, to serve to.
passer à, to spend in.	songer à, to think of.
penser à, to think of.	Tâcher à, to aim at.
perdre à, to lose in.	tendre à, to tend to.
persévérer à, to persevere in.	Viser à, to aim at.

EXERCISE CXCVI

I shall not stoop to justify myself.—He likes to be flattered.
ne point se justifier
 —He amuses himself with making ²chemical¹ experiments.
pr. art. de chimie expérience
 —I expect to meet with many difficulties.—I have to thank
bien des
 you.—I begin to understand.—Liberality consists less in giving
comprendre
 much, than in giving seasonably.—He is asking to come in.—
beaucoup à propos entrer
 They encouraged me to continue.—The example of his ancestors
ind-3 ancêtre
 excites him to distinguish himself.—I offer to serve you.—Pre-
se distinguer
 pare yourself to receive him
-vous

LIST II. Verbs which require the preposition DE before the infinitive which follows them.

s'Abstenir de, to abstain from.	s'affliger de, to be grieved at.
accuser de, to accuse of.	ambitionner de, to be ambitious
achever de, to finish to.	appréhender de, to fear to. [to.
affecter de, to affect to.	avertir de, to warn to.

† A or de, as it sounds best; but with the meaning of doing a service, or in a passive sense, always de.

s'aviser <i>de</i> ,	to bethink of.	se Hâter <i>de</i> ,	to hasten to.
Blâmer <i>de</i> ,	to blame for.	Manquer <i>de</i> ,	to fail to.
brûler <i>de</i> ,	to be impatient to.	menacer <i>de</i> ,	to threaten to.
Cesser <i>de</i> ,	to cease to.	mériter <i>de</i> ,	to deserve to.
charger <i>de</i> ,	to charge to.	Négliger <i>de</i> ,	to neglect to.
commander <i>de</i> ,	to command to.	Offrir <i>de</i> ,	to offer to.
conjuré <i>de</i> ,	to conjure to.	omettre <i>de</i> ,	to omit to.
conseiller <i>de</i> ,	to advise to.	ordonner <i>de</i> ,	to order to.
convenir <i>de</i> ,	to agree to.	oublier <i>de</i> ,	to forget to.
craindre <i>de</i> ,	to fear to.	Pardonner <i>de</i> ,	to forgive for.
Défendre <i>de</i> ,	to forbid to.	permettre <i>de</i> ,	to permit to.
défier <i>de</i> ,	to defy to.	persuader <i>de</i> ,	to persuade to.
se dépêcher <i>de</i> ,	to make haste to.	se piquer <i>de</i> ,	to pretend to.
désespérer <i>de</i> ,	to despair to, of.	plaindre <i>de</i> ,	to pity to, for.
différer <i>de</i> ,	to defer to, to de-	prescrire <i>de</i> ,	to prescribe to.
dire <i>de</i> ,	to tell to. [lay to.	presser <i>de</i> ,	to press to, urge to.
discontinuer <i>de</i> ,	to discontinue to.	prier <i>de</i> ,	to request to.
disconvenir <i>de</i> ,	to disown to.	promettre <i>de</i> ,	to promise to.
dispenser <i>de</i> ,	to dispense with.	proposer <i>de</i> ,	to propose to.
dissuader <i>de</i> ,	to dissuade from.	Recommander <i>de</i> ,	to recommend
Écrire <i>de</i> ,	to write to. [pour to.	refuser <i>de</i> ,	to refuse to. [to.
s'efforcer <i>de</i> ,	(moral) to endea-	regretter <i>de</i> ,	to regret to.
empêcher <i>de</i> ,	to prevent to.	se réjouir <i>de</i> ,	to rejoice to.
entreprendre <i>de</i> ,	to undertake to.	remercier <i>de</i> ,	to thank for.
essayer <i>de</i> ,	to try to.	se repentir <i>de</i> ,	to repent of, to.
s'étonner <i>de</i> ,	to be astonished at.	reprocher <i>de</i> ,	to reproach for.
éviter <i>de</i> ,	to avoid to.	résoudre <i>de</i> ,	to resolve to.
excuser <i>de</i> ,	to excuse for.	rire <i>de</i> ,	to laugh at.
exempter <i>de</i> ,	to exempt from.	risquer <i>de</i> ,	to run the risk to.
Feindre <i>de</i> ,	to feign to.	rougir <i>de</i> ,	to blush to.
féliciter <i>de</i> ,	to congratulate upon.	Soupçonner <i>de</i> ,	to suspect to.
finir <i>de</i> ,	to finish to.	se souvenir <i>de</i> ,	to remember to.
se flatter <i>de</i> ,	to flatter oneself to.	suggérer <i>de</i> ,	to suggest to.
se Garder <i>de</i> ,	to take care not to.	supplier <i>de</i> ,	to entreat to.
se glorifier <i>de</i> ,	to glory in.	Tâcher <i>de</i> ,	to endeavour to.
gronder <i>de</i> ,	to scold for.	se Vanter <i>de</i> ,	to boast of.

REMARK.—Verbs generally require, before a noun, the same preposition that they require before an infinitive; as,

Il faut accoutumer les enfants à obéir—à l'obéissance.	We must accustom children to obey —to obedience.
Je l'accuse DE négliger ses études.	I accuse him OF neglecting his studies.
Je l'accuse DE négligence.	I accuse him OF negligence.

EXERCISE CXCVII.

Abstain from injuring your enemies.—The courtiers of Darius
nuire à sing. *courtisan* —
accused Daniel of having violated the laws of the Persians.—
 ind-2 — *violer* *Perse*
Your brother will never cease to think of you.—Zerbinette has
 ind-7
charged me to come and tell you that . . .—God *commands us to*
que . . .
love him.—I *would advise you to speak to him.*—Reason
conseiller
forbids us to commit an injustice.—Who *told you to do it.*—
faire ind-4
He has undertaken to translate Homer.
traduire

EXERCISE CXCVIII.

I *shall not fail to do what you wish.*—I *ordered him to*
ce que *vouloir* ind-4
go and see him.—You *forgot to come this morning.*—They
 ind-4 *matin m. On*
 *
have persuaded him to marry.—I *promise to observe what*
lui se marier
the law orders me.—We should *blush to commit* faults,
ordonner *Il faut* *commettre* pr. art.
but not to acknowledge them.—I will *endeavour to satisfy you.*
non avouer tâcher
 —General Desaix *contributed to the gaining of the battle of*
 ind-3 *gain m. bataille f.*
Marengo.—I *thank you for your kindness.*
bonté f.

LIST III. *Verbs which require no preposition in French before the infinitive which follows them, whether a preposition be used in English or not.*

Aimer mieux,* to like better.	{ J'aime mieux voir mon fils. (J. B. Rousseau.)
Aller, to go.	Le Rhin ira grossir la Loire. (Boileau.)
Compter, to intend.	Il compte partir demain. (Acad.)
Croire, to think.	Elle croyait servir l'état. (Bossuet.)
Daigner, to deign.	Daignez leur parler. (Boileau.)
Devoir, to owe.	{ Le jour qui doit nous rendre heureux. (L. Racine.)
Entendre, to hear.	J'en ai entendu parler. (Acad.)
Espérer,† to hope.	{ Il espère revivre en sa postérité. (Racine.)
Faire, to make, to cause.	Je le fis nommer chef. (Le même.)
Falloir, to be necessary.	Il faut voir. (Acad.)
s'Imaginer, to fancy.	Il s'imagine être un grand docteur. (Ib.)
Laisser, to leave, to let.	Il laisse opprimer l'innocence. (Rac.)
Oser, to dare.	{ Qui suis-je pour oser murmurer ? (L. Racine.)
Paraître, to appear.	Il paraît être satisfait. (Acad.)
Pouvoir, to be able.	{ Rien ne peut prospérer sur des terres ingrates. (L. Racine.)
Prétendre, to pretend.	Il prétend donner la loi. (Acad.)
Savoir, to know.	{ Je sais lire et écrire. (Molière, le Bourgeois gentilhomme.)
Sembler, to seem.	{ L'ennui semble dire aux humains. . . (Voltaire.)
Souhaiter,‡ to wish.	{ Je souhaiterais pouvoir vous obliger. (Acad.)
Valoir mieux,* to be better.	Il vaut mieux attendre un peu. (Ibid.)
Venir,§ to come.	Je viens adorer l'Éternel. (Racine.)
Voir, to see.	Il n'aime pas à voir souffrir. (Acad.)
Vouloir, to be willing.	{ Voulez-vous du public mériter les amours ? (Sans cesse en écrivant variez vos discours. (Boil.)

* *Aimer mieux ; valoir mieux*, followed by two verbs in the infinitive, require *de* before the second infinitive: *J'aimerais mieux mourir, que de faire une si mauvaise action.*—*Il y a beaucoup d'occasions où il vaut mieux se taire que de parler.*

† *Espérer*, being in the present infinitive, and followed by another verb also in the present infinitive, requires *de*: *Peut-on espérer de vous revoir ?*

‡ It is also used with *de*: *Je souhaite de vous voir.*—(Racine.)

§ *Venir* in the sense of *to be just, to have just*, requires *de* before the next infinitive; when used for *to happen*, it requires *à*; as,

Il vient de sortir.

N'il venait à mourir.

He is just gone out.

If he should happen to die.

EXERCISE CXCIX.

I like better to pardon than to punish you.—She is going to
 vous
 sing.—When do you intend to go?—A man of honour ought to
 Quand partir ind-1
 keep his word.—I hope to see you often.—I will show you
 parole f. faire voir
 all the curiosities of the town.—He appeared to hesitate, but
 curiosité f. ind-2
 we encouraged him.—My sister wishes very much to go to
 ind-3
 France.—It is better to work than to beg. — Cæsar ordered
 mendier ind-3
 Labienus to come and join him.—She will not stay.
 à * rester.

General Rule for the use of POUR.

To, before an INFINITIVE, is expressed by POUR, when
 in order to, is either expressed or understood in English ;
 as,

Je suis venu pour le complimenter. | I came in order to congratulate him.
 Je vais à la campagne pour chasser. | I am going into the country to shoot.

The English present participle, preceded by the pre-
 position FOR, explaining the motive of an action, is also
 expressed in French by the INFINITIVE with POUR ; as,
 Il a été chassé pour avoir menti. | He was expelled for telling lies.

EXERCISE CC.

They all agree to deceive me.—I come to tell you that
 s'accorder
 your brother has arrived.—I was going to write to you
 est
 to ask a favour of you.—I want money to buy a horse.—
 grâce f. * ai besoin d'
 I have not money enough to buy one.—I shall do it in order
 en
 not to displease you.—I have done all (I could) to gain his
 déplaire mon possible
 friendship.—He was banished for life for having robbed
 ind-3 bannir à perpétuité voler
 on the highway.
 grand chemin.

§ IV. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

The INDICATIVE mood simply declares a thing ; as, *Elle CHANTE bien*, she sings well ; or it asks a question ; as, *CHANTE-t-elle bien ?* does she sing well ? This mood has eight tenses—the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterite definite*, the *preterite indefinite*, the *preterite anterior*, the *pluperfect*, the *future absolute* (or *simple*), and the *future anterior*.

The PRESENT tense expresses something doing or existing at the present time ; as, *J'écris*, I am writing ; *Nous sommes*, we are. It is also used to express a *habit* or *custom* ; as, *Il fume*, he smokes.

In historical narration, the *present* tense is used for the *past*, in order to awaken the attention, and make the thing, as it were, present ; as,

<i>César quitte la Gaule, passe le</i>	<i>César leaves Gaul, crosses the</i>
<i>Rubicon, et entre en Italie avec</i>	<i>Rubicon, and enters Italy with</i>
<i>cinq mille hommes.</i>	<i>five thousand men.</i>

The *present* is also sometimes used to express a *future* near at hand ; as,

<i>Je suis de retour dans un moment.</i>	<i>I shall be back in a moment.</i>
<i>Où ALLEZ-VOUS ce soir ?</i>	<i>Where are you going this evening ?</i>

N.B.—In English there are *three* different ways of expressing the PRESENT : *I speak, I do speak, I am speaking* ; but in French there is only one way, *Je parle*. There is likewise but one expression in French for any other tense, when the verb *to be* is used with the present participle ; thus, *I shall be writing*, must be rendered by *j'écrirai*, and *I should be doing* by *je ferais*. The verb which is in the present participle is thus put in the tense expressed by the auxiliary *to be*.

EXERCISE CCI.

My sister *is* in her room, where she *is reading* the celebrated
 où
 discourse of Bossuet on Universal History. — Everybody
discours m.

thinks that either ²your⁴brother²or¹you have written that song.
penser *

—It ²seldom ¹rains in Egypt.—Seamen *smoke* a great deal.—
en marin beaucoup

The battle *begins*, and immediately a cloud of arrows *darkens*
aussitôt nuée f. trait m. obscurcir
the air, and *covers* the combatants.—I *shall be* with you in a
à la

minute.—I *set out* to-morrow for the country.
partir

The IMPERFECT (*je parlais*, I was speaking, I spoke, I did speak, I used to speak) expresses a thing having been done at the moment that another took place ; as,

Je PENSÀIS à vous, quand vous | I was thinking of you, when you
êtes entré. | came in.

It is also used when we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was *habitual*, or has been *reiterated* : as,

Quand j'étais à Paris, je me PRO- | When I was in Paris, I generally
MENÀIS ordinairement dans les | walked in the Champs Elysées.
Champs Elysées.
J'y RENCONTRAIS souvent des | I often met Englishmen there.
Anglais.

Finally, the *imperfect* is used in describing the *qualities* of persons or things, the *state*, *place*, and *disposition* in which they were in a *time past*, but without fixing the time of its duration ; as,

Alfred *était* un grand roi. | Alfred was a great king.
Carthage *était* sur le bord de la mer. | Carthage was on the sea-coast.

Note.—Suppose you have to translate into French, *I spoke, I wrote*, and you are in doubt whether to use the Imperfect or Preterite, see whether you can turn the expression into, *I used to speak, I used to write*, or into, *I was speaking, I was writing*—if you can, the Imperfect is your tense. This rule is infallible.

EXERCISE CCII.

Montezuma *reigned* over the Mexicans, when Fernando
régnait *lorsque* Fernand-
Cortez attacked Mexico.—Socrates, wishing to harden himself,
Cortès *ind-3* *s'endurcir*

went barefoot in the depth of winter.—In ^{plus fort}ancient ^{ancien}times.

those who ^àwere taken in war ^{devenir}lost their liberty and ^{s'}became slaves.

—Among the Romans, the plebeians ^{plébéien}attached themselves, under ^{s'}Chez

the name of clients, to some patrician whom they ^{quelque patricien}called their

patron.—The temple of Delphi ^{Delphes}had for an inscription this

maxim : KNOW THYSELF. — The pyramids of Egypt ^{*}were

intended as ^{de}burying-places for the kings.
^{destiner à art. sépulture f. s.}

The PRETERITE DEFINITE (*je parlai, je reçus*) serves to express something done at a time completely past, and of which no part remains unexpired ; hence it cannot be used when speaking of anything done during the present day, week, month, year, or century ; as,

J'écrivis hier à Bordeaux.	I wrote yesterday to Bordeaux.
Nous nous rencontrâmes l'année dernière à Genève.	
	We met last year at Geneva.

As the events related in history are considered as facts, completed in a time entirely elapsed, the *preterite definite* is principally used in that style ; as,

Les Juifs quittèrent l'Égypte sous la conduite de Moïse.	The Jews left Egypt under the conduct of Moses.

EXERCISE CCIII.

Amenophis *conceived* the design of making his son a ^{dessein m. inf-1 de}

conqueror. He *set about* it after the manner of the Egyptians, ^{s'y prendre à manière f.}

that is, with great ideas. All the children who were born ^{c'est-à-dire pensée f.}

on the same day as Sesostris, ^{que Sésostris amener art. cour f.}were brought to court, by order

of the king : he *had* them educated as his own children, and ^{faire élever inf-1}

with the same care as Sesostriſ. When he *was* grown up,
soin pl. que *grand*
 he ²*made* ¹him ſerve his apprenticeship in a war againſt the
lui faire *apprentiſſage m. par*
 Arabs. This young prince *learned* there to bear hunger and
Arabe *y* *ſupporter ſain f.*
 thirſt, and *ſubdued* that nation, till then invincible. He
ſoif f. *soumettre* *jusqu'*
²*afterwards* ¹*attacked* Libya, and *conquered* it.
ensuite *Libye f.*

EXERCISE CCIV.

After these successes, Sesostris formed the project of
succès m.
subduing the ²whole ¹world. In consequence of this, he
*subjuguér inf-1 entier En * **
entered Ethiopia, which he made tributary (to him). He
dans Ethiopie ²rendre ³ ¹se
continued his victories in Asia. Jerusalem was the first to feel
Jérusalem f. à
the force of his arms: the rash Rehoboam could not
arme f. téméraire Roboam
²resist ¹him, and Sesostris carried away the riches of Solomon.
lui enlever richesse pl. Salomon.
He penetrated into the Indies farther than Alexander did
Indes ne
afterwards. The Scythians ²obeyed ¹him as far as the
ensuite Scythe lui jusqu'à
Tanais: Armenia and Cappadocia were subject to him. In
Cappadoce f. sujettes En
a word, he extended his empire from the Ganges to
mot m. étendre — m. depuis Gange m. jusqu'à
the Danube.—(BOSSUET.)

The PRETERITE INDEFINITE (*j'ai parlé*) is the past tense most used in French ; it expresses something done in the course of the day, week, month, year, or century in which we are ; as,

J'AI REÇU cette semaine la visite
de monsieur votre père.
Je lui AI ÉCRIT ce matin.

*I have this week received a visit
from your father.
I wrote to him this morning.*

The *Preterite indefinite* is also used in speaking of a past action, without specifying the TIME in which it happened ; as,

J'AI VENDU mon cheval.	I have sold my horse.
IL A VOYAGÉ en Allemagne.	He has travelled in Germany.
J'en AI PARLÉ, à votre maître.	I mentioned it to your master.

This tense is sometimes used instead of the *future* ; as,

AVEZ-VOUS bientôt FAIT ?	Will you have done soon ?
Attendez, J'AI FINI dans un moment.	Wait, I shall have done in a moment.

The PRETERITE ANTERIOR (*j'eus parlé*) denotes a thing past and done before another also past, and is, for this reason, called *anterior*. It is generally preceded by a conjunction, or an adverb of time, such as *quand*, *lorsque*, *dès que*, *aussitôt que* ; as,

Quand J'EUS RECONNU mon erreur, j'en fus honteux.	When I had seen my error, I was ashamed of it.
---	--

Note.—There is another *preterite*, called the *preterite anterior indefinite* : *J'ai eu parlé, tu as eu parlé*, etc., but it is little used.

The PLUPERFECT (*j'avais parlé*) represents a thing as *past* before another event happened ; as,

J'avais dîné quand il entra.	I had dined when he came in.
------------------------------	------------------------------

This tense, like the imperfect, serves to describe, and to express repetition, habit, or custom ; as,

Dès que j'avais dîné j'allais à la pêche.	As soon as I had dined I went a-fishing.
---	--

EXERCISE CCV.

I *was* (at your house) this morning ; I *saw* your brother, and *spoke* to him.—We *have written* to him to-day.—The ²present *je* *aujourd'hui* *actuel* century *began* on the first day of the year 1801, and will end *année f.* *finir* on the last day of the year 1900.—He *resided* six months *demeurer* at Rome.—When I *had done* that, I set out.—I *had finished* *partir* my work when he arrived.—During his stay *in* the country, *Pendant séjour m. à* as soon as he *had breakfasted*, he went a-hunting.

The FUTURE ABSOLUTE (*je parlerai*, I shall or will speak) represents the action as yet to come; as, *Je vous ÉCRIRAI*, I shall write to you.

The FUTURE ANTERIOR (*j'aurai parlé*) intimates that a thing will be done before another takes place; as,

J'AURAI FINI mon thème avant votre retour.	I shall have finished my exercise before your return.
---	--

N.B. The English often use the *present* tense after *when*, *as soon as*, *after*, or similar words, when they want to express a thing to come: the FUTURE, however, must always be used in French; as,

Passez chez moi, quand vous serez prêt.	Call on me when you are ready.
--	--------------------------------

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

The CONDITIONAL mood has two tenses, the *present* and the *past*.

The *Conditional present* (*je parlerais*, I should or would speak) expresses that a thing would be done on a certain condition; as,

J'IRAIS avec vous si j'avais le temps.	I would go with you if I had time.
---	---------------------------------------

The *Conditional past* (*j'aurais parlé*, or *j'eusse parlé*†) expresses that a thing *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, have happened, at a time now passed, if another thing had taken place; as,

Le ministre lui AURAIT DONNÉ cette place, s'il l'avait demandée.	The minister would have given him that place, if he had asked for it.
---	--

REMARK.—When *SI* (if) signifies *supposé que* (suppose that), the French use the present indicative instead of the future, and the imperfect instead of the conditional; as,

J'irai demain à la campagne, s'il fait beau.	I shall go to the country to-morrow, if it be fine weather.
Si J'ALLAIS en France, je vous en préviendrais.	If I should go to France, I will let you know.

† Some writers often use this form, but the student will do well to the first.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The IMPERATIVE mood commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits. It has only one tense.

EXERCISE CCVL

I shall wait for you till six o'clock.—When I have done,
attendre jusqu'à heure
 I shall go out.—I will call on you, as soon as I have dined.—
passer chez aussitôt que
 I would sing, if I could.—I should have found him (at home),
chez lui
 if I had arrived a little sooner.—If he should come, what
être plus tôt
 should I say to him?—Do good, if you wish to be
art. bien m. vouloir
 happy ; do good, if you wish that your memory should be
subj-1
 honoured ; do good, if you wish that heaven should open to
art. subj-1
 you its eternal gates.
porte f.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The INDICATIVE is the mood of affirmation, and the SUBJUNCTIVE that of doubt and indecision.

The Subjunctive is used :—

I. After any verb expressing *doubt, fear, surprise, admiration, will, wish, desire, consent, or command* ; because then this verb denotes nothing affirmative, nothing positive with regard to the following verb ; as,

Il veut, il exige, il désire que | He wishes, he requires, he desires,
 vous fassiez votre devoir. | you to do your duty.

There is an uncertainty whether you will comply with his wish, his request, or his desire.

After an *interrogation*, and after a verb accompanied

by a *negation*, because then there is doubt, uncertainty, etc. ; as,

Croyez-vous QU'IL VIENNE ?	Do you think he will come ?
Je ne crois pas QU'IL VIENNE.	I do not think he will come.

REMARK. ¶—Sometimes an interrogation is used only to affirm or deny with more energy. In this case the second verb is put in the *Indicative*, because there is no doubt expressed ; as,

CROYEZ-VOUS que les Limousins	Do you think that the Limousins
SONT des sots ?	(inhabitants of Limoges) are
	blockheads ?

That is :—

Are you simple enough to believe that the Limousins are blockheads ?

III. After unipersonal verbs, or those used unipersonally ; as,

Il convient qu'il VIENNE.	It is proper that he should come. [there.
Il importe que vous y SOYEZ.	It is of importance that you should be

REMARK.—*Il semble*, accompanied by an indirect regimen of persons, *il y a*, *il paraît*, *il résulte*, and some other unipersonal verbs which express something positive, follow this rule when used *negatively* or *interrogatively*, else they require the *Indicative* ; as,

Il me semble	} qu'il a raison.	It seems to me	} that he is right.
Il vous semble		It seems to you	
Il paraît		It appears	
Il est sûr		It is certain	

EXERCISE CCVII.

I tremble lest he should come.—I wish you may succeed.—
qu' ne souhaiter

I consent that you do it.—Do you think it will rain to-day ?—
croire

I do not think it will rain much.—Although the wicked sometimes prosper, do not think that they are happy.—¶ Do you
penser

believe that the guilty man sleeps tranquilly, and that he
coupable * tranquille

can stifle the remorse with which he is racked?—*It is enough*
étouffer remords pl. dont déchirer suffire
 that you order me.—*I think I see him.*—It often
commander Il me semble
happens that we are deceived.
arriver on

IV. The *Subjunctive* is used after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où, etc.*, when they are preceded by *peu*, or by an adjective in the *superlative relative degree*. Among such adjectives are included *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier*; as,

Ily a PEU d'hommes qui SACHENT supporter l'adversité.	<i>There are few men who can support adversity.</i>
Le MEILLEUR cortège qu' un roi PUISSE avoir, c'est le cœur de ses sujets.	<i>The best retinue that a king can have is the love of his subjects.</i>
Le chien est le SEUL animal dont la fidélité SOIT à l'épreuve.	<i>The dog is the only animal whose fidelity is proof.</i>
C'est la SEULE place où vous PUISSEZ aspirer.	<i>It is the only place to which you can aspire.</i>

V. The *Subjunctive* is used after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où, etc.*, when we wish to express something doubtful and uncertain; as,

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me RENDRE ce service.	<i>I seek some one who may render me that service.</i>
Je sollicite une place que je PUISSE remplir.	<i>I solicit a place which I may be able to fill.</i>
J'irai dans une retraite où je SOIS tranquille.	<i>I shall retire to a place where I may be quiet.</i>

It is possible that the person I am seeking may not render me that service; that I may not be able to fill the place I solicit; and, that I may not be tranquil in the retreat where I shall go; it is the *subjunctive* that expresses this doubt and uncertainty.

Observe that we could also say: *qui me RENDRA ce service; que je PEUX remplir; où je SERAI tranquille*; but the sense would no longer be the same: the action marked by the verbs *rendre, pouvoir, and être*, would then be represented as certain and positive.

VI. The *Subjunctive* is required after *quel que, quelque . . . que, qui que, quoi que*; as,

Quels que SOIENT vos talents.

Quelque riche *que* vous SOYEZ.

Qui que vous SOYEZ, parlez.

Whatever your talents may be.

However rich you may be.

Whoever you be, speak.

Quoi qu'on DISE, un ânon ne deviendra qu'un âne.—(Grozelier.)

(See what has already been said on *quelque*, pages 51-52.)

Finally, The *Subjunctive* is required after certain conjunctions, see Chapter VIII.

EXERCISE CCVIII.

He is the *only* man who lives in that manner.—The example
C de la sorte
 of a good life is the best lesson that one can give to
vie f. on art.
 mankind. — The siege of *Azoth* lasted 29 years : it is the
genre humain m.
 longest siege mentioned in ancient history.—Show me
DONT être question
 a road that will lead to London. — *However* clever
chemin m. qui conduire habile
²(those two writers) ¹be, neither the one nor the other will
écrivain
 obtain† the vacant seat in the French Academy.—*Whatever*
place f. à Quoi que
 you study, you must (apply yourself to it) with ardour.
il vous y livrer

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

The *Subjunctive* mood being always subordinate to a verb that precedes it, its tenses are regulated by this foregoing verb ; as,

Je ne CROIS pas que vous VENIEZ.

Je ne CROYAIS pas que vous VINS-

SIEZ.

I do not think you will come.

I did not think you would come.

† See Remarks on *Neither*, page 255.

RULE I. After the present and future of the Indicative, we use the *present* of the Subjunctive to express a thing present or future ; but we use the *preterite* of the Subjunctive to express a thing past :—

Je doute }
Je douterai } que vous *étudiiez* maintenant.

Je doute }
Je douterai } que vous *ayez étudié* hier.

REMARK.—After the present and future of the Indicative, we use the *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive instead of the present, and the *Pluperfect* instead of the preterite, when some conditional expression is introduced in the sentence :—

Je doute } que vous *étudiassiez* maintenant, demain, si l'on
Je douterai } ne vous y *contraignait*.

Je doute } que vous *eussiez étudié* hier, si l'on ne vous y
Je douterai } eût *contraint*.

EXERCISE CCIX.

Do you doubt that I am your friend?—Does he think I
douter
shall have time?—I don't think you have learned mathe-
art. *art.*
matics.—He will wait till you are ready.—She will wish
que *vouloir que*
your sister to be one of the party. —I shall always doubt that
partie f.
you have used all your endeavours.—Do you think I might
faire *effort m.* *pouvoir*
speak to him, were I to go now?—I doubt whether my
si *y ind-2* *que*
brother would have succeeded, (had it not been for) your
réussir *sans*
assistance.

RULE II. After the Imperfect, the Pluperfect, any of the Preterites or Conditionals, we use the *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive, if we mean to express a thing present

or future ; but to express a thing that is past, we use the *Pluperfect* :—

Je doutais	}	que vous étudiassiez aujourd'hui, demain.
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais		
J'aurais douté		

Je doutais	}	que vous eussiez étudié la semaine passée.
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais		
J'aurais douté		

REMARK.—With a *Preterite indefinite* the following verb is put in the *Present* of the Subjunctive, if we intend to express a thing which is, or may be done at all times ; as,

Dieu A ENTOURÉ les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transpa- rentes au dehors, afin que l'on PUISSE voir à travers.		God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.
---	--	---

And in the *Preterite* of the Subjunctive, if we intend to express something past ; as,

Il A FALLU qu'il se SOIT DONNÉ bien de la peine.		He must have given himself a great deal of trouble.
---	--	--

EXERCISE CCX.

He was waiting till I should be ready.—Would you wait till
attendre que que
we should be ready ?—Sparta was sober before Socrates had
Sparte avant que
praised sobriety ; before he had praised virtue, Greece abounded
avant qu' abonder
in virtuous men.—William III. left, at his death, the reputa-
laisser
tion of a great politician, although he had not been popular,
politique populaire
and of a general (to be feared), although he had lost many
à craindre
battles.—You must have had (a great deal) of patience.
Il a fallu beaucoup

ambition.—Your sister is *charming*; how *obliging* she is!—
que

Her *singing* was much admired.
chant m. ind-3 fort

OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

I. The *Past Participle* employed without an auxiliary, agrees, like an adjective, with the word to which it relates ; as

Les méchants ont bien de la peine | *The wicked have much difficulty in*
à demeurer UNIS. (Fénelon.) | *remaining united.*

Que de remparts détruits ! que de villes forcées !—(Boileau.)

II. The *Past Participle* accompanied by the auxiliary *être*, agrees with its subject or nominative in gender and number ; as,

Mon frère est venu.

Ma sœur est venue.

Mes frères sont venus.

Mes sœurs sont venues.

L'armée a été vaincue.

Les ennemis ont été vaincus.

My brother is come.

My sister is come.

My brothers are come.

My sisters are come.

The army has been conquered.

The enemies have been conquered.

Sometimes the subject is placed after the participle, but this construction does not alter the agreement of the participle : *Quand il vit l'urne où étaient RENFERMÉES les CENDRES d'Hippias, il versa un torrent de larmes.* (Fénelon.)

III. When the *Past Participle* follows the verb *avoir*, it never agrees with its subject ; as,

Mon père a écrit.

Ma mère a écrit.

Mes frères ont écrit.

Mes sœurs ont écrit.

My father has written.

My mother has written.

My brothers have written.

My sisters have written.

EXERCISE CCXII.

A quarrelsome dog has always a *torn* ear.—The ceiling
* *hargneux* *l'déchirer* *plafond m.*
of the Egyptian temples was *painted* blue.—That letter is
en

† The participle *été* never varies. We say, *il or elle a été*, he or she has been ; *ils or elles ont été*, they have been.

well *written*.—The city of London, having been *burnt* in *ville f.*

1666, was *rebuilt* in three years, more beautiful and more *rebâtir* *année f.*

regular than before.—The ancient Greeks were *persuaded* that *auparavant* *persuader*

the soul is immortal.—It is to Jenner that ²(the discovery of *découverte f.*

vaccination) ¹(is due).—Artemisia survived ²(Mausolus, her *vaccine f.* *Artémise n' ind-4* *à Mausole*

husband,) ¹(only two years.)—The Amazons have *acquired* *que* *an m.* *Amazone*

celebrity.

pr. art.

☞ To make a right application of the following rules, the student must distinguish well a *direct regimen* from an *indirect regimen*, for this is the pivot on which turn the principal difficulties of the *past participle*. For the meaning of *regimen*, see pages 201, 231, 261.

IV. The *Past Participle* accompanied by the auxiliary *avoir*, always agrees with its *direct regimen*, when that regimen is placed *before* the participle ; as,

La lettre *que* vous avez *écrite*.
Voici les lettres *que* j'ai *reçues*.

Où est votre livre ?—je l'ai *perdu*.
Où est votre plume ?—je l'ai *perdue*.
Où sont vos livres ?—je les ai *perdus*.
Ils m'ont *félicité*.
Il nous a *félicités*.
Quelle affaire avez-vous *entreprise* ?
Que de *désagréments* ils m'ont
causés !

Combien de livres avez-vous *lus* ?

The letter which you have written.
Here are the letters which I have
received.

Where is your book ?—I have lost it.
Where is your pen ?—I have lost it.
Where are your books ?—I have lost
They have congratulated me. [them.
He has congratulated us.
What business have you undertaken ?
What vexations they have caused
me !

How many books have you read ?

These Examples show that the direct regimen which precedes the participle is expressed either by one of these pronouns *que, le, la, les, me, nous, te, vous, se*, or by a noun preceded by *quel, que de, or combien de*.

In the first example *écrite* agrees with *que*, of which the antecedent is *lettre*, feminine and singular. In the fifth example, *perdus* agrees with *les*, which stands for its antecedent *livres*, masculine and plural.

A lady would say,

Ils m'ont *félicitée*.

| They have congratulated me.

Félicitée agrees with *me*, of which the antecedent *dame* is understood.

The same analysis applies to the other and similar cases.

Observe that the rule says *direct regimen*, for although we say, *Il nous a vus*, he has seen us; we could not say, *Il nous a DITS cela*, he has told us that: we must say, *Il nous a DIT cela*; because *nous* is here used for *à nous*, and is an *indirect regimen*.

EXERCISE CCXIII.

Here is the answer which I have received.—The sciences
réponse f. — *f.*
which you have studied, will prove infinitely useful to you.—
être

General Villars often said, that the two ¹(most lively)
art. *vif*

¹pleasures he had felt in his life, had been the first
subj-2 *ressentir* ind-2

prize which he had obtained at college, and the first victory
prix m. ind-2

which he had gained over the enemy.—Where is my
ind-2 *remporter*

watch?—I have not seen it.—They have deceived us.—What
montre f. *tromper*

answer have they given you?—How many enemies has he not
on faire

conquered!

vaincre

V. After the auxiliary *avoir*, the *Past Participle* remains invariable when the *direct regimen* is placed AFTER the participle, or when there is no direct regimen; as,

Nous avons reçu votre lettre.

| We have received your letter.

Ils ont perdu leurs livres.

| They have lost their books.

J'ai récompensé mes fils.

| I have rewarded my sons.

No agreement here takes place, because the direct regimens *vosre lettre*, *leurs livres*, *mes fils*, are placed after the participles *reçu*, *perdu*, *récompensé*.

In the same manner, we write without varying the participle :

Elle a dansé.

Nous avons chanté.

Ils ont répondu à notre attente.

She has danced.

We have sung.

They have answered our expectation.

Because the verbs *danser*, *chanter*, *répondre*, have not here any direct regimen.

REMARK. — It follows from the preceding rule, that the participle of neuter verbs, which are conjugated with *avoir*, never varies, since that class of verbs has no direct regimen. Thus, in *Les cinq heures que j'ai DORMI* (the five hours that I have slept), *les dix ans qu'il a VÉCU* (the ten years that he has lived), the participle of the neuter verbs *dormir* and *vivre* does not vary, and the relative *que* which precedes, although presenting itself under the form of a direct regimen, is in reality but an indirect regimen, equivalent to *pendant lequel* : *les cinq heures PENDANT LESQUELLES j'ai dormi, les dix ans PENDANT LESQUELS il a vécu.*

Note.—Sometimes neuter verbs are employed actively ; then their participles agree, if preceded by a direct regimen ; as, *La langue que Cicéron a PARLÉE*, the language which Cicero has spoken.

EXERCISE CCXIV.

I have received no answer.—He has named several persons.
plusieurs

—Cromwell governed England under the title of Protector.—
ind-4

Men have never reaped the fruit of happiness from the tree of
cueillir *sur*

injustice.—The Romans triumphed successively over the
ind-4 *successivement de*

(most warlike) nations.—They danced a great deal at the
belliqueux *f. ind-4*

last ball.—We have laughed heartily. — We must deduct
bal m. *de bon cœur* *Il retrancher*

from life the hours we have slept.
on

VI. The verb *être* being used instead of *avoir* in pronominal or reflected verbs, the participle of these verbs follows exactly the same rules as the participle conjugated with *avoir*; that is, the participle of a reflected verb agrees with the direct regimen when preceded by it, but remains invariable, when the direct regimen is placed after it, or when there is none.

So we write with agreement :—

Nous <i>nous</i> sommes <i>blessés</i> .		<i>We have hurt ourselves.</i>
Lucrèce <i>s'est tuée</i> .		<i>Lucretia killed herself.</i>

Because the participles *blessés*, *tuee*, are preceded by their direct regimens *nous*, *se*.

But we write without agreement :

Lucrèce <i>s'est donné</i> la mort.		<i>Lucretia destroyed herself.</i>
-------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------

Because the participle *donné* is followed by its direct regimen *la mort*. In this example, *se* is an indirect regimen or dative.

We write also without varying the participle :—

Ils <i>se sont écrit</i> .		<i>They have written to each other.</i>
Nous <i>nous</i> sommes <i>succédé</i> .		<i>We have succeeded one another.</i>

Here, the participles *écrit* and *succédé* have no direct regimen. It is as if it were : *Ils ont écrit à EUX* ; *Nous avons succédé à NOUS*.

REMARK.—It follows from the foregoing rule, that verbs essentially pronominal, that is, verbs which cannot be conjugated without two pronouns of the same person, as *je me repens*, *je m'abstiens*, require their participles always to agree, because these verbs have for direct regimen their second pronoun ; as,

Nous <i>nous</i> sommes <i>abstenus</i> de toute reflexion.		<i>We have abstained from all reflections.</i>
Mes amis, vous <i>vous</i> êtes <i>repentis</i> .		<i>My friends, you have repented</i>

EXERCISE CCXV.

Madame de Sévigné *has rendered herself* celebrated by the
se rendre
 graces of her style.—She *perceived* *herself* in that glass.
 —m. *s'apercevoir* ind-4 *gla*

—That woman has *bestowed* on herself fine gowns.— Some
se donner * * * *Quelques-uns*
 of our modern authors have *imagined* that they surpassed the
s'imaginer
 ancients.—They have *spoken to one another*.—They have
se parler
succeeded one another.—Those boys have *repented*.—The
se repentir
 troops have *seized* the town.
s'emparer de

VII. The participle of a unipersonal (or impersonal) verb is always invariable :—

Les chaleurs qu'il a FAIT cet été.	The heat which we have had this summer.
La disette qu'il y a EU l'hiver dernier.	The scarcity which there was last winter.

Here the verbs *faire* and *avoir* have not their active signification, but simply express existence, and the *que* which precedes is not the regimen of any verb, for we do not say *faire des chaleurs*, as we say *faire des habits*. That *que* must be considered a *gallicism*.

VIII. The *Past Participle*, followed by an infinitive, agrees with the antecedent noun, when that noun is the regimen or object of the participle, but it remains invariable when the noun is the object of the infinitive ; as,

La lettre que je lui ai DONNÉE à copier.	The letter which I have given him to copy.
La lettre que je lui ai DIT de copier.	The letter which I have told him to copy.

Note.—The regimen or object is known to belong to the participle when the antecedent can be placed after the participle, as in the first example, which may be turned, *Je lui ai donné la lettre à copier*.

As we cannot say, *Je lui ai dit la lettre de copier*, but we may say, *Je lui ai dit de copier la lettre*, it follows that the regimen belongs to the infinitive.

For the same reason, the participles *DÛ*, *owed*, *ought* ; *PU*, *been able*, and *VOULU*, *been willing*, remain invariable when an infinitive is understood after them ; as,

Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai PU (lui rendre understood).	I have rendered him all the services that I have been able.
--	---

REMARK.—When the French participle happens to be placed between two *que*, the first *que* is not the regimen of the participle, but of the verb which follows it, consequently the participle is invariable ; as,

Les raisons <i>que</i> vous avez <i>CRU</i>	<i>The reasons which you thought I</i>
<i>que</i> j'approuvais.	<i>approved.</i>
Les mathématiques <i>que</i> vous avez	<i>The mathematics which you would</i>
VOULU <i>que</i> j'étudiasse.	<i>have me to study.</i>

EXERCISE CCXVI.

The heavy rains which we *had* in the spring, have
grand pluie f. * *il faire* ind-4
 been the cause of many diseases.—That young lady sings well;
maladie f.
 I have *heard* her sing.—That song is charming ; I *heard* it
 ind-4
 sung.—I have used all the endeavours I *could*.—He has
 inf-1 *faire* *effort m.* † ind-4
 obtained all the favours he *wished*. —These are the answers
grâce f. † *vouloir* ind-4 *Voilà*
which I had *foreseen* they would give you.—The difficulties
que † *faire* *embarras m.*
which I knew you were in have accelerated my departure.
 ind-4 † *avoir* * *départ m.*

† See Rule and Note, foot of page 249.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE ADVERB.

I. ADVERBS, in French, are generally placed after the verb in the *simple tenses*, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the *compound tenses*, but never between the subject and the verb, as is frequently the case in English ; as,

Je pense SOUVENT à vous.	I often think of you.
J'ai TOUJOURS pensé à vous.	I have always thought of you.

Compound adverbs are usually placed *after* the participle ; as, *Vous êtes venu à PROPOS*, you have come seasonably. In some instances, however, the ear alone is consulted ; for we say, *Je l'avais TOUT À FAIT oublié*, I had quite forgotten it.

II. The adverbs AUJOURD'HUI, *to-day* ; DEMAIN, *to-morrow* ; HIER, *yesterday*, may be placed either before or after the verb, but never between the auxiliary and the participle ; as, *Il fait AUJOURD'HUI beau temps, il pleuvra DEMAIN* ; or, *AUJOURD'HUI il fait beau temps, DEMAIN il pleuvra*, To-day, it is fine ; it will rain to-morrow.

III. The adverbs BIEN, *well* ; MIEUX, *better* ; MAL, *ill* ; PIS, *worse*, may be placed either before or after an *infinitive* ; as, *BIEN faire son devoir*, or *Faire BIEN son devoir*, to do one's duty well. But they are always placed after the verb in the *simple tenses* ; as, *Vous fîtes BIEN, il fit MAL*, you did well, he did ill. And, with the *compound tenses*, they are placed between the auxiliary and the participle ; as, *Vous avez MAL fait*, you have done wrong.

IV. The adverbs, *comment, où, combien, quand, pourquoi*, are always placed before the verb ; as,

Comment se porte monsieur votre frère ?	How is your brother ?
Où allez-vous ?	Whither are you going ?

Remarks on some Adverbs.

1. BEAUCOUP is not, as the English *much*, susceptible of being modified by any preceding adverb; thus, *très beaucoup*, *trop beaucoup*, *si beaucoup*, would be barbarisms.

2. **BIEN** before another adverb means *very, much, quite*, etc. ; as, *Bien tard*, very late ; *bien moins*, much less ; *bien assez*, quite enough. After the adverb, it signifies *well* ; as, *Assez bien*, pretty well ; *moins bien*, not so well.

3. PLUS and DAVANTAGE both mean *more*, but they are not used indiscriminately. *Davantage* can never modify an adjective, and cannot, like *plus*, be followed by the preposition *de* nor the conjunction *que*. We say :—

Il a PLUS de brillant que de solide.

*He has more brilliancy than
solidity.*

Il se fie PLUS à ses lumières
qu'à celles des autres.

He relies more on his own knowledge than on that of others.

We could not say, *Il a DAVANTAGE de brillant, il se fie DAVANTAGE à ses lumières, etc.*

Davantage is always used absolutely, either at the end of a sentence, or at the end of a member of a sentence ; as,

**Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné
l'est *davantage*.**

*The youngest is rich, but the
eldest is still more so.*

4. PLUS TÔT means *sooner*, and has for its opposite PLUS TARD, *later*. PLUTÔT signifies *rather*.

EXERCISE CCXVII.

I *very seldom* go out.—Homer *sometimes* slumbers in the
sortir *sommeiller à*
 midst of his gods and heroes.—She has sung *very well*.—
milieu m. *très*

Where hatred prevails, truth (is sacrificed).—That grieves
dominer fait naufrage chagriner
 me very much.—This letter is pretty well written.—I would

like you much *more*, if you were reasonable.—He has arrived
bien *ind-2* *est*
 sooner than usual. — I will die *rather* than suffer it.
de coutume *de*

Remarks on the Negative.

1. The negative expressions *ne-pas*, *ne-point*, etc., form only one negation.

2. *Point* denies more strongly than *pas*.

3. *Pas* is used in preference to *point*; 1st, Before *plus*, *beaucoup*, *moins*, *si*, *autant*, and other comparative words; as, *Milton n'est PAS MOINS sublime qu'Homère*, Milton is not less sublime than Homer; 2dly, Before nouns of number; as, *Il n'y a PAS DIX ans*, it is not ten years ago.

4. *Pas* and *point* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; and *pouvoir*, to be able; as,

Elle ne CESSÉ de gronder.

On n'OSE l'aborder.

Je ne PUIS me taire.

She does not cease scolding.

They dare not accost him.

I cannot be silent.

5. After *savoir*, to know, when this verb is used to express a state of uncertainty, it is better to omit *pas* and *point*; as,

Je ne SAIS où le prendre.

Il ne SAIT ce qu'il dit.

I do not know where to find him.

He does not know what he says.

But *pas* and *point* must be used when *savoir* is employed to declare anything positively; as,

Je ne SAIS *pas* le français.

I do not know French.

(See former Remarks on *Pouvoir* and *Savoir*, used with a negative, pages 131 and 132.)

6. *Pas* and *point* are suppressed after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative adverbs, *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, or some other equivalent; as,

Il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle.

Il est moins riche, plus riche qu'on ne croit.

C'est autre chose que je ne croyais.

He writes better than he speaks.

He is less rich, richer than is believed.

It is different from what I thought.

7. *Pas* and *point* are omitted with a verb in the preterite, preceded by the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the verb *il y a*, denoting a certain duration of time; as,•

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je ne vous ai vu?

Il y a six mois que je ne lui ai parlé.

How have you been since I saw you?

I have not spoken to him these six months.

But they are not omitted when the verb is in the present tense :—

Comment vit-il depuis que nous ne le voyons point ?	<i>How does he live now that we do not see him.</i>
Il y a six mois que nous ne nous parlons point.	<i>It is six months since we do not speak to one another.</i>

EXERCISE CCXVIII.

There is *no* happiness without virtue.—The rich are *not*
 † *bonheur m.* † *riche* †
 always happier than the poor.—There will *not* be *much*
 pl.
 fruit this year.—You will *not* find two of your opinion.—
année f. *en* *avis m.*
 You do *not* cease scolding me.—I *dare not* speak to him.
 inf-1
 —I *cannot* understand what he means.—I do *not* know
comprendre ce qu' vouloir dire
 what to do.—She sings much *better* than she did.—He
que *ne ind-2*
 is richer *than* he was.—That child has grown (very much)
ne ind-2 *grandir bien*
since I saw it.
ne ind-4

† See Remarks, page 78.

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

RULE I. In French, the preposition is always placed immediately *before* its object, whereas in English it is sometimes placed *after* it ; as,

A qui parlez-vous ?

To whom do you speak ?

De quoi vous plaignez-vous ?

{ Of what do you complain ?

or,

{ What do you complain of ?*

* The English practice (says Mr. M'Culloch, in his Philosophical Grammar) of separating the preposition from its object is condemned by some critics, but obviously on insufficient grounds.

EXERCISE CCXIX.

To whom does that house belong ? — What house are you
appartenir
 speaking of ? — Of that white house. — It belongs to the
 ind-1
 gentleman whom we are going to dine with. — He has two
monsieur ind-1
 footmen behind his carriage. — Tiberius was emperor after
laquais *voiture* f. *Tibère* ind-3
 Augustus. — The liberty of the Roman republic expired under
Auguste see p. 216 ind-3
 Tiberius. — A serpent biting its tail was, among the
qui se mord art. *queue* f. ind-2 *chez*
 Egyptians, the emblem of eternity.
 art.

RULE II. The prepositions *à*, *de*, and *en*, must be repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb which they govern, whether they are repeated or not in English ; as,

Il dut la vie **à** la clémence et **à**

la magnanimité du vainqueur.

Il tâche **de** mériter et d'obtenir

votre confiance.

J'ai été **en** France et **en** Suisse.

He owed his life to the clemency and
 generosity of the conqueror.

He is endeavouring to merit and
 obtain your confidence.

I have been in France and Switzer-
 land.

The other prepositions, especially those of one syllable, are repeated before words which have meanings totally different, but seldom before words that are nearly synonymous ; as,

DANS la ville et DANS la campagne.	In the town and in the country.
PAR la force et PAR l'adresse.	By force and by address.
DANS la mollesse et l'oisiveté.	In effeminacy and idleness.
PAR la force et la violence.	By force and violence

EXERCISE CCXX.

Here is the road from London to York and Edinburgh.—
route f.

You will receive a letter either from my father or my brother.—
ind-7

The celebrity of literary men keeps pace with that of
*f. * littéraire * marcher de pair art.*
great kings and heroes : Homer and Alexander, Virgil and Cæsar
héros Cæsar

equally occupy the voice of fame. — We are going to
voix pl. renommée f. en

France and Germany.—He is a turner in wood and ivory.
Allemagne see p. 197 tourneur

—I shall come back either by the railroad or the canal.—
** chemin de fer*

He is under the safeguard and protection of the laws.
garde f.

Remarks on the use of some Prepositions.

1. EN is used to express a vague and indeterminate sense ; as,

J'ai vécu EN pays étranger. | I have lived in a foreign country.

DANS is employed in a limited and determinate sense ; as,

Ce livre est DANS la bibliothèque.	That book is in the library.
Elle était DANS sa chambre.	She was in her room.
J'ai lu cela DANS Buffon.	I have read that in Buffon.

N.B. When, in English, a noun is preceded by the definite article, or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun,

IN, INTO, are generally expressed in French by *Dans* ; as,

Il demeure DANS la maison près du parc.	<i>He lives in the house near the park.</i>
Il y a du charme DANS sa société.	<i>There is a charm in her society.</i>
DANS cette guerre malheureuse.	<i>In that unfortunate war.</i>

But when the noun is used in an indefinite sense, and without article or pronoun, IN, INTO, are usually expressed by *En* ; as,

EN paix et EN guerre.	<i>In peace and in war.</i>
Ils sont toujours EN querelle.	<i>They are always in broils.</i>

Owing to its indeterminate nature, EN ought not to be followed by the article, except in a few phrases which have been sanctioned by usage ; as, *En la présence de Dieu* ; *Président en la chambre des comptes*, etc.

(See Remark 1st, page 188.)

2. AUTOUR and ALENTOUR, *around*, must not be confounded. *Autour* is a preposition which requires a regimen ; as,

<i>Autour</i> d'un trône.	<i>Around a throne.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------

Alentour is an adverb which admits of no regimen ; as,

Il était sur son trône, et les grands étaient <i>alentour</i> .	<i>He was upon his throne, and the grandees were around.</i>
---	--

3. AU TRAVERS is always followed by the preposition *de*, and À TRAVERS is not. We say :—

<i>Au travers</i> DE la foule.	} <i>Through the crowd.</i>
<i>À travers</i> la foule.	

4. AVANT, *before*, denotes priority of time ; as,

Il est arrivé <i>avant</i> moi.	<i>He arrived before me.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------

It serves also to mark priority of order and place ; as, *Mettez ce chapitre avant l'autre.* | *Put this chapter before the other.*

DEVANT, *before*, is never used nowadays with reference to time. It is a preposition of place, and has the meaning of *in presence of*, *opposite to*, *in front of* ; as,

Il a prêché <i>devant</i> le roi.	<i>He has preached before the king.</i>
<i>Devant</i> la porte ; <i>devant</i> l'église.	<i>Before the door ; before the church.</i>

Devant serves also to mark order ; as,

C'est mon ancien, il marche <i>devant</i>	<i>He is my senior, he goes before me.</i>
---	--

When *Before* has no noun or pronoun after it, it is generally expressed by the adverb *auparavant* ; as,

Je l'en avais averti longtemps | *I had warned him of it long*
auparavant. | *before.*

Un mois, un an *auparavant.* | *A month, a year before.*

5. *Près de* and *prêt à*, are not the same expressions. *Près* is a *preposition* which governs *de* ; as,

Il est bien *PRÈS DE* midi. | *It is very near twelve o'clock.*

But *Prêt* is an adjective which governs *à* ; as,

Il est *prêt à* partir. | *He is ready to set out.*

EXERCISE CCXXI.

I was in France, in the province of Burgundy.—The glory
ind-2 *Bourgogne*

of a sovereign consists less in the extent of his states,
souverain m. *grandeur f.* *état m.*

than in the happiness of his people.—They ranged themselves
peuple pl. *se ranger ind-3*

around him.—Here is a sad accident for my creditors, said a
Voilà fâcheux m. *créancier m. ind-2*

Gascon officer, who had just received a ball through his body.
see p. 216 *venait de inf-1* *balle f.* *art.*

—I saw that *before* you.—She was walking *before* the house.
ind-4 *se promener*

—He was near dying.—I am ready to maintain my opinion,
ind-2 *inf-1* *maintenir*

pen in hand, until the last drop of my ink.
art. *à art.* *jusqu'à* *goutte f.*

6. The following prepositions require *DE* before the noun or pronoun which they govern :—

Auprès,	} near.	au dessous,	<i>under, below.</i>
près,		autour,	<i>around.</i>
proche,		le long,	<i>along.</i>
au dessus,		vis-à-vis,	<i>opposite.</i>
	above.		

EXAMPLES.

Près DE la poste.
Autour DU bras.

Near the post-office.
Round the arm.

Note.—In the familiar style, and in conversation, the preposition *DE* is sometimes omitted after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis* ; as, *Je loge PRÈS l'arsenal, vis-à-vis la nouvelle rue.*

7. The prepositions **JUSQUE**, *till, until, even, as far as*, and **QUANT**, *as to, as for*, require the preposition *à* after them ; as,

Depuis Pâques jusqu'à la Pentecôte. | *From Easter till Whitsunday.*
Quant à moi. | *As for me.*

EXERCISE CCXXII.

I live *near* the gate Saint-Martin.—*Above* the door were
demeurer porte f. ind-2
written these words.—In the ²ecclesiastical ¹hierarchy,
† mot m. ecclésiastique hiérarchie f. h asp.
the bishop is *below* the archbishop.—The queen had her
archevêque
daughters *around* her.—We came *along* the river side.—
nd-4 rivière f. *
He lodges *opposite* my windows.—All fathers, *even* the most
art.
grave, play with their children.—Let us go together *as far*
jouer
as Oxford.—*As for* him, he (shall act) as he pleases.
en usera lui ind-7

† See Rule II., page 283.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

IN French, some conjunctions require the verb which follows them to be in the indicative, some in the subjunctive, and others in the infinitive mood.

The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions, require the indicative mood :—

Ainsi que,	as, as well as.	depuis que,	since.
après que,	after. [as.	lorsque,	when.
attendu que,	considering that,	parce que,†	because.
aussitôt que,	} as soon as.	pendant que,	} while, whilst.
dès que,		tandis que,	
autant que,	as much as. [what.	peut-être que,	perhaps.
à ce que,	as, as far as, from.	puis que,	since.
à mesure que,	as, in proportion	tant que,	as long as.
au lieu que,	whereas. [as.	vu que,	seeing that.

They require the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses affirmation in a direct and positive manner.

† *Observation.*—*Par ce que* (in three words) is not a conjunction, though sometimes mistaken for one. It signifies, *by that which, by what.*

EXERCISE CCXXIII.

As soon as the Khan of Tartary has dined, a herald cries that
héraut
 all the other princes of the earth may go and dine, if
terre f. ind-1
 (they please).—A child ought not to obtain anything, *because*
bon leur semble *ne doit* *rien*
 he asks for it, but *because* he has need (of it). — We
besoin en *Il*
 must not judge of a man *by what* he (is ignorant of), but *by*
falloir *ignorer*

what he knows.—*Whilst* we are in prosperity, we must
 savoir *on* *art.* *il* *se*
prepare for adversity.—*As long as* I have money, you shall
 à art. *ind-7*
not want some.
 manquer en

The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions, require the subjunctive mood:—

Afin que,	} <i>that, in order that.</i>	pour peu que,	} <i>if . . . ever so little.</i>
pour que,		si peu que,	
avant que,	<i>before.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided that.</i>
à moins que,	<i>unless.</i>	quoique,	} <i>though, although.</i>
au cas que,	<i>in case that.</i>	bien que,	
de crainte que,†	} <i>for fear, lest.</i>	encore que,	
de peur que,†		sans que,	<i>without.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till, until.</i>	soit que,	<i>whether.</i>
non que,	} <i>not that.</i>	supposé que,	<i>supposing that.</i>
non pas que,			

They require the subjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, uncertainty.

Remark on the conjunction QUE.—Learners are often mistaken, by supposing that QUE always requires the verb which follows it to be in the *subjunctive mood*; but QUE does not govern any particular mood. It is the positive or doubtful sense of the first verb that requires the second to be in the indicative or subjunctive.† There are, however, several cases in which QUE requires the subjunctive after it. These are when QUE is used instead, or in the sense, of some conjunctions which themselves always govern the subjunctive, such as *afin que*, *avant que*, *à moins que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *quoique*, *sans que*, *soit que*, *supposé que*; as,

<i>Approchez, QUE je vous voie (afin que).</i>	<i>Come near, that I may see you.</i>
<i>Attendez QUE la pluie soit passée (jusqu'à ce que).</i>	<i>Wait until the rain be over.</i>

† *A moins que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, although not having a negative sense.

‡ See the syntax of this mood, p. 276-279.

EXERCISE CCXXIV.

The Apostles received the gift of tongues, *that* they might
ind-3 don m. pouvoir
preach the Gospel to all the nations of the earth.—If my
Evangile m.

brother come *before* I am up, show him into the dining-
ind-1 levé faire entrer

room, and give him a newspaper to amuse himself with *till*
*

I come down.—*Unless* you be useful you will not be sought after.
descendre recherché

—Speak low, *for* fear (anybody) should hear you.—*Though*
on entendre

you are learned, be modest.—Get in *without* his seeing you.
instruit Entrer

The following Conjunctions govern the infinitive :—

Afin de,	to, in order to,	au lieu de,	instead of.
avant de,†	} before.	loin de,	far from.
avant que de,		de crainte de,	} for, or from
à moins de,	} unless.	de peur de,	
à moins que de,		plutôt que de,	rather than.

† *Avant de*, and *avant que de*, are both correct expressions; but present usage is decidedly in favour of *avant de*.

Note.—*A cause que*, *devant que*, *durant que*, *malgré que*, are found among the Tables of Conjunctions, and in the Exercises of many Grammars; but these are antiquated expressions. *A cause que* is replaced by *parce que*; *devant que*, by *avant que*; *durant que*, by *pendant que*; and *malgré que* by *quoique*.

EXERCISE CCXXV.

He works *in order to* acquire riches and consideration.—*Before*
acquérir f.

granting him my confidence, I shall examine if he is worthy of
confiance f.

it.—*Instead of* studying, he does nothing but amuse himself.
ne * que se divertir

—*Far from* thanking me, he has scolded me.—Charles VII.,
gronder

king of France, abstained from eating, in fear of being
ind-3 par art. crainte f.

poisoned, and allowed himself to die *from* fear of dying.—
se laisser ind-3 peur

Rather die *than* do a dishonourable action.
inf-1 lâcheté f.

The INTERJECTIONS have been treated of in page 181 ; their construction is the same in French as in English, they require, therefore, no further explanation. The *soul* is the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the student, since they do not require any rules.

OF ABBREVIATIONS.

There are certain French words which it is customary to abridge and represent by capital letters, as follows :—

J.C.	<i>for</i> Jésus-Christ.
N.S.	... Notre-Seigneur.
N.S. J.C.	... Notre-Seigneur Jésus-Christ.
S.S.	... Sa Sainteté.
S.M.	... Sa Majesté.
LL. MM.	... Leurs Majestés.
S.M.I.	... Sa Majesté Impériale.
S.M. T.C.	... Sa Majesté Très-Chrétienne.
S.M.C.	... Sa Majesté Catholique.
S.M. T.F.	... Sa Majesté Très-Fidèle.
S.M.B.	... Sa Majesté Britannique.
S.M.S.	... Sa Majesté Suédoise.
S.A.	... Son Altesse.
S.A.R.	... Son Altesse Royale.
S.A.I.	... Son Altesse Impériale.
S.Ex.	... Son Excellence.
S.Em.	... Son Eminence.
M ^r	... Monseigneur.
M. or M ^o	... Monsieur.
MM. or M ^{rs}	... Messieurs.
M ^{me}	... Madame.
M ^{lle}	... Mademoiselle.
M ^d	... Marchand.
M ^{de}	... Marchande.
Nég ^t	... Négociant.

(*Encycl. méthod.—Gram. des Gram.—Acad.*)

* The first is more used in print, and the latter in writing. *Messrs.* is also a good abbreviation of *Messieurs*.

FRENCH AND ENGLISH IDIOMS.

Vous êtes, à ce que je vois, des gens de prévoyance. (<i>Gil Blas.</i>)	<i>You are, by what I see, people of foresight.</i>
Nous avons encore deux heures à nous.	<i>We have still two hours good.</i>
Aboi—Être réduit aux abois.	<i>To stand at bay.</i>
Nous étions réduits aux abois.	<i>We were driven to the last ex- tremity.</i>
Aboutir—Où aboutit tout ce que vous dites ?	<i>What is the drift of your dis- course ?</i>
Aboier—Tout chien qui aboie ne mord pas.	<i>Barking dogs seldom bite.</i>
Abuser—C'est abuser de la bonté des gens.	<i>This is preying upon good nature.</i>
Accord—Mon violon n'est pas d'accord.	<i>My violin is out of tune.</i>
Votre piano est-il d'accord ?	<i>Is your pianoforte in tune ?</i>
D'accord ! Je suis d'accord.	<i>Done ! I agree to it.</i>
Accroire—N'espérez pas m'en faire accroire.	<i>Do not think to deceive me.</i>
Il n'y a pas moyen de vous en faire accroire. (<i>Gil Blas.</i>)	<i>There is no imposing upon you.</i>
Affaire—Se tirer d'affaire.	<i>To get out of a scrape.</i>
Pour un jeune homme qui n'avait jamais vu le feu, je ne m'étais pas mal tiré d'affaire. (<i>Gil Blas.</i>)	<i>For a young man who had never smelt powder, I did not acquit myself amiss.</i>
Oh ! C'est une autre affaire ?	<i>O ! that alters the case.</i>
Ceci fera-t-il votre affaire ?	<i>Will this suit you ?</i>
J'ai votre affaire.	<i>I have what you want.—I can suit you.</i>
Qu'ai-je affaire de tous ses compliments ?	<i>What have I to do with all his compliments ?</i>
Age—Quel âge avez vous ?— J'ai trente ans.	<i>How old are you ?—I am thirty.</i>

- Agir—Ils en ont très-mal agi avec moi. *They have used me very ill.*
- De quoi s'agit-il ? *What is the matter ?*
- Il s'agit ici de suppléer au défaut de la transpiration. *The business here is to supply the want of perspiration.*
(*Gil Blas.*)
- Voici ce dont il s'agit. *This is the matter in hand.*
- Il ne s'agit pas de cela maintenant. *This is not the business in hand.*
- Il s'agit de dîner. *We must think of dinner.*
- Aise—Vous lirez tout à votre aise, quand nous aurons dîné. *You shall read as long as you please, when we have dined.*
- Aller—Je ne ferai qu'aller et venir. *I shall be back again presently.*
- Aller rondement. *To act candidly.*
- Au pis aller. *Let the worst come to the worst.*
- Quoi ! Est-ce ainsi que vous y allez ? *Oh ! Is that the way you proceed ?*
- Cela va sans dire. *That is understood.*
- Il y va de sa fortune. *His fortune is at stake.*
- Il y allait de son honneur. *His honour was concerned in it.*
- Mais, sois discret, il y va de ta vie. *Be discreet, if you value your life.*
(*Gil Blas.*)
- Annoncer—Il entra sans se faire annoncer. *He entered without sending in his name.*
- M'avez vous annoncé ? *Did you give in my name ?*
- Appui—Tous ses amis viendront à son appui. *All his friends will back him.*
- Argent—Il m'a payé tout en argent comptant. *He has paid me all in ready money.*
- Là-dessus je lui débitais des fables, qu'elle prenait pour argent comptant. *Thereupon I told her some stories which she took for fact.*
(*Gil Blas.*)
- Attendre — Prenez toujours ceci, en attendant mieux. *Take this for the present, till something better offers.*
- Ne t'attends qu'à toi seul, c'est un commun proverbe. *Rely upon thyself, is a common saying.*
(*La Fontaine.*)
- Avancer—La nuit est bien avancée. *The night is far advanced—is far spent.*
- Je n'en suis pas plus avancé. *I am not a bit the better for it.*
- Avis—Le Gouvernement a reçu avis, que—— *Government has received intelligence, that——*

- Avoir—J'ai faim—J'ai soif *I am hungry—I am thirsty—*
 —Avez-vous chaud?—J'ai *Are you warm?—I am very*
 bienfroid—Vous avez raison *cold—You are right—He*
 —Il avait tort—N'avez pas *was wrong, he was in the*
 peur — N'avez-vous pas *wrong—Do not be afraid—*
 honte? *Are you not ashamed?*
 Combien y a-t-il que vous de- *How long have you lived in*
 meurez à Londres? *London?*
 Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes *How long have you been in*
 en Angleterre? *England?*
 Il y a trois mois qu'il est *He has been ill these three*
 malade. *months.*
 Il y a long-temps que je ne l'ai *I have not seen him for a long*
 vu. *while.*
 Il y avait déjà plus d'une *It was full an hour after*
 heure qu'il était nuit, quand *dusk when we arrived at the*
 nous arrivâmes au souter- *cavern.*
 rain. *(Gil Blas.)*
 Beau—Vous avez beau dire, je *It is in vain for you to talk, I*
 ne le ferai point. *will not do it.*
 J'avais beau regarder de tous *In vain did I look on all sides.*
 côtés. *(Gil Blas.)*
 Il recommença de plus belle. *He did it more than ever.'*
 Bon—Parlez-vous tout de bon? *Do you speak in earnest?*
 But—Voilà mon but. *This is what I aim at.*
 Campagne—Je vis bien qu'il *I clearly saw that he was beat-*
 battait la campagne. *ing about the bush.*
 Vous battez la campagne. *You ramble from the question.*
 Cape—Je m'aperçus qu'elle *I perceived that she was laugh-*
 riait sous cape. *ing in her sleeve.*
 Chandelle—Le jeu n'en vaut *The profit will not pay for the*
 pas la chandelle. *expense.*
 A chaque jour suffit sa peine *Sufficient for the day is the evil*
(Prov.) thereof.
 Etre à charge. *To be burdensome.*
 Il m'est à charge. *He annoys me.*
 Elle est à ma charge. *I entirely support her.*
 Charité — Charité bien or- *Charity begins at home.*
 donnée commence par soi-
 même. *(Prov.)*
 Château—Il bâtit souvent des *He often builds castles in the*
 châteaux en Espagne. *air.*
 Il fera son chemin. *He will make his way in the*
world.
 Compter—Comptez-vous cet *Do you reckon that advantage*
 avantage pour rien? *nothing?*

Côté—Nous nous tenions les côtés de rira.	<i>We split our sides with laughing.</i>
J'étais à côté de lui.	<i>I was close to him.</i>
Je me rangeai de son côté.	<i>I sided with him.</i>
Coucher—Coucher en joue.	<i>To take aim at.</i>
Courir—Ils se mirent à courir à toutes jambes.	<i>They began to run with all their might.</i>
Cuisine—Faire la cuisine.	<i>To cook.</i>
Savez-vous faire la cuisine ?	<i>Do you understand cookery ?</i>
Curiosité—J'irai, si la curiosité m'en prend.	<i>I shall go, if curiosity prompt me.</i>
Tout va à la débandade.	<i>All is going to wreck.</i>
Demander—Je ne demande pas mieux.	<i>I am quite willing to do it.</i>
Démenti—Donner à quelqu'un le démenti.	<i>To give one the lie.</i>
Démettre—Il a été démis de sa charge.	<i>He has been turned out of office.</i>
Démordre—I1 n'en veut pas démordre.	<i>He will not bite an inch of it. —He will not give up the point.</i>
Dessus—J'ai des affaires par dessus la tête.	<i>I am over head and ears in business.</i>
Devenir—Qu'allons-nous devenir ?	<i>What will become of us ?</i>
Que deviendra-t-il ?	<i>What will become of him ?</i>
Si vous n'obtenez pas cette place, que pensez-vous devenir ?	<i>If you do not obtain that place, what course of life do you intend to take ?</i>
Devoir—Quand j'aurais dû être ruiné.	<i>Though I should have been ruined.</i>
Dire—I1 m'a fait dire qu'il viendrait dîner.	<i>He sent me word that he would come to dinner.</i>
Je lui dis à l'oreille que je le reverrais.	<i>I whispered to him that I would see him again.</i>
Eau—L'affaire est tombée dans l'eau.	<i>The affair has entirely failed.</i>
Echapper—Son nom m'est échappé.	<i>His name has slipped my memory.</i>
Il lui échappa quelques paroles imprudentes.	<i>There escaped him some inconsiderate words.</i>
Enfiler—Lorsqu'une fois il enfile cette matière, il n'en finit point.	<i>If he once enters upon that topic, he has never done.</i>
Il enfila une allée, et disparut.	<i>He ran through an alley, and disappeared.</i>

- Enrhumer—Si vous sortez, *If you go out, you will catch*
vous vous enrhumerez. *cold.*
- Je suis enrhumé. *I have a cold.*
- Entendre—Qu'il fasse comme *Let him do as he likes—as he*
il l'entendra. *thinks fit.*
- Il s'entend au jardinage. *He understands gardening.*
- Il n'entend pas grand^e chose à *He has no great skill in music.*
la musique.
- Faire — Vous ne faites que *You do nothing but play.*
jouer.
- Il ne fait que d'arriver. *He is but just arrived.*
- Qu'est-ce que cela nous fait ? *What is that to us?*
- Cela ne nous fait rien. *That is nothing to us.*
- Je fus obligé de faire venir le *I was obliged to send for the*
médecin. *doctor.*
- Pourquoi ne le faites-vous pas *Why don't you call him in?*
entrer ?
- Seigneur Capitaine, je n'ai pas *Captain, I have not so much*
cet argent, mais je me fais *money by me, but I engage*
fort de trouver un homme *to find a man who will lend*
qui vous le prêtera. *it to you.*
- (*Diable boiteux.*)
- C'en est fait de lui. *It is all over with him.*
- Fait—Elle nous mit au fait en *She let us at once into the*
deux mots. (*Gil Blas.*) *whole affair.*
- Elle n'avait pas manqué de les *She had taken care to let them*
mettre au fait. *into the secret.*
- (*Diable boiteux.*)
- Aller au fait. *To come to the point.*
- Falloir—Il fallait me répondre *You should have answered me*
cela hier au soir. *so last night.*
- Votre fils n'étudie pas comme *Your son does not study as he*
il faut. *ought.*
- Faites votre thème comme il *Do your exercise properly.*
faut.
- Que vous faut-il ? *What do you want?*
- Il me faut un livre. *I want a book.*
- Il me faut de l'argent. *I must have some money.*
- Il vous faut un dictionnaire. *You must get a dictionary.*
- Vous m'en donnez plus qu'il *You give me more than is*
n'en faut. *necessary.*
- Avez-vous bien dormi cette *Did you sleep well last night?*
nuit ?—Tant s'en faut. *—Far from it.*
- Il faut souffrir ce qu'on ne *What cannot be cured must be*
saurait empêcher. (*Prov.*) *endured.*

- Fendre—La tête me fend de douleur. *My head is ready to split with pain.*
 Le cœur me fend. *My heart is ready to break.*
 Loger—Nous fûmes obligés de loger à la belle étoile. *We were obliged to lie under the canopy of heaven—in the open air.*
 Loin—Cette affaire ira plus loin que vous ne pensez. *This affair will prove more serious than you think.*
 Long—Il tomba par terre tout de son long. *He fell on the ground at his full length.*
 Main—Je fis ce tour de main avec beaucoup de subtilité, quoique ce fût mon coup d'essai. (*Gil Blas*.) *I performed this sleight of hand with much dexterity, though it was my first attempt.*
 Cela fut fini en un tour demain. *It was done in a trice.*
 Mettez la main sur la conscience, et parlez de bonne foi. *Speak in your conscience, and say the real truth.*
 Je ne puis rien faire pour lui, j'ai les mains liées. *I cannot do anything for him, my hands are tied.*
 Tous ses amis lui prêteront la main. *All his friends will help him.*
 Mémoire—J'ai beau le repasser dans ma mémoire, je ne puis m'en rappeler entièrement. *Though I turn it over in my mind ever so often, I cannot recollect it perfectly.*
 Mesurer—En disant ces mots, il mesura des yeux son rival. *Saying these words, he surveyed his rival from head to foot.*
 Mesurer ses actions, ses discours, etc. *To be cautious in one's actions, words, etc.*
 Moquer — Moquez-vous du qu'en dira-t-on. *Do not mind people's talk.*
 Net — Nous avons eu cent guinées de profit net. *We have cleared a hundred guineas.*
 Je lui dis tout net ma façon de penser. *I told him my mind frankly.*
 Nouvelles — Avez-vous reçu des nouvelles de votre frère ? *Have you heard anything from your brother ?*
 J'ai envoyé pour savoir de ses nouvelles. *I have sent to inquire how he does.*
 Vous me donnerez de vos nouvelles. *You will let me hear from you.*
 Œil—J'ai besoin d'un bon garçon pour me servir ; j'ai jeté les yeux sur vous. *I want a good servant lad ; I have thought of you.*

- Oreille—Il me quitta, après m'avoir dit à l'oreille que nous nous reverrions. *He left me, after having whispered to me that we should meet again.*
(Gil Blas.)
- Entrer par une oreille, et sortir par l'autre. *In at one ear, and out at the other.* *(Prov.)*
- Pain—Il fait tout ce qu'il peut pour m'ôter le pain de la main. *He does all he can to deprive me of my bread.*
- C'est moi qui lui ai mis le pain à la main. *It is I who have procured him a livelihood.*
- Parler—Cela lui apprendra à parler. *That will teach him how to govern his tongue.*
- Parole—Vous êtes un homme de parole. *You are as good as your word.*
- Je ne vous manquerai pas de parole. *I will not go from my word.*
- Puisqu'il en est ainsi, je retire ma parole. *Since it is so, I recall my word.*
- Répondez-moi, Comte, reprit brusquement le vieillard, et cessez de me couper la parole. *Answer me, Count, replied the old man hastily, and leave off interrupting me.* *(Diable boiteux.)*
- Part—Raillerie à part. *Seriously.—Without joking.*
- Parti—Il fallut promptement prendre un parti. *I was soon obliged to take a resolution.* *(Gil Blas.)*
- Prenez votre parti, et je prendrai le mien. *Take your course, and I will take mine.*
- Chacun prit son parti. *Everyone took his own course.* *(Gil Blas.)*
- Je m'arrêtai à ce dernier parti. *I stuck to this last resolution.* *(Gil Blas.)*
- Partie — Serez-vous de la partie ? *Will you make one of the party ?*
- Pas — Doublons le pas. — Hâtons le pas. *Let us walk faster.—Let us mend our pace.*
- Pas à pas on va bien loin. *Fair and softly goes a great way.* *(Prov.)*
- Il a été bien heureux de se tirer de ce mauvais pas. *He has been very fortunate to get out of that scrape.*
- Passer—Passe pour cette fois-ci, mais qu'il ne recommence point. *I excuse him for this time, but let him not do so again.*
- Se passer de. *To do without.*

- Pouvez-vous vous passer de votre dictionnaire ? *Can you spare your dictionary?*
 Je ne peux pas m'en passer. *I cannot do without it.—I cannot spare it.*
- Nous vidâmes aussi l'outre, où il y avait deux pintes d'un vin qu'il se serait fort bien passé de me vanter. *We also emptied the bottle, containing about a quart of wine, of which he had no occasion to boast.*
(Gil Blas.)
- Penser—Vous n'y pensez pas ! *You do not think of it !*
 Fie donc, s'écria mon amie, tu n'y penses pas ! *Fie, cried my friend, you do not think of it !*
 Perdre—Il est perdu de réputation. *He has lost his character.*
- J'y perds cinquante guinées. *I am fifty guineas out of pocket by it.*
- Peu—Je vous écrirai sous peu. *I will write to you in a few days.*
- Pour peu que vous étudiiez, vous ferez des progrès. *If you study ever so little, you will improve.*
- Plaisir—Son père lui donne vingt guinées pour ses menus plaisirs. *His father allows him twenty guineas for pocket money.*
- Porte — Avez-vous fermé la porte à clef ? *Have you locked the door ?*
- S'il ose revenir, fermez-lui la porte au nez. *If he dares to come again, shut the door in his face.*
- Si vous ne vous taisez, je vous mettrai à la porte. *If you do not hold your tongue, I will put you out of doors.*
- Prendre—L'après-midi, pendant qu'ils se disposaient tous deux à sortir pour aller chez Dona Kiména, je pris les devants, et courus avertir la Duègne de se préparer à cette visite. *In the afternoon, while they both were preparing to go to Dona Kiména's, I took the start, and ran to tell the Duenna, that she might be ready for the visit.*
(Gil Blas.)
- Si la gelée dure encore deux jours, la rivière prendra. *If the frost hold two days longer, the river will be frozen up.*
- Le feu prit hier à notre maison. *Yesterday a fire broke out at our house.*
- S'en prendre à quelqu'un. *To lay the blame on one.*
 Si je trompe leur attente, répliqua le roi, ne vous en prenez qu'à vous. *If I deceive their expectation, replied the king, ascribe it solely to yourself.*
(Gil Blas.)

- Dites-moi, si je m'y prends bien. *Tell me, if I go the right way to work.*
- Vous ne vous y prenez pas bien. *You do not do it right.*
- Près—Il y regarde de bien près. *He is very particular.*
- Je n'ai pas voulu passer si près de votre maison, sans m'informer de votre santé. *I would not pass so near your house, without inquiring how you did.*
- A peu de chose près. *Within a little.*
- Quoi—Quoi qu'il en soit. *Be it as it may.*
- Raillerie—Ceci passe la raillerie. *This is carrying the jest too far.*
- Je vais aller chez le juge du bourg, qui n'entend pas raillerie là-dessus. *I shall go to the magistrate of the village, who does not joke in these matters.*
- (*Gil Blas.*)
- Raison—Je le mettrai à la raison. *I shall bring him to reason.*
- Riche—Il est riche de cinquante mille livres sterling. *He is worth fifty thousand pounds.*
- Rien—Entre nous, c'est un homme de rien, qui se sentant né pour les affaires, a suivi son génie, et s'est enrichi dans deux maisons ruinées, dont il a été l'intendant. *Between us, he is a man of no family, who finding himself born for business, followed the bent of his genius, and enriched himself in two ruined houses where he was steward.*
- (*Gil Blas.*)
- Sonner—Il fait sonner bien haut sa noblesse. *He talks very loftily of his nobility.*
- Nous arrivâmes à six heures sonnantes. *We arrived when the clock was striking six.*
- Sur—Je n'ai pas d'argent sur moi. *I have no money about me.*
- Tarder—Il me tarde de le voir. *I long to see him.*
- Ton—Le prendre sur un haut ton. *To talk in a lofty tone.*
- Toucher—Cela me touche de bien près. *That greatly concerns me*
- Trouver—Comment trouvez-vous mon habit ? *How do you like my coat ?*
- Valoir—Il fait valoir sa marchandise. *He sets off his goods to the best advantage.*
- Il fait valoir son talent. *He makes the best of his talent.*

Il vaut mieux que vous y alliez vous-même.	<i>It is better for you to go there yourself.</i>
Cela vaut la peine que vous y pensiez.	<i>It is worth your while.</i>
Cela n'en vaut pas la peine.	<i>It is not worth the while.</i>
Venir—Je viens de lui parler.	<i>I have just spoken to him.</i>
Vous ne faites qu'aller et venir.	<i>You do nothing but go to and fro.</i>
Il me vient une idée, une pensée.	<i>An idea, a thought has struck me.</i>
Vivre—Il faut laisser vivre chacun à sa mode.	<i>Let everyone live as he likes.</i>
Votre frère de son vivant aimait beaucoup la chasse.	<i>Your brother, in his lifetime, was very fond of hunting.</i>
Vive le roi !	<i>Long live the king !</i>
Vive la France pour le vin !	<i>Give me France for wine.</i>
Vive l'Angleterre pour la liberté !	<i>England for liberty !</i>
Voici—Me voici.—Le voici.—Les voici, etc.	<i>Here I am.—Here he is.—Here they are, etc.</i>

INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>A</i> ; with and without accent..	2	Used in a <i>partitive</i> sense ..	10
Proper names ending in <i>a</i> , how translated into French	31		57, 189
Eng. indef. art., how trans- lated ..	8, 190, 197	Cases in which it is used, 183 to 193	
Its principal use as a preposi- tion ..	176, 210	Cases in which it is not used ..	188, 193 to 200
Verbs which require <i>à</i> ..	284	<i>Aucun, Aucune</i> ..	49
Abbreviations used in the Ex- ercises ..	vi	<i>Autrui</i> ; its derivation, gender, and use ..	48
Of Titles ..	302	<i>Avant, devant</i> ..	296
<i>Abstain</i> (<i>to</i>), <i>s'abstenir</i> ..	124	<i>avant de, avant que de</i> ..	301
<i>Accents</i> ; number and use ..	2	<i>Avoir</i> ; its conjugation ..	55
<i>Adjective</i> ; how known ..	14	<i>Beaucoup</i> , Rem. on ..	291
Formation of the feminine	14 to 19	<i>Before</i> ; how expressed ..	296
Formation of the plural	19, 20	<i>Cases</i> ; if any in French ..	6
Possessive ..	36	<i>Cedilla</i> ..	4
Demonstrative ..	38	<i>Cent</i> ; when it takes <i>s</i> ..	28
Concord of the ..	211 to 215	<i>Chacun</i> ..	46
Used adverbially ..	212	Differs from <i>chaque</i> ..	49
Place of the ..	215 to 221	Its syntax ..	253
Government of the ..	221 to 224	<i>Chaque, chacun</i> ..	49
Of Number, its synt. ..	224	<i>Collective nouns</i> ..	11, 256
Of Dimension ..	225	<i>Comparative degree</i> ; how formed ..	21, 22
<i>Adverb</i> ; its place ..	166, 290	Synt. of the ..	226
How formed from an adj. ..	170	<i>Compound substantives</i> 206 to 211	
Of Quantity ..	198, 257	<i>Compound tenses</i> ; how formed	54
Synt. of the ..	290	<i>Compound tenses</i> ; how used	273
<i>Aller, s'en aller</i> ..	108, 109	Concord between the tenses ..	279
<i>Alphabet</i> (<i>French</i>) ..	1	<i>Conditional mood</i> ..	275
<i>Antecedent</i> ; its meaning ..	40	<i>Conjugations</i> (four); how dis- tinguished ..	53, 61
<i>Any</i> ; how expressed in French	10	First in <i>er</i> ..	64
<i>Apostrophe</i> ..	3	Second in <i>ir</i> ..	68
<i>Article</i> ; its function and deri- vation ..	7, 8	Third in <i>oir</i> ..	71
Contracted ..	8		

	PAGE		PAGE
Fourth in <i>re</i>	74	<i>Genders</i> ; how many ..	6
Negatively	78, 79	Of inanimate objects ..	5, 201
Interrogatively	83, 83	<i>Half</i> (<i>demi</i>); its Synt. ..	212
Interrogatively and nega- tively	85	<i>Hyphen</i> ; when used ..	4
Of <i>Passive</i> verbs	87	Notes on the ..	230, 234
Of <i>Pronominal</i> or <i>Reflected</i> verbs	91	<i>Idioms</i> ; French and English ..	302
Of <i>Impersonal</i> or <i>Uniper-</i> <i>sonal</i> verbs	94 to 98	<i>Il</i> ; its derivation	7
Of verbs ending in <i>ger, ter,</i> <i>cer, uer, e'er, eter, yer,</i> <i>ier</i>	99 to 108	<i>Imperfect</i> ; when used ..	271
<i>Conjunction</i> ; its definition ..	179	<i>In, into</i> ; how expressed ..	295
A list of the principal ..	179	<i>Indefinite pronouns</i>	44
Syntax	299	Syntax of	252
Some govern the ind. ..	299	<i>Interjection</i> ; its definition ..	181
Some the subj.	300	A list of	181, 182
Some the infin.	301	Remark on the	302
<i>Connaitre</i> , to know	143	<i>Ion</i> ; gender of nouns ending in ..	5
Its difference from <i>savoir</i> ..	133	<i>Irregular verbs</i> of the 1st conj. ..	108
<i>Cru</i> ; with and without accent ..	3	" " " 2d conj. ..	111
<i>D</i> ; takes the sound of <i>t</i>	85	" " " 3d conj. ..	127
<i>Dans, en</i> ; how used	295	" " " 4th conj. ..	137
<i>De</i> , preposition; its use	6	<i>Know</i> (<i>to</i>), <i>savoir</i>	132
173, 177, 209		<i>Connaitre</i>	143
Verbs which require <i>de</i>	265	<i>La</i> ; with and without accent ..	2
<i>Degree of comparison</i>	20	When it loses the <i>a</i>	3, 8
<i>Demi</i> ; its syntax	212	When it retains the <i>a</i>	4
<i>Demonstrative adjectives</i>	38	Its derivation	7
<i>Dès</i> ; with and without accent ..	2	<i>Le</i> ; article	8
<i>Devant, avant</i>	296	When it loses the <i>e</i>	3, 8
<i>Dieresis</i> or <i>Dialysis</i>	4	When it retains the <i>e</i>	4
<i>Du</i> ; with and without accent ..	3	Its derivation	7
<i>E</i> ; gender of nouns ending ..		Relative pronoun	42
in	5	<i>L'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre</i> ..	47, 48
<i>Elision</i> of vowels	3	Syntax of	255
<i>Elle</i> ; its derivation	7	<i>Même</i>	49
<i>Ellipsis</i> ; <i>Note</i> on	249	<i>Mille</i> ; when it takes <i>s</i>	28
<i>En</i> ; relative pronoun	43	When abbreviated into <i>mil</i> ..	28
Its various meanings	43	<i>Moise</i> ; its pronunciation ..	4
Its place	44	<i>Monsieur</i> ; its plural	244
Preposition	178	How abbreviated	302
Governs the Particip. pres. ..	264	And <i>gentilhomme</i> ; <i>foot-note</i> ..	251
Its synt.	294, 295	<i>Moods and Tenses</i>	270
<i>En, dans</i>	295	<i>Mur</i> ; with and without accent ..	2
<i>Entre</i> ; when written <i>entr'</i> ..	4	<i>Names</i> (proper), see <i>Proper</i> ..	
<i>Etre</i> ; its conjugation	58	<i>Negatives</i>	78, 292
<i>Fort</i> (very); its derivation ..	23	<i>Noun</i> , see <i>Substantive</i>	
		<i>Nul, nulls</i>	49
		<i>Numbers</i>	6
		Cardinal	25
		Ordinal	25

	PAGE		PAGE
Rules on the use of the cardinal and ordinal Numbers.. ..	28, 29, 195	When they take the sign of the plural	204
On ; indefinite pronoun ..	45	<i>Que</i> ; when it loses the <i>e</i> ..	41
Synt. of	252	Rem. on the conj. <i>que</i> ..	300
On ; with and without accent ..	2	<i>Quel, quelle</i> ; when used ..	51
On ; relative pronoun.. ..	43	<i>Quelconque</i>	50
<i>Parce que, par ce que</i> ..	299	<i>Quelque ; quel que</i>	51, 52
<i>Participle Present</i>	282	<i>Quelqu'un</i> ; its feminine and plural	46
<i>Past</i>	253	<i>Qui</i> ; if it changes	41
<i>Parts of speech</i>	7	<i>Quiconque</i>	45, 46
<i>Pas, point</i> ; when suppressed ..	292	<i>Railroad, or railway</i> ; how translated into French ..	295
<i>Personne</i> ; masculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a noun	46, 47	<i>Regimen</i> ; its definition ..	201
When it takes <i>ne</i> before the verb	46	231, 261, 284	
<i>Plus, davantage</i>	291	<i>Relative pronouns</i>	40
<i>Plusieurs</i>	50	<i>Saül</i> ; its pronunciation ..	4
<i>Plus tôt, plutôt</i> ; their difference	291	<i>Savoir, to know</i>	132
<i>Possessive adjectives</i>	36	How to distinguish it from <i>connaître</i>	133
<i>Preposition</i> ; its definition ..	173	When <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i> may be omitted after	292
Place of cases supplied by ..	6, 173	<i>Se</i> ; place of	34
How divided	173	Various meanings of	35
Govern the Infinitive	264	Syntax of	239
Syntax of the	294	<i>Soi</i> ; place of	34
Some govern <i>de</i>	297	<i>Soi</i> ; various meanings of ..	35
Some govern <i>à</i>	298	Syntax of	239
<i>Present Indicative</i> ; when used ..	270	<i>Some</i> ; how expressed	10
<i>Près de, prêt à</i>	267	<i>Steam-engine</i> ; how translated ..	177
<i>Preterite definite</i>	272	<i>Subjunctive mood</i> ; when used ..	270
<i>Indefinite</i>	273	<i>Substantive</i> ; its nature and division	11
<i>Pronouns</i> ; how divided	32	Formation of the plural of ..	11-14
<i>Personal</i>	32	Gender of	5, 201
Place of <i>Pers. pron.</i>	32, 228	Number in	204, 205
Syntax of the <i>pers. pron.</i> ..	228-241	Plural of compound	206
<i>Possessive</i>	35, 37	<i>Superlative degree</i> ; how formed ..	22
Syntax of the <i>Possessive</i> ..	240-244	to	25
<i>Demonstrative</i>	37, 38	Syntax of the	226
Syntax of the <i>Demonst.</i> ..	244-247	<i>Sur</i> ; with and without accent ..	2
<i>Relative</i>	40	<i>Syntax</i>	183
Syntax of the <i>Relative</i> ..	247-252	<i>Tel, telle</i>	48
<i>Indefinite</i>	44	<i>Tenses</i> ; formation of the ..	54
Syntax of the <i>Indef.</i>	252	61, 62	
<i>Proper names</i> ; definition of ..	11	Syntax of the	270
Of Sovereigns	29	Concord of the	279
Ending in <i>a</i>	81		
Which take the article	186		
188, 194, 204			

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>To</i> ; how translated ..	8, 263	Verbs ending in <i>ger, der, cer,</i>	
When translated by <i>pour</i> ..	269	<i>uer, eler, eter, yer, ier</i> ..	99
<i>Tout</i> ; various kinds ..	50		to 107
<i>Très</i> ; its derivation ..	23	Agreement of the ..	254
<i>Tu</i>	3	Place of the subject of the ..	259
<i>Unipersonal verbs</i>	94	Government of the ..	261
<i>Venir</i> ; takes <i>être</i> for its com-		Verbs which require <i>à</i> ..	264
pound tenses	125	Verbs which require <i>de</i> ..	265
<i>Verb</i> ; its definition	53	Verbs which require no pre-	
How many kinds of <i>verbs</i> ..	53	position	268
Regular, irregular, defective	53	<i>Vingt</i> ; when it takes an <i>s</i> ..	28
Used negatively	78, 79	<i>Vowels</i>	1
Interrogatively	82, 83	Which are cut off, and when	3
Interrogatively and negativ.	85	<i>W</i> ; when used	1
Passive verbs	87, 262	<i>Y</i> ; its power as a letter ..	1
Neuter	89	Its place, and various mean-	
Pronominal, reflected, reci-		ings as a relative pronoun	44
procal	91	Adverb, its derivation ..	169
Impersonal or unipersonal..	94		



Strongly Bound in Cloth, price 1s. each.

THE
OXFORD AND CAMBRIDGE
ENGLISH HISTORY MANUALS.

*With Outlines of the Literature of each
Period.*

1. From the earliest Records to Death of John, B.C. 55
—A.D. 1216.
 2. Rise of Parliamentary Privileges—Wars of the Roses
—1216—1485.
 3. Days of the Tudors and the Reformation, 1485—1603.
 4. Stuart Period, 1603—1689.
 5. William, Prince of Orange, to Death of George II.
—1689—1760.
 6. Hanoverian Period, 1760—1880.
-

The above have been prepared expressly for the requirements of the Local Examinations, and at the end of each volume will be found the Questions given by the Oxford and Cambridge Examiners during the last ten years.

LONDON :
ALLMAN AND SON, 463, OXFORD STREET.

Just published, strongly bound in cloth, price 1s. 6d

THE SCHOLAR'S MANUAL OF GEOGRAPHY.

With Coloured Maps and Illustrations.

PUBLISHED ALSO IN PARTS, AS FOLLOWS :

Part I. Introductory, for Standard II., with 20 Illustrations, price 2d.

Part II. England, for Standard III., with 6 Maps, price 3d.

Part III. Scotland, Ireland, the Colonies, for Standard IV., with 12 Maps, price 3d.

Part IV. Europe, for Standard V., with 6 Maps, price 3d.

Part V. Asia, Africa, America, for Standard VI., with 3 Maps, price 3d.

Part VI. (with Two Maps), On the Oceans, Geographical Discovery, &c., is published only with the Complete Manual.

This Manual is confidently put before the Scholastic public as in many respects unique. While carefully fitted for the work of the Standards of the Code, it by no means contains a bare minimum of information; but, by a judicious fulness or compression, according to importance of matter, and the use in general of complete sentences, it is well suited for Pupil Teachers, who will find in it valuable hints on teaching. By very clear, and, in some cases, novel arrangement, by the constant use of association and comparison, by differences of type, and the avoidance as far as possible of mere lists of names, the memory has been assisted and the mind directed to infer and judge. Care has been taken to have a well illustrated Introduction, simple in style, to furnish lucid accounts of physical features, and maps not overcrowded that may serve as models for pupils, to awaken curiosity by a comprehensive History of Discovery, and to embody the latest discoveries and changes.

LONDON :

ALLMAN AND

STREET.

(No. 6.)

